



Oriental Translation Fund
LONDON.
INSTITUTED 1828.

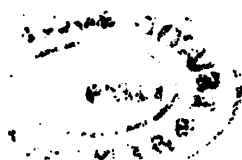
UNDER THE PATRONAGE OF HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY
WILLIAM THE FOURTH.



THIS COPY
WAS PRINTED FOR
THE ASIATIC SOCIETY
OF
BENGAL.

4.23

LONDON:
PRINTED BY JOHN WERTHEIMER AND CO
CIRCUS PLACE, FINSBURY CIRCUS.



THE CHRONICLES
OF
RABBI JOSEPH BEN JOSHUA BEN MEIR.

THE
CHRONICLES
OF
RABBI JOSEPH BEN JOSHUA BEN MEIR,
THE SPHARDI.

TRANSLATED FROM THE HEBREW
BY
C. H. F. BIALLOBLOTZKY.

VOL. II.



1904
A



4223

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND
OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.
SOLD BY
A. J. VALPY, M.A., RED LION COURT, FLEET STREET.
M.DCCC.XXXVI.

933

J. 83 CB

39256

SL. No. 024711

HEBREW CHRONICLES.

[10]

589. AND it came to pass, after many days, that some ships of the king of Portugal went out to plunder, and to make spoil in the land of Cush*, which is on the shores of the Great Ocean towards sunset: and thence they went round towards the ornament of *countries*† and the east: this was their custom continually. And they took for themselves cities on the sea-shore, and builded there fortresses, in which they have dwelled until this day. Moreover, they brought daily some of the inhabitants of the country, and sold them for slaves and for handmaidens in the four corners of the world. And as they returned every year, they extended their voyage until thou come to Tarshish; and they reached also

* Æthiopia; but here Africa in general.

† צִיֹּן. Palestine is meant. See Buxtorf Lexicon Rabbinicum.

unto Calicut*, which was under the government of the great Turk; and they bound their princes with chains, and their nobles with fetters of iron† : so the country became theirs : and they made a covenant with the inhabitants, who have been slaves to the king of Portugal until this day. Thence they brought also spices, and silver, and gold, in abundance, and thus filled their dwellings with spoil. All that was done at Calicut was reported to the Great Turk, and he became zealous for his people and his gods. At his command, they brought workmen, who builded cruizing ships of war, and bore them away on camels to the sea ; for from this sea the Turks go into the great Sea of Suf‡, which is that sea which compasses the world. And they put into their ships valiant men, all drawing the sword ; and one of their princes was over them as captain. With them was a Venetian, a wise and mighty man of valor. And the king commanded the pasha, the general of the army, saying, “ Fall not out by the way§ ; and do all that the Venetian adviseth you ; and according to his word, so shalt thou do.” Then the pasha replied, “ O lord, my king, I will do according to thy words.” As they journeyed thence they came to a great city, the glory of all the surrounding

* קאליקוט.

† Ps. cxlix. 8.

‡ ים סוף. The sea of weeds, usually the Red Sea.

§ Gen. xlv. 24.

countries, whose king was a greatly honored Arab*, a confederate of all the uncircumcised at that time. And the pasha sent unto him, saying, “ Come down to me, tarry not for the king, because the Great Turk has sent me to thee to deliver thee this day from the hands of these uncircumcised.” Then the king answered, “ Who is he that maketh bold to say to me, ‘ Come down ?’ Let him come up to my house, for I am a king ; yea, and the son of a king !” And the wrath of the pasha was kindled against him ; and he sent to the king with subtlety, and slew him, and plundered the country. But the Venetian rebuked him, and said, “ Why hast thou done thus, to make me stink before the inhabitants of the country ?† for they will not again assist us, neither will they give us any provision, and we shall die of hunger.” And as the Venetian spake, so it was : for the kings of those cities said, “ Is it not better to serve the uncircumcised, than to die by the hand of this cruel man ?” So they hated him, and turned their backs to him, and not their faces, though at first they favored him. And the Turks were forced to retreat without success. And it came to pass, when they were in Egypt, that the Venetian told one of his friends what had befallen him ; and that man told his

* ערבי.

† Gen. xxxiv. 30.

words to the pasha, and he hated the Venetian in his heart. And the Venetian desired to return to his master; but the pasha intreated him, and said, "No; thou shalt come with us." And they went their way. And it came to pass, when they were near Constantinople, that the janissaries strave among themselves and slew the Venetian; so that he died before he returned to his master. It was not known who had slain him; and it grieved the Turk exceedingly.

590. There was a man in Castile, which is in Spain, Americo by name, who had a great ship, and he stored it plentifully with provisions, according to his heart's desire; and his heart impelled him also* to go forth in person to take spoil wherever he could find it, and even to extend his voyage far from the borders of land†. And there gathered themselves unto him vain fellows, who embarked with him and went their way. And they continued their voyage many days, in a tract by which no man had passed, from the day that the Almighty created earth and heaven. And they went on even until they could no longer see the star

* Exod. xxv. 2.

† Rabbi Joseph apparently confounds Amerigo Vespucci with Columbus, and means to say that Americo ventured to cross the high seas, instead of coasting within sight of landmarks, which was formerly the usual mode of navigation.

Tramontana, by which the mariners and seafaring men are guided and direct their way ; and they reeled to and fro, and staggered like a drunken man* ; and they went on from deep to deep, and were confounded by the springs of the sea† during many days. And the food which they had with them failed, and the men prayed that their souls might die, and every one cried unto his God‡ at that time. And they made up their minds to return, and they knew not that the ship-master was in perplexity§ not discerning between right and left ; and they said, “ While their soul fainted within them, let us cast lots||, and upon whomsoever the lot shall fall, we will eat his flesh that we may live and not die.” While they were yet speaking, the watchman lifted up his eyes, and saw a place afar off, and cried, “ Ah, my brethren ! Land ! Land !” And the men rejoiced much, and rowed towards the dry land, and went on shore. And they came into a small city, whose inhabitants were few and naked ; yet they were not ashamed¶. And the Spaniards spake unto them, but they understood nothing except a little of the language of Ishmael. And the Spaniards asked for bread.

* Ps. cvii. 27.

† Jonah i. 5.

|| Jonah i. 7.

† Job. xxxviii. 16.

§ במתעתע.

¶ Gen. ii. 25.

And they brought unto them of the bread which they made; and behold it was dry and mouldy*. And they made of the roots of herbs which grew in their country†, unleavened cakes‡ which were not sour. And the appearance of this bread was like the biscotto§ now made in the town of Pisa, which is in Tuscany. And the men were much astonished when they saw the Spanish weapons of war, especially when they heard the voice of their guns, and saw the burning flame of fire; and they said, “ Surely they are sons of the gods: for like unto them they give out their voice, and who will say unto them, ‘ What do ye?||’ ” And they feared them much, and brought them into their houses, and gave them their silver and their gold, and took for themselves of the knives and of the instruments of iron which the men of Spain had with them; for there had been seen neither iron nor copper at all in that country, from the day that they began to dwell in it. And the Spaniards took thence provision of all that they found, and departed thence, and returned to the land of Spain in joy, filled with every good thing; and they gave thanks to God, and announced to their brethren all

* Josh. ix. 5.

† Rabbi Joseph probably means to describe potatoes.

‡ Lev. viii. 26.

§ i. e. Biscuit.

|| Job. ix. 12.

that they had done, and all the travail with which they had met on the way. And many envied them. From that day forward, many of the lowest people of the country became likewise disposed to go thither to the place of gold. But some of them found nothing, save a place of briers and thorns, and died on the way of hunger and thirst, and for want of every thing. And many reached their desired haven*, and returned home with joy, and wealth, and riches, and plenty of every thing. And it came to pass, as often as the Spaniards went thither, that they took captive the inhabitants of that country to be unto them servants, and hand-maidens, and tributaries, unto this day. The Spaniards took also of their daughters some to be confectioners, and cooks, and bakers; and there was none to deliver out of their hands. And the cry of the inhabitants of that country went up unto heaven.

591. And the land was widely spread before them, and blessed by the Lord. And their men were as horses and mules, they knew nothing; neither did they understand, they walked in darkness: and the Spaniards were instead of eyes unto them. [סח] And it came to pass, when the Spaniards began to multiply upon the face of the earth, that the

* Ps. cvii. 30.

land was before them as the garden of the Lord, even as the land of Egypt; and they took possession thereof, and abode therein, and called those places by names after their own manner in their land. And they taught the inhabitants of the country statutes and laws according to their own pleasure, and they believed in their God and their king; they learned their works, and when they saw the schemes* of the Spaniards and their strength, they reckoned them to be prophets and messengers of God; and they feared them much.

592. And what was for them the greatest wonder of knowledge and too high for them, was, in their eyes, the mystery of writing and inditing, when they saw that a man spake with his neighbour from a far country, by means of a written roll, as small as the hand of a man; therefore they said, "This is the finger of God." And the name of the man who found this country was Americo, and they called it America after his name;—but Peru and Klobikanah were the names of that country at first; and the Spaniards called it the New World until this day. And the emperor Charles sent thither many princes and honorable men, and men of valor, and horsemen, by way of the sea, in ships, and wherever they set the soles of their feet they subdued every thing

with a mighty hand; the changes of time gave every thing into their hands. And the emperor appointed there a viceroy, to whom the country then belonged. And the Spaniards warred also with the neighbouring kings, and drave them out and abode there in their stead. They found there also great cities, whose inhabitants were intelligent men, instructed in science. And they had statutes and judgments like as in this country: however, they went after Baal, and their sons they passed through the fire to Moloch unto that day.

593. They found there also a great river in which was plenty of silver and gold, and gold mines and precious stones; and nothing like this was seen until this day. And they brought also thence plenty of all sorts of spices, and cattle and beasts, fowls and cows, which were not found by us from the beginning of our existence until that day. They found there also sons of Anak* like to the height of cedars was their height; and they brought some of them to Spain bound with chains, and the Spaniards were in their eyes like grasshoppers†. And they went out again towards sunrise. And they reached the borders of the country of the Great Khan, the sultan, who had many provinces and great cities without number. And they warred

* i. e. Giants.

† Numb. xiii. 33.

against his men, and no man could stand before them, for the fear of the Spaniards fell upon them. And they went as far as a great city, whose name was Timistitan*, whose merchants were princes, and their men the nobles of the earth ; and they took them with subtlety, and gave them over to be plundered : so the country was theirs until this day. And Timistitan was a great city full of people, and situated in the midst of a great river ; and the water was like a wall unto them round about, like the great city of Venice. And there was every day war between the Spaniards and the men of the great Khan at that time. However, the king did not go in person to the great battles, for he was far off from thence ; and he did set his heart to do this. And Ferdinand Magellano was a mighty man of valor, and very experienced on the sea and on land ; so Charles, king of Spain, gave him five large ships in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty. He put in the same about five hundred men, and they went also to spoil all the cities of the same country, which were on the banks of the sea, whithersoever the wind should suffer them to go. And they went and found many islands ; namely, the Molucca islands ; and they went ashore. And the inhabitants of that country went out and put

the battle in array against them ; but they were smitten before them, for their courage sank at the voice of the battering rams. One day, a certain king of the inhabitants of that country went out against them with a numerous people, and with a mighty hand. And there they put the battle in array, and his men were also smitten before the Spaniards ; for the fear of the guns fell upon them, and about three thousand men of them fell slain to the ground. However, Magellano, the general of the host, fell slain to the ground. And they chose themselves another man, and made him to be their head in his stead.

594. And as the men of the country saw that evil was determined against them, they said, “ This is the finger of God.” And the men sent to the Spaniards, and fell down before them, and said, “ Behold, we are slaves to the great emperor, and will be his servants unto tribute.” And they brought them in presents plenty of silver, and gold, and spices, and they accepted them at that time. And the Spaniards put into their vessels the best things of the country, and they returned to Spain with joy and gladness of heart.

595. And the Emperor Charles, imposed a tribute upon that country, and the isles of the sea ; and they are his until this day. And the remainder of the words of those countries, are they not written

in the Chronicles of the kings of Spain? Which I think to translate, if the Lord will grant me to live.

596. In those days did Pope Leo give to King Francis, the tithes of the French priests for going to war against the Turks. And when the emperor died, *King Francis* wished to reign after him, and although by force. And he made ready his chariot to go to Italy. Then Leo sent to him ambassadors, demanding the silver of him. And he answered, I will bring it to thee; but thou shalt set the crown of the Roman empire upon my head, then we shall go." And they told Leo the words of Francis, and his wrath was kindled against him. And he made a covenant with Charles, the king of Spain, whom they had chosen to be emperor, to make war against France. And Charles sent messengers into France, to lead him from his purpose, but they prevailed not. And they said, "Let the king of England be a judge between us;" and they did so.

597. And the two kings had an interview in the month of May, one thousand five hundred and twenty-one, in the valley of Ardir*, between Ardir and Gilinist†. And they came into the tent, and agreed together, and took their fill of friendship

until the rising of the sun, and every one returned in peace to his own house.

598. And it came to pass, some days after, that the king of England sent messengers to the emperor Charles, and they made a covenant together.

599. In those days, as the emperor abode in Wormatia, he lifted up the head of Prospero Colonna, and made him general of his host. And he came to Bologna. And the viceroy also who was at Naples, brought with him seven hundred horsemen, and six thousand French footmen, and they united themselves to the army of the pope; and they were as one in his hand. Then sent the emperor to Francesco Sforza, the son of the Moor, saying, "Stand up and prepare thyself, and be ready, I will bring thee back to thy office at Milan;" and he rejoiced greatly in his heart. So he also gathered together the Germans, men of valor. And he abode at Trent, for there was his house until the last time.

600. And Lotric*, the viceroy, wrote to King Francis, his master, saying, "Beware of England, and of Burgundy, and Spain, and I will stand here on my ward; [סט] for so long as the Venetian nobles are with us, we will not fear the two

tails of these smoking fire-brands*. And the king sent to Venice and renewed his covenant with them. And they sent Andrea Gritti to his aid with a strong hand. Then Lotric, the king's viceroy, sent his brother Iskurt†, and Frederico Gonzaga di Puzzuoli, to Parma, and they fortified it and abode therein.

601. And it came to pass, on the twenty-fourth day of the month July, one thousand five hundred and twenty-one, that Prospero‡, general of the host, removed from Bologna, and marched slowly until he came to Frederico, marquess of Mantua, general of the host of Leo. And they went and pitched their camp against Parma, and cast up trenches against it. And Frederico Puzzuoli fortified himself within the city, and spake kindly to the men of the army day by day. And they approached the wall and warred against it, and many fell slain to the ground. And it came to pass, as they were fighting, the Spaniards entered the city, and gave Little Parma to be plundered. And the soldiers who were therein passed over the river, which crosses the midst thereof, and fortified themselves in Great Parma, and abode therein. And when Lotric heard thereof, he

* Is. vii. 4.

† אישקור.

‡ Prospero Colonna.

gathered men of valor and went to their aid with a strong hand.

602. And at that time only the Venetian nobles were with Francis. But, notwithstanding he was alone, he turned not back his right hand. And with great zeal he brought back the king of Navarre into his kingdom. He subdued also Fontarabia* with a mighty hand. In those days rebelled Roberto della Marcia† against the emperor Charles, his master, and followed Francis. And they abominably destroyed the armies of the king throughout all the districts of Flanders, in those days. And Charles gathered together valiant men who took all the cities of Roberto, and bound him with chains. And also to the city wherein was Roberto, went the host of the emperor, and subdued it‡. And Roberto they took alive; and they sent him with his son to the emperor, who cast them into prison for their trespass, wherewith they had trespassed against him.

603. While they besieged Parma, came Guicciardino, the overseer of the pope, and told Prospero, saying, “ The Duke of Ferrara is gone out to war against Modena and Reggio with a mighty hand; turn yourselves, therefore, and go thither.” More-

* פונטוראביאה.

† רובירטו דילה מארציה.

‡ Reduced them to slavery, because Roberto was not taken till afterwards.

over, he heard the report of Lotric, the viceroy, who remained behind them; and he departed from the city, and turned back, and went to Brasilo*. And he passed the river Po, as far as Castel Maggiore. There they found the Swiss and the Germans who had brought Leo, the pope, to Italy. Then the Cardinal Giulio di Medici† (who is that Giulio whom they made pope after Adrian, and called his name Clement the Seventh), went to review his troops. Then were the generals of the army astonished at his acuteness, judgment, good counsel, and valor; so that they went at his bidding, and turned not to the right hand nor to the left. And the French also passed over the river Po, and went on to meet them, to fight against them; howbeit, the Swiss who were with Lotric, would not war against their brethren, and every one returned to his own house. Prospero, general of the armies of the emperor, went as far as Corte di Fera, and he met the horsemen of the French and their light-horse; and they were discomfited before him and fled.

604. And when the French saw this mighty host, and heard the divers tongues among them, they were afraid, and passed over the river Adda, to watch till the enemy should pass over; but their hope was vain, for they are a nation void of

* בריסילו.

† Julius de Medicis, the Chasmonite, יהושמן יוליאן די מדיצ.

counsel. And Prospero stationed eight hundred Swiss in Caravaggio*, and went before them to Rivolta. And he gave command with subtlety to make a bridge across the Adda, that the people might pass over from afar off. Of all this the French knew nothing. Wherefore they turned back and went to Milan with the Venetians, and fortified it. Also, the French who were in the fortress, strengthened themselves much. And Prospero went on his way, and halted at Marignano, until the artillery came. And it came to pass, on the nineteenth day of the month of November, that they drew nigh unto the city, and went to the forts and set the battle in array against them; and much people died. And Lautric placed Teodoro Trivulzio at the gate, which is called Roman, to watch it; for he feared the men of the city; for he spilled the blood of their princes like water. But Teodoro was smitten before them, and they took him alive on that day. And the men of the city made a conspiracy against the French; for their soul was embittered against them. And during the night, they brought the army of the emperor and the pope into the city. And Prospero walked in its streets all the night, and spake kindly to the inhabitants of Milan, saying unto them. "Fear not." And the French

* קארנאצו.

gathered themselves together to the park*, which was a garden of the fortress, and deposited there all their vessels, and went to Como with the artillery, and set guards there. And it came to pass, after three days, that Prospero sent the marquess Pescara and much people of the Spaniards to Como; and they warred against it, and much people died. And they battered the walls, and cast them down to the ground. And when the French and the inhabitants of the city saw that they had no strength, they went out to the marquess, and he made with them a covenant for peace, and they gave the city into his hand. And it came to pass, when the Spaniards came into the city, that they plundered it, which displeased the marquess and Prospero very much, because that for fury and for wrath they did it.

605. Then Cremona revolted against the king; and Monsieur del Iscur, the brother of Lautrec, went thither with a mighty hand, and cast up trenches against it. Also, the French, who were in the fortress, proceeded with strength day and night; and the whole city was moved. And the French entered the city by the way of the tower, and set a watch therein.

606. And Prospero and the marquess of Mantua removed from Milan to go to Cremona, and lo! it

was told them, that Leo, the pope, was dead, in the night of the first day of the month of December, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-one; and their courage failed them, and they returned back. And it came to pass, whilst they were at Milan, that the nobles of Placentia gave their hand to the emperor, and they sent to Prospero for help; and he sent to them the Swiss who were at Caravaggio, and they abode there. And when the princes of Parma heard of it, they also gave hand to the emperor, and also sent thither warlike men,* and the French no more returned to that place.

607. And the cardinals chose Adriano Fiamingo* to be pope, while he was in Spain, and he knew it not. And there was a plague at Rome, and in the places round about and throughout all Italy, in those days; and there was no town too high for it†, and much people died in the same three years. [ע]

608. And Gasili‡ said, in the year when Selim, the Turk, died, “I am free from the oath which I swear unto him;” and he exalted himself, saying, “I will reign in all the land of Syria, for his son Solyman was not experienced in all this§.” And he made for himself chariots and horsemen, and

* באדריאנו פיאמינגו.

† i. e. Preserved from it.

‡ גאזילי.

§ i. e. In the art of war.

gathered to him the remnant of the escaped mam-luks, and spake kindly to the princes of the Arabians, who also turned after him, and he exalted himself. And his words were with the priests who were at Rhodes. And he asked of them weapons and ships of war. And also to the viceroy, Kari Bey*, who was in Egypt, he sent, saying, “This is the time to laugh, for the man is dead who sought our lives, and who spilled our blood like water: and now come on; let us be wise in our hearts, lest he increase, for mine is the vengeance of a bloody house.” But Kari Bey trusted not Gasili, but gave command; and they slew the man whom he had sent to him. And to Solyman, the Turk, he sent, saying, “These words spake thy servant unto me.”

609. And Gasili went and subdued Beyrout and Tripoli, and the cities and fortresses which belonged to the Turks, and they brought the inhabitants thereof down to the grave in blood.

610. And when Solyman heard the report of Gasili, he sent thither Parat† Pasha with a mighty hand; and Gasili hearing it, was greatly afraid and distressed, and returned to Damascus. But Parat proceeded on his journey and encamped over against the city. And Gasili went out against him

with a strong arm, and encamped against him. And it came to pass, on a certain day, as they set the battle in array there, that Gasili was smitten before them and fell to the earth. And the remnant of the escaped mamluks were slain with the edge of the sword. And Parat brought back all the land of Syria, and the land of Egypt, to Solyman, his master, at that time. And he came to Damascus, and made with them a covenant of peace, and returned to his own country.

611. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Solyman purposed to war against Belgrade, which is on the borders of Hungary; and there were all the weapons of war which the Hungarians took from Amurath and Mohammed, his ancestors, in the house of their graven images.

612. And Solyman marched to Sophia, and the Hungarians knew it not; and he abode there some days. And Lewis, the son of Ladislaus, was king of Hungary at that time. And he was young, and his nobles devoured all his substance; and he retained no strength. And they delayed to come to his assistance. Then went Solyman and besieged Belgrade, and battered its walls many days; and warred against it, and subdued it with a mighty hand, on the twentieth day of the month of August, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-one, and many fell slain to the ground in

that battle. And all the people of the country Solyman carried into captivity, and set a watch in the midst, and returned to his own country.

613. And it came to pass, after the death of Leo, the pope, that Francis, the king, said, "This is the time to work!" and he assembled twenty and two thousand Swiss, and gave them their hire. Also, in France, he gathered together warlike men, and sent the bastard of Savoy* with a mighty hand; and they joined themselves to the Swiss, and to the army of Lautrec, which was in Italy, and to the Venetians; and they were as one in that day. Now they who were numbered of them were sixty thousand. And they went eastward of Milan with a mighty hand. Then was Prospero Colonna afraid, and he fortified the city. Moreover, he spake kindly unto the people of the country, saying, "We must all surely die; yet will we not any more serve Lautrec who hath spilled the blood of our princes like water, and he has utterly consumed our wealth."

614. The Jews also Lautrec grievously oppressed when he was at Milan, and commanded them to put green helmets upon their heads, as high as those of the Muscovites†, in order to deride the people of the living God; howbeit, the Eternal

* ממור שאבויה.

† מוסקוביטי.

suffered him not, but thrust him out on that day from the territory of Milan.

615. And Prospero ordered that a great trench should be cast around the fortress, while it was yet in the hands of the king's troops; and he set a watch upon it. And it came to pass, two days after, that the French essayed to go out by the garden of the fortress, but could not, for the trench intervened. And Prospero commanded to give the signal for the battle, and they rang the bells three times to arouse the peasantry. Then they arose in a moment, every one with his weapons of war in his hand. And it rejoiced Prospero, the commander in chief, very much. They mustered forty thousand men, among whom were nine thousand carrying muskets*.

616. Then went out Marco Antonio Colonna, and his companion Camillo Triulzio, to spy out the weak parts of the city round about; and the watchmen espied them from the wall; and they slew them, so that they fell to the ground and died. And the king was very wroth against the generals of the army, and lamented concerning them, saying, "How are the mighty fallen!" And when the French saw that it was not in the power of their hand to enter the fortress, they

left the city, and went to Casino* to hinder the passing to and from Pavia; and Antonio Leo†, and the Spaniards were in the midst of it in those days. Then came Francesco Sforza, the son of the Moor, and with him two hundred and fifty horsemen, and seven thousand Germans; and he abode some days in Pavia. Then went Prospero out from Milan, and also Francesco went to meet him, and they came to Milan. And Frederico, the duke of Mantua, was left in Pavia to guard it at that time. And they passed by the enemies, who knew it not, neither did they understand it until they came to Milan, at which Lautrec was sorely grieved. And all the people went out to meet him, and cried with a loud voice, so that the earth was rent at the sound thereof. And the French went and encamped against Pavia, and made ready the artillery. And Prospero sent eight hundred Spaniards to its aid in the darkness of the night, and they passed through the midst of the enemies who did not recognize them. And it came to pass, in the morning watch, that they entered the city, and fortified it round about, and divided the walls‡.

617. And the French passed through the gate which looks towards Milan, and began to cast

* קאסינו.

† אנטוניאו ליווא.

‡ They assigned to every one his post on the walls.

down the walls, and set the battle in array against it. Now the Swiss and the Gascons went out first to the war, and much people of them fell, and they drew back. And this they did many times, for the men of the city had strengthened themselves, and many fell slain to the ground. And Prospero came to Vinasco*, and the battle was against the French before and behind, and many were taken alive. And Prospero drew nigh, and came to the Carthusian convent†, a high place of the priests; and the French departed from the city, and they went to Santo Angelo‡ in the darkness of the night, for they feared before him: howbeit Prospero returned to Casino, for he feared lest the French should go to Milan; and thence he went to Bikoka§, and he fortified himself therein. And the French went to Bikoka and encamped against it. Then Prospero sent to the duke Francesco, who was at Milan, saying, “Come ye out; thou and the men who follow thee:” and he went out, and with him three thousand men, carrying muskets; and thirty thousand of the inhabitants of the city clothed with coats of mail and battering rams. And it came to pass, that when he came, behold, they were fighting, and he heard from afar the cries of the dying.

* בינאסקו.

† צירמוזה.

‡ הנטו אנגילו.

§ ביקוקה.

And the Swiss, who were with the French, went with a strong hand to the place of the battering rams. And Prospero gave command, and they put fire into them*, and many fell [87] slain to the ground. And Francis, and the men who followed him, stood in the front towards the city. And Prospero saw the cavalry of the French coming against him, and he called to the Italians and they set the battle in array against them. And many of the French fell slain and wounded to the ground, and the rest fled backward, for the fear of the musketry fell upon them. They slew also the French, who went to war against the men of the city who were with the duke, by reason of the many guns, and they fell to the ground; and the rest drew back. And when the generals of the Venetian army saw that the French could not withstand them, they gathered themselves and took the artillery, and went to the river Adda; and so they escaped with their lives. And Prospero did not pursue them, for the Germans demanded their money, which made him exceedingly wroth against him†.

618. The rest of the French went to Cremona and fortified themselves in it, and they sent the

* i. e. Loaded the cannon.

† i. e. Against him who asked for the money on behalf of the Germans.

prince Bona Valle*, to Lodi†, to watch it. And Prospero gathered his men, and the men of Milan went every one to his house. And he went to Marignano‡ and gave money to the Germans; and it came to pass, in the morning, he hastened to go up to Lodi; and he encamped against it, and warred against it, and went up to the fortifications and subdued it, and gave it over to be spoiled, and much people died. And the rest of the French hastened to flee, but they pursued after them, and made of them a great slaughter. And the remnant of them they took alive. And thence he removed and encamped against Pizzigioni§, and they gave the city into his hand, for they were terrified before him. And he turned about, and went to Cremona, and encamped against it, whereupon the generals of the host sent to him, saying, “ Let us alone, and we will send to Tzarphath; and it shall come to pass, that if the king will not send to our assistance, in the space of forty days, we will surrender the city into thy hand, and we will go our way freely.” And Prospero hearkened unto their voice, and returned to Pavia. And it came to pass, after certain days, that they gave the city into his hand, but not the citadel, for it had not been given them by the king.

* בינה וואלי.

† לודי.

‡ מאריניאן.

§ פיצגיטוני.

619. Then the chief captains of the host spake every one to his neighbour, and said, “ Let us go up to war against Genoa, which is in the hands of Ottaviano Fragoso, to leave no remnant of the French in the country” (for Genoa alone was left to the king at that time). And the marquess Pescara, and Antoniato and Geronimo Adorni, went, and with them a very great company. And Prospero went also into the gates of Genoa, in the month of May, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-two. And they laid siege to it, and cast up trenches, and beat down their walls, and demanded peace ; but they of the city hearkened not, for the Lord had hardened their hearts, and they brake down the walls day by day, and the city of Genoa was in consternation. Then they sent messengers to the generals of the host ; and it came to pass, as they were without, that Pietro of Novara came with six cruizers, and one great ship, and cried with a loud voice, “ Let the king live for ever !” and they hardened their hearts, and ran after the men of Pietro of Novara to the walls, to mock the battle-array of the Spaniards ; and when the chief captains of the host heard thereof, they gave the city to the men of the host to plunder, and to tread under the soles of their feet. And it came to pass, on the thirtieth day of the month of May, that they sent ambassadors

to Prospero to beseech him, and to give the city into his hands on the next morning; and he said to them, “ Beware much of the Spaniards; and before my men be not afraid, for I will not let them war any more; only know ye, and see, that your murmurings be not against me.” Now, at this time, the marquess Pescara heard of it, and drew nigh unto the city, and put the battle in array against it, and cast up a trench round about it, and slew the watchmen on the walls. And the Spaniards came into the city through the breaches of the wall, with a people that jeopardized their lives unto the death*; and they said, “ Let us swallow them alive, and no man could stand before them; and they ran about the streets, so that the people fled before them into the houses and to the high places, and to the courts. And after them went all the men of valor, who spoiled them; and deeds which ought not to be done, were done in the midst of the city that night, and they took much spoil; and also to the great high place†, where the charger‡ is, went the soldiers; but the priests strengthened themselves until assistance came. And they gave them a thousand ducats, and the Germans went away

* Judges v. 18.

† i. e. The cathedral.

‡ קערה. See Vol. 1. p. 80.

from the high place. And they slew the French who were hid with the edge of the sword; and Pietro of Novara, and Ottaviano Fragoso, the oppressor of the Jews, they took alive, and led them away bound with chains; and Ottaviano died in prison by the vengeance of the Lord. And blessed be He, who hath not given us over for a prey unto his teeth. He shall be blessed for ever! Selah! Amen and Amen.

620. And Antoniato Adorno, the duke of Genoa, was in the counsel of the emperor at that time. This was the fourth plundering of Genoa. The first was by the hand of Magon, the Carthaginian*; and the second, by the hand of Rotarist†, king of the Lombards; and the third, by the hand of the Hagarenest‡.

621. Adrian, the pope, came to Genoa in the month of August; and Prospero, and the duke of Milan, and the marquess Pescara came to bow themselves before him, and to ask of him forgiveness for the plundering of Genoa; but he would not hearken unto them, and they returned to Milan. Now my mother Dolza died in the month Tebeth of the year two hundred and eighty-three, after the smaller number, and I buried her in Novi, and may her rest be glorious! And my wife bare a

* מאגון קארטאגיניס.

† רוטארי.

‡ דהאגריים, the Saracens.

daughter, and I called her name Dolza, and I was comforted after my mother's death*.

622. On that day the Lord stirred up the spirit of Solyman to go to war against Rhodes. And he gathered together men of valor, and went thither in the month of June, one thousand five hundred and twenty-two. And his ships were four hundred, and the number of the soldiers two hundred thousand, and the battering rams numberless. And they brake down the walls thereof, and dug trenches round about, and cast up a high mound over against it, and they shot into the city day and night with guns, and cast great stones into it a cubit in breadth, and battered down their houses to the ground. And the battle was sore between them many days, and much people died. And day after day, they entered through mines into the midst of the city, and they likewise strengthened themselves; and much people died in the mines from the gunpowder, which the men of the city put therein. And the mines were filled round about her with dead carcasses, and their stench went up towards heaven; and also from sickness there died in the camp of Solyman about thirty thousand men. And for all that, he turned not his right hand back, and they

* Gen. xxiv. 67.

warred against her day by day, and there was no deliverer for her.

623. In the pressure of the times, it came to pass, that there was a man of Belial, who had changed his glory, his name had been formerly Jacob Cominito* in Israel. And they found him shooting letters into the camp with bow and arrows†, for he knew the learning‡ and the tongue of the Turks. And they rent him in pieces, as one would tear a kid, and they brought him down in blood into the grave. And also one of the servants of Andrea Miraol§ they found shooting with a bow in the name of his master, and they brought him and his master down in blood into the grave in those days; and Andrea was of the great ones amongst the monks at that time, and he was of the land of Portugal. And his wrath was kindled against them, because that they chose Philip Villers||, the Frenchman, for prince and grand master¶ when Fabricius [עב] del Carito** died. And he despised in his heart to stretch forth his hand against Philip only, and he devised evil against all the monks. And he wrote to Solyman daily, and he

* יעקב קומיניטו.

† i. e. He was a scholar as well as a soldier.

‡ Is. xxix. 11, 12, 18. Dan. v. 4. § אנדריאה מיראול.

|| וילרים.

¶ גראן מאיסטרו.

** פאבריציו דיל קאריטו.

brought him with a mighty hand into the city on that day. And when the monks and the inhabitants of the city saw that they had no strength, they sent messengers to Solyman and gave the city into his hands.

624. And Solyman came into the city in the beginning of the month of January, one thousand five hundred and twenty; and when he came into the court, he asked for the grand master, and Philip came, and bowed himself with his face to the ground. And Solyman spake kindly to him, and comforted him, saying, “ Let it not be evil in thy sight, for there is nothing new under the sun, and all is by the decree of the Most High*. And now, fear not, for that which proceeded out of my lips, I will not alter, and you shall go freely on your way.” And Philip Villers bowed with his face to the ground, and *Solyman* saluted him, and *the grand master* went from him in peace. And Solyman rode back on a horse through the streets of the town, and returned into the camp. And Philip and the men that followed him, removed from Rhodes, and the monks were driven away from their land. And Solyman put soldiers in the midst of Rhodes, and fortified it as at first, and returned to his country.

* Dan. iv. 24.

625. In those days died Kari Bey*, the viceroy, whom Selim left in Egypt; and Solyman sent in his stead Achmed Pasha, and his heart was much lifted up. And Achmed revolted against Solyman; and he exalted himself, saying, "I will reign in all the land of Egypt." And he called the Jews, and spake to them roughly, and said that he would destroy them from being a people, if they would not give him all their property; and it was a time of straitness for Jacob at that time. And they ordained fasts, and girded themselves with sackcloths, and prayed to the Lord God of their fathers, who heard their cries from the dwelling of his holiness. And it came to pass, that one day he called them, and said to them, "When I come out from the bath, you shall see that evil is determined against you, and the name of Israel shall be remembered no more." And it came to pass, before he went out from the bath, that the Turks made a conspiracy against him, and slew him, so that he died; and they trampled upon him, like one of the vain fellows. And the Lord brought back on his own head that which he had devised to do to his people: therefore I praise thee among the heathen, O Lord, and will sing unto thy name.

626. The couriers went out† and hastened to go

* קאריביו.

† Esther iii. 15.

to the gate of the king ; and they went and told Solyman the conspiracy, which Achmed had conspired, and what he had devised to do.

627. And Solyman sent Ibrahim Pasha to Egypt, because of Achmed who had revolted against him, and had devised against the Jews to destroy them. But he was overturned, and his evil device returned upon his own head. And the city of Egypt rejoiced and was glad.

628. And Ibrahim abode in Egypt several days, and he spake kindly to the people of the country, and to the Turks who were in the midst thereof. And he appointed a viceroy within it ; but the King Solyman wrote to him to return, and Ibrahim returned to his master at that time.

629. And some of the Jews who were in the cities of his kingdom, Solyman sent to Rhodes, and they abode there in security until this day.

630. And Philip Villers went on his journeyings as far as Civita Vecchia, which is on the banks of the sea, and they removed thence and went to Rome, to see Adrian the pope, and found him on the bed of languishing ; and they* bowed themselves before his face to the ground. And Philip cried, and supplicated the pope, who spake kindly to him, and comforted him, and Philip said that he would do great things for

* i. e. The grand master and his suite.

him and his brethren*, and then he blessed him, and went out from him, and he spake to him no more; and his sickness became heavy upon him, and Adrian died in the month of September, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-three. And they chose Giulio di Medici on the nineteenth day of the month of November, and they called his name Clement until the day of his death.

631. And there was strife between the duke of Bourbon (the constable), and the mother of Francis, the king, about the cities which she had taken from him; and he sought to lift up his hand against the king. And the thing became known: when he was at Lyons the king sought to kill him, and Bourbon fled from before him in the month of September; and he went to the emperor, who received him with gladness. And the nobles who turned after him were taken alive; and they put them in prison.

632. And Geronimo Adorno went to speak to the nobles of Venice in behalf of the emperor, in that year, for the covenant was completed which they made with King Francis†, and they made peace with the emperor, and a covenant between them. And Geronimo died there, being then forty years old; and they embalmed him, and he

* i. e. The knights.

† This may mean that the time of their treaty was expired.

was put in a coffin ; and the nobles of Venice honored him much : he had acted wisely, and moved these battles, in order to return to his house at Genoa, for he was one of its nobles ; but the counsel of the Lord standeth sure. They brought him to Genoa and buried him in the sepulchre of his forefathers.

633. And Francis gathered again many soldiers when at Lyons, and he sent them to Italy, and the admiral, the commander of his host, at their head ; and their numbers were thirty thousand. And there gathered to him more men of valor, and his camp increased much ; and they went to Novara, and took it in the month of October, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-three. And they removed thence, and went to Milan (it would not be believed if related), and they besieged it many days. And Milan was straitly shut up, none went out and none came in. And the men of Venice sent the duke of Urbino, their general of the host, to assist the men of the emperor with a mighty hand, and they also drew nigh unto the city.

634. And the French saw it, and went off from the city ; and the men of the emperor girded themselves with might, and went out to war in the field, and set the battle in array against them day by day. And it came to pass one day, that they

fell upon them suddenly, and the French were slain before them at Garlasco*, and at Binasco†, and at Rivico‡, and at Mortara§, and at Vigevano||, and on the banks of the river; and they left the battering rams, and fled, as before the sword, for they feared before them; and also in Alessandria, the remnant that escaped were slain, and they went to Novara and were saved there. And they removed from Novara at the end of the month of May, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-four, and returned to France; and the land had rest four months.

635. And the duke of Bourbon came to Genoa, and went also to Milan, and was to the nobles of the hosts of the emperor instead of eyes, and to the host of the king as an offence, and a stone of stumbling in those days.

636. And Prospero Colonna, the general of the host of the emperor, died in the same year; and it was grievous in the eyes of the emperor, for a very lively and active man he was in his generation.

637. And the Sophi, king of Persia, died also in the same year, and his son reigned in his stead; and he was young, and Solyman the Turk was very glad.

* גארלאסקו.

† בינסקו.

‡ ריביקו.

§ מורטרה.

|| בוגיבינא.

638. And Solyman sent the generals of his host unto the borders of Hungary, and made much spoil. And they besieged Sereno*, the fortress, which is on the banks of the river Danube; and they took it, and set a watch in the midst of it. And also on the other side of the river, Solyman builded a strongly fortified castle, and the Turks dwell there until this day.

639. In those days, the Jews returned to dwell at Genoa, for the Adorni were men of kindness towards the Jews; and they brought my brother-in-law, the Rabbi Joseph, the son of David, thither, contrary to the law of that perverted city†; and he abode there many days, and was a physician unto them.

640. And there was a plague in Lombardy, and in all the corners of Italy; and much people died. And the Lord sent wolves also upon them. And they devoured the women and the children in the field, and the travellers on their way; and there was none to deliver from their paws. And the plague was also at Lirma‡, my dwelling-place; and I went out from thence, and sat under one of the bushes until forty days were completed; and I kept there my bed, until there was but one step between me and death. And I cried unto the

* זירינו.

† עיר טוככה.

‡ לירמה.

Lord, and He heard me from the dwelling of His holiness. Therefore I said, “ I will praise thee, O Lord, with my whole heart, in the assembly of the upright and in the congregation ; and to thy name I will sing*.”

641. And when the nobles of the hosts of the emperor, saw that the nobles of the king could not prevail against them these three times, they made up their mind to go to France to war against him there. And the duke of Bourbon went with them, and was to them instead of eyes. And the men of England, and of Spain, thought also to make war against France in those days. And they gathered also a host of horsemen and weapons of war in abundance. And they passed the mountains in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-four, and besieged Marseilles, and the days were the days of the ripening of the grapes. And Rienzo† from Ziri‡, saved them from their hands, and they did nothing in those days. And Francis, the king, gathered together many soldiers, and went against them ; and they went away from it, and returned to Italy in haste by the way of the sea-shore ; and Francis went before them another way, and came to Milan as swift as the eagle would fly, and took it in

* Ps. cxi.

† רינצו.

‡ צירי.

the month of October; and the report went over the whole earth: and the men of the emperor fled before him; and all the troops of Cremona and Pavia were scattered, for they said, “The French will become tired of watching against these fortified cities, and in the mean time the Germans will come to aid us.” And the ships of the king came to the borders of Genoa, and they took Savona and Arzi* in those days.

642. And the men of the emperor fortified themselves in Pavia, and Antonio Leyva† was over the host in those days. And King Francis went against Pavia on the tenth day of October, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-four, and he pitched his camp round about it, and they cast up trenches against it, and its walls fell to the ground. And Pavia became besieged, and all the city was moved, for the fear of the French fell upon them. And the battle was strong between them at that time, and much people of them fell. And Pavia was straitly shut up, none went out, neither did any come in. And they ate in her every unclean thing, by reason of famine, all those days. And they warred against it daily, but could not prevail against it, and

* ארצי.

† Here spelled ליבה, but afterwards ליווא, and ליוא.

the king said, “ Let us sit here until the bread cease;” and they died of hunger.

643. And the marquess of Saluzzi* was at Savona in those days. And he sent about three thousand men to Varese†, which is on the borders of Genoa, and they abode there. And it came to pass, one day, that Antoniato Adorno, the doge of Genoa, sent there four thousand men with fifteen ships of war, with Don Hugo Moncada‡, the chief captain of the host of the emperor at their head; and they went on shore between Varese and Savona, and encamped before the city. And Don Hugo gave command, and they brake down its walls by the cannons which were in the ships; but he effected nothing, for they fortified themselves in the midst thereof. And the king’s ships came to Varese§ at that time, and the ships of Genoa drew back with shame; and Don Hugo and the men who were with him passed over the ford of Varese, for they regarded their lives. And they pitched their camp on the sea-shore; and the ships of the king drew nigh, and they went away from the city; and the soldiers, who were at Varese, chose Gigante Corso over them for captain, and they went out from the city and pursued

* פאלוצי.

† ווארזי.

‡ אונגו מונקאדה.

§ וואראזי.

after them. And the men of Don Hugo were smitten before them; and they fled for their lives. And also the men of the king's ships filled their hands, and shot with stones upon them, between the rocks when they passed, and there fell of them about five hundred men. And Don Hugo, and the nobles who were with him, were taken alive, and they put them in prison; and the ships of the king came against Genoa, and they took a great ship which was there; and the whole city was moved because of them.

644. And Pavia was straitly shut up, and the French warred against it, and many fell slain to the ground daily. And Antonio Leyva* spake kindly to the inhabitants of the city, and their spirit revived when he spake unto them: and it came to pass, on the tenth day of the month of January, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-five, that the hosts of the emperor went out from the city; and they fell suddenly upon the French, which were over the battering rams†, and slew them with the edge of the sword; and two were taken alive, and they brought them into the city. And on the twenty-seventh day of the month came the duke of Bourbon to Lodi, and with him were sixteen thousand Germans, who were exercised

* ליויא.

† i. e. The French artillerymen.

for war, and they united themselves with the Spaniards and the Italians who were there, so they became as one in his hand.

645. And the king sent soldiers and artillery between Lodi and Pavia, to watch the road. Again he commanded, and they gathered together all the soldiers, and they dwelled together. And the men of the emperor removed from Lodi, and went on the road for Milan; and the king sent also thither against them. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that the Marquess Pescara went out against Santo Angelo*, and they delivered it into his hand on that day.

646. And on the first day of the month of February came all the hosts of the emperor into the borders of Pavia, and encamped there. And the men of the king remained on their ward day and night; and they sounded with cymbals and with trumpets of jubilee-cry, that their voices were heard from afar. And the inhabitants of the city went out to them daily. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that the men of the emperor drew nigh again to the city, and they sent messengers to Antonio Leyva†, and all the people of the country were glad, and their mourning was turned into joy. And they drew nigh again with a high hand, and

* הנטו אנגילו.

† ליבה.

about two thousand cubits were between them and the city ; and the king was very wroth. And the king commanded, and they fortified themselves round about, and stood on their ward for fear of the night*. And it came to pass, on the eighth day of the month of February, that the nobles of the emperor heard that the gun-powder was consumed in the city ; and they sent forty men riding on swift horses, who brought them gunpowder in abundance every one in his sack, and they passed the camp of the enemy in the midst, and came into the city, and Antonio Levy was very glad : and it came to pass, in the morning, that he commanded, and they brought the cannon up to the tower, and battered with them the camp of the Swiss, and much people fell among them ; and the men of the emperor heard it, and sounded the trumpets, and gave the signal for battle. And the horsemen of the emperor ran ; and the cavalry of the king went out against them, and slew them ; and the Spaniards drew back. And they sent against them three hundred Burgundians clothed with coats of mail ; and the French fled, and cried with a loud voice ; and the men of the camp fired with twenty cannons, and shot on them with balls ; and there fell of the

* i. e. For fear of an attack during the night.

Burgundians many slain to the ground, and the rest fled at their noise, and returned to their tents with shame; and the battle ceased.

647. And on the seventeenth day of the month of February, there came some of the men of the host which belonged to Rienzo Orsino, to Savona; and the men of Duke Francesco Sforza, who was at Alessandria, and they were slain before them, and they fled, and there were not left two together; and the king was very wroth.

648. And the Marquess Pescara said, "I will go down into the camp of these Frenchmen, and will see what will become of their dreams;" and he went in the darkness of the night, and three hundred Spaniards and Italians with him. And he fell into the place of the artillery, and they slew the watchmen with the edge of the sword, and cast the cannon to the ground. And he commanded farther, and they cast them into the trenches, and returned with gladness. And the French arose from their sleep and fought against them, and there fell many of them slain to the ground, and the chief over the artillery was taken alive. And they returned to their tents, and those that died in the slaughter were five hundred men; and this was to the shame of the French.

649. And on the twenty-third day of the month, the hosts of the emperor gave the signal for the

battle; and Antonio Leyva* was glad, and he arrayed the soldiers who were with him; and they remained on their ward that day.

650. And it came to pass, on the twenty-fourth day of the month of February, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-five, in the middle of the night, that they brought the hosts of the emperor, and divided the people into three heads. And they cast down the walls of Barco†, where the king's host was, every one passed over, and they came with a high hand, and gave the signal for battle. In that night the sleep of the king left him; and he commanded, and they divided his hosts into four heads, and they put the battle in array there with a great tumult, and much people fell of the French, for fear came upon them as desolation, suddenly, and the soldiers could not find their own hands‡.

651. And Antonio Leyva§ heard it, and went out also and fell upon them suddenly; and the horsemen and the footmen fled before him, for his fear fell upon them; and Antonio Leyva drew near again. And the battle was strong between them all the night, and the earth was rent because of their voices. The morning dawned, and the

* Here again, ליווא.

† ברקו.

‡ i. e. They were in the utmost consternation.

§ ליווא.

men of the king girded themselves with might, insomuch that the Spaniards drew back, and the French took the cannons from their hand with might. That day was dark, cloudy, and misty, by reason of the grievous smoke of the guns, so that hardly one might know his brother.

652. And when the Marquess Pescara, the chief of the emperor's host, saw the people that were naked, he went to the duke of Bourbon, saying, "The children are come to the birth; but there is no strength to bring forth. And now speak, I pray thee, kindly, to the people which follow thee. And I shall do so also, and we will war against these Frenchmen, and our fame will spread over all the earth; for the day which we desired, we have found and have seen;" and they did so, and they put the battle in array there, and the marquess passed over before them, and he warred against those nations, and they fell slain to the ground before him. And also the Marquess del Vasto* filled his hand, and they were counted by him as vain and as nothing, and they slew among them a great slaughter. And when the Swiss saw that the evil was determined against them, they turned their backs, and fled before them. And the Italians and Germans were left to their destruction, and fell slain to the ground.

* דיל וואסטו.

651. Then did the horse-hoofs stamp, when the horsemen also put the battle in array, and the earth shook at their voice. And the chief captains of the imperial hosts placed five hundred footmen bearing guns in the midst of the cavalry with subtlety. And it came to pass, as they were fighting, that they suddenly fired their guns on the cavalry of the French, and many of them fell; and the rest fled for their lives, for they feared lest the evil should overtake them; and the viceroy of the emperor and the duke of Bourbon also filled their hands at that time. And the king also, as well as his nobles, fought on that day, and all his mighty men fell before his face slain to the ground; and the king ran with his sword drawn in his hand, and slew the chief of the Germans, and he fell slain to the ground; also, the Marquess Pescara was wounded in his face, his belly and his thigh; for all this his anger was not turned away, and he spake kindly to his men, and they again put the battle in array, and the French were smitten before them, and fled; and they slew the horse of King Francis, who fell to the ground, and they took him, and he was delivered into the hand of the viceroy of the emperor at that time. And also the king of Navarre and many nobles and honorable men who were with them, were taken in that battle. And many were slain by the edge

of the sword; and they were like dung upon the face of the field, and like the corn after the reaper, which none gathereth. And it came to pass, as they were fighting, that the duke of Alençon* saw their distress, and went out from the camp and four hundred horsemen with him. So they fled, and went on their journey to France. And the hosts of the emperor came into the camp of the king upon the slain and took great spoil, and came to the city with gladness. And the city of Pavia rejoiced and was glad. •

652. Now there died of the men of the emperor on that day, the chief of the cavalry and eight hundred men; and of the host of the king, there fell in that slaughter some of the Italians and Germans and one thousand five hundred Swiss, and five hundred fell into the river Tessino, when they fled: so they died. And also many nobles and honorable men of the French fell in that slaughter, and the number of the dead was eight thousand men. The like thing had not occurred in the gates of Pavia from the time it became a nation. And the nobles of the French gave ransom for their souls, some more and some less, and they returned to their country. And the viceroy of the emperor, the duke of Bourbon, and the nobles with them, went and bowed themselves before this imprisoned

king with their faces to the ground. And they spake kindly unto him, and comforted him, saying, "Let it not be grievous in thine eyes, O king, for the issue of war belongeth unto God, and who will say to him, What doest thou?" And the duke of Bourbon drew his sword, and gave it into the hand of the king, and fell upon his knees and said, "I pray thee, forgive the offence of thy servant, for I have sinned against my lord a great sin; and now, if thou wilt forgive, forgive according to thy great kindness; and if not, slay me utterly, I pray thee, for I am a son of death, because I have lifted up mine hand against my lord the king." And the king said, "The thing came forth from the Lord, and thou hast not sinned, but hast served thy lord the emperor with all thy strength; but because of thy meekness and humility, thou hast spoken thus: arise now, and become a son of valor." And through this thing, Bourbon gained a good name among the kings and counsellors of the land, as well as for his fighting in the day of battle amongst the mighty; and his name became very precious. [עד]

653. And the nobles of the emperor led the king to Pizzigitone*, and set a watch over him. Francis was twenty-two years old when he became king, and for ten years his power and strength, and

* פיצגיטון.

affability were seen ; but he could not stand before the mightiness of this great Emperor Charles. And the king of Scotland who was with him fled into the house of a miller, and hid himself, and said to him*, “ Be silent, I am a king, I will shew thee kindness, if thou savest my soul from death.” And the miller rose up against him, and slew him, and hid him in the sand. And the thing became known unto the nobles of the emperor, and they hanged him on a gallows, and his violent dealing came down upon his own pate ; for who shall stretch forth his hand against the king and be unpunished ?†—And the viceroy and the nobles who were with him, brought the king of *France*, by order of the emperor, to Genoa, in the month of May ; and they sent him with ships unto Spain, and put him into the fort of Madrid and set a watch over him ; and he remained there many days.

654. And the hosts of the emperor who were in Italy, came to Piedmont and took Moncaleri‡, and Caramagnole, and Ranconis§, and Saluzzi||. And the marquess fled before them and abode in the fortress Roil¶. And unless his brother Jean Louis had stood in the breach, there had not remained in those cities one stone upon another. And they abode there many days.

* Probably to the miller.

† This anecdote is unfounded.

‡ מונקאלירי.

§ ראקוניס.

|| סאלוצי.

¶ רואיל.

655. And Andrea Doria refused to go with the king to Spain, but went to Rome; and Clement, the pope, made him general of his host.

656. And it came to pass, after many days, that the Emperor Charles gave to the King Francis his sister Leonora to wife, and they made a covenant together. And the king gave him his two sons for a pledge, saying, "Thou mayest kill them if I overstep this covenant, or this oath, to do harm*."

657. And the emperor sent to the king a gift of eight mules and a chariot, and the king received it, and was glad in his heart. And it came to pass, after eight days, that the emperor removed from Toledo and met the king near Madrid, and he embraced him, and fell upon his neck and kissed him, and they rejoiced in love. And he intreated the king much; and he went to the right hand of the emperor, and they came into the fortress, and the earth was moved at the noise of the cannon, and they sat down to eat bread and rejoiced together at that time. And it came to pass, on the third day, that the two kings went to the Ileiscast†, because the sister of the emperor was there; and all the people rejoiced. And the next morning King Francis took her hand, and

* Comp. Gen. xlii. 37.

† אילישקאש, (?) Alcazar. *Robertson's Charles V.* Vol. II. Book IV., to the year 1525.

the emperor gave her to him for a wife before the people, and the nobles; and he loved her. And they made a great feast for all who came into the city during three days. And the drinking was according to law; none did compel: for so the king had appointed to all the officers of his house, that they should do according to every man's pleasure*.

658. And the king journeyed to return to his country, France, on the fourth day. And the emperor went with him to accompany him, and they separated one from the other. And they returned home; and the king went to Fontarabia, which is by the sea-shore, and they found there a small ship which they had made ready to cross over. The king went down into the ship, and his sons went in another ship from the other side; and they journeyed. And it came to pass, while they were in the ships midway, that the two sons rose up and bowed their faces to the dust; he kissed them, they wept, and his ships went on their way. The king went on shore, and rode upon a horse, and went to Bayonne which is in Navarre on the same day; and his two sons went to the Ileiscas† and they bowed down to the sister of the emperor, the wife of their father; and they received them with joy, and loved them greatly.

* Esther i. 8.

† אילישקאש.

659. And the chiefs of the hosts of the emperor restored Francesco Sforza to the throne of the dukedom of Milan ; and his sovereignty was established for a few days.

660. And it came to pass, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-six, that the sultan Solyman collected troops, and went to Hungary with a multitude of people and a strong hand. And the Hungarians were not reckoned for any thing in those days, because Ladislaus had not set his heart upon war ; and in the days of Lewis they were not tempted to fight ; and their heart was lifted up, but to no purpose. And King Lewis made ready his chariot, and took his people with him, being twenty-four thousand chosen men. And they went to Mohacz, which is on the banks of the river Danube, and they encamped there on the river side. And Lewis hastened to war, before the Woywode of Transylvania arrived with the men of the host which were with him ; for Paul Tomorri*, the bishop of Kolozins†, a Franciscan friar, who longed to fight against the Turks at that time, urged him. And it came to pass, when they were between Buda and Belgrade, that they lifted up their eyes, and they saw, and behold, the first troop or

* מומוריאן, a Franciscan monk, archbishop of Golocza.

† קולוצינסקי, perhaps a *nomen gentilitium*.

company of Solyman came up, and there was not one feeble person in his camp. And they amounted to twenty thousand horsemen, all handling the sword, and exercised in war. And they ran into the field, and divided themselves into four heads. Five thousand ran until noon, and five thousand changed with them until sunset, and five thousand until midnight, and five thousand until day-break. And they gave no rest to the Hungarians all the day, and the Hungarians were grieved because of them; and they could not drink of the water of the river, which was on their left hand, and they digged wells for themselves to draw water, and to give drink to the multitude of their cattle.

661. And the Sultan Solyman drew nigh, and his host was twenty thousand chosen horsemen besides footmen; and they pitched their tents over against them.

662. And Paul Tomorri, by whose word the king was directed, mustered the men of the host and the horsemen and the artillery. And those men who had no experience in war he left to watch the waggons and baggage, and they fortified themselves there; and he put the king into the second camp; and a thousand horsemen exercised in war he left there to assist and to guard him. And it came to pass, on the twenty-ninth day of the month of August, that the Turks came, and

they put fire into the battering rams twice ; and there died not one of the camp of the Hungarians, for the stones of the cannons went over them, and passed the camp. And the Hungarians also put fire into their battering rams ; and there fell many of the Turks. And the Turks drew nigh, and set their battle in array, and many fell slain to the ground. And the Turks turned the battle against those who watched the baggage. And Paul Tomorri sent there the thousand horsemen which were left with the king to guard him ; and the host of the Hungarians were smitten before the Turks. And on that day the Turks slew with the edge of the sword Paul Tomorri and the bishop of Istrigonia* and Waradino, and many nobles and honorable men from Transylvania. And when Lewis, the king, saw that evil was determined against him also, he fled before them, and he fell into the miry clay under his horse ; and as he had no help, he died. And the Germans and the Bohemians were slain with the edge of the sword on that day. And the remnant of the horsemen [w] fled for their lives. They did not look back, for they feared lest evil should befall them.

663. And Solyman said at that time, “ Two hundred thousand men follow after me ; how could the hearts of the Hungarians be beguiled, to make

* Strigonium.

war against me?" And a fear from God* fell upon the inhabitants of Buda, and they went out from the city, and fled for their lives. And the Jews were left in the city; and they cried unto the Lord, and he heard their voice from his temple. And Solyman did not know of this. And he drew near, and approached the city. And the heads of the synagogue went out to meet him, and fell down before his feet, and they gave the city into his hand; and he entered the city. And against the children of Israel no one moved his tongue; and of all that belonged to them, not a shoe-latchet was taken on this day. And Solyman set his eyes upon them, and he sent them in ships to his country; and they dwell there until this day. And the two images of brass, which a cunning workman made for King Matthias, Solyman took, and sent them to Constantinople, his capital, and set them up in a wide place of the city: and Solyman garrisoned Buda and fortified it, and returned to his country; and also Peterwardein and Syrmia he took in that year.

664. And Francis Sforza, duke of Milan, revolted against the emperor, and he made a covenant with Clement the pope, and with the citizens of Venice. And Francis also, the king of

* i. e. Great fear.

France, united himself to them, and was their arm, Selah! And the troops of Pope Clement were in Parma at that time. And Francesco, duke of Urbino, the chief of the Venetian host, led his troops to Verona in the month of May; and they abode there during the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-six.

665. And Antonio Leyva and the Marquess del Guasto, the chiefs of the emperor's troops, heard it; and they also gathered the captains of the armies which were spread throughout Piedmont; and they came in haste to Milan and abode there.

666. And all the people of the country from every side arose, and shut the folding doors of the gate, and cried with a loud voice, "Duke! Duke!" and the earth was rent at their voice; and the Germans feared, and they gathered themselves also, and set the battle in array against them; and the city of Milan was in consternation. And the men of the city threw stones at them through the windows. And the Germans slew them with a great slaughter. And they fought with the Germans and the Spaniards, during the night and the next morning until noon. And they rang the bells which were in their prayer-houses, and the earth was rent at their voice. And when the duke saw that evil was determined against

them, they ran to the fortress, he and the nobles with him.

667. And Antonio Maria Crebilo and Francesco Visconti, ran into the streets of the town, and spake kindly to the men of the town, and they went about with their lives in their hands all that day; and they said to them, “ We beseech you, brethren, do not so wickedly* ; why will you make this city desolate?” And also Antonio Leyva†, and the Marquess del Guasto, filled their hand at that time; and the country had rest. And many of the inhabitants of the city fell in that slaughter. And houses, filled with every good thing, were given up to pillage; and Milan became very poor.

668. And the troops of the emperor besieged the fortress; and it was straitly shut up; none went out, and none came in: and they took all the cities of the duke. There was nothing left in the hand of the duke at that time, save only the citadels of Cremona and of Milan.

669. Then the commanders of the army of Pope Clement spake one with another; and the duke of Urbino, the chief captain of the Venetian host, marched from Verona by the way of the river Avio‡; and they were united at that time. And Malatesta marched to Bayonne, and two thousand

* Gen. xix. 7. † אנטוניאו ליווא. ‡ אַויו (?) Aviano.

infantry and one thousand cavalry with him, and he encamped against Lodi, and Ludovico Vistarini* who was one of the principal men of the city, delivered it into his hand; and he gave it up to pillage at that day. And it came to pass, after another eight days, that the troops of the pope and the Venetian army came and encamped at Marignano; and they removed thence, and marched to Milan, and they besieged it, and cast up trenches against it, and the city was blockaded.

670. And by all this the wrath of the imperial troops was not turned away from the fortress, and they had warfare within and without; and the city of Milan was in consternation.

671. Now the duke of Bourbon, the viceroy of the emperor, came at that time to Genoa in ships, as the eagle would fly, and four hundred men with him, and he marched to Vigevano†, and passed the river Tessino in the darkness of the night, and the marquess went out against him; and he came to Milan with a high hand. And it came to pass, when he came, that he spake kindly to the men of that desolate city; and their spirit revived when he spake to them. And the men of the emperor girded themselves with might; and they threw great stones into the camp of the enemies, and his fear fell upon them, and they

* ויסטארין.

† לוויגביני.

went from the city, and returned to Marignano; and the famine was heavy in the fortress at that time.

672. And Duke Francesco and the nobles who were with him, being in want of every thing, assembled, and surrendered the fortress to the chiefs of the imperial troops, and had liberty to go on their way. So Duke Francesco went into the camp of the confederates which were on the river Ambra*, and he came into the tent of the duke of Urbino, and they assembled there. And Chirarino†, the chief captain of the imperial host, was at Cremona at that time, and two thousand five hundred Germans and one thousand Italians with him.

673. Whilst they were still at Amra‡, the marquess of Saluzzi§ and Frederico Gonzaga of Busilo||, came there from France with a mighty hand: so they became confederates, and they encamped there. And they removed from thence, and went to Cremona; and they offered to them peace, but they would not hearken. And the Germans which were there, besieged the fortress. And the miners made trenches round about, and put a garrison into it. And it came to pass, in the darkness of the night, that the Germans passed

* אמרה.

† קירארינו.

‡ אמרה.

§ שלצי.

|| בחילו.

secretly through them into the heart of the fortress, and made a great slaughter in the garrison ; and the rest fled for their lives. And the chiefs of the confederated army assembled, and Duke Francesco passed over to Cassano*, and he encamped against the city with the troops of Venice. And he offered to it conditions of peace. And they hardened their hearts, and would not hearken. And they set forty pieces of cannon round about, and battered its walls. And the earth was rent at their noise ; and before one could know his neighbour, they battered its walls a second time ; and the earth was moved. And Corradino† sent to them, saying, “ Make a covenant with us, and I will deliver up the city and the fulness thereof.” And they made a covenant with them and went their way. And the duke came into the fortress, and he set a guard in the midst of it at that time ; and the troops of Venice removed from Cremona and went to Trumello‡, for there were the troops of the confederates at that time.

674. On the sixteenth day of the month of August, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-six, seventeen ships of King Francis came and took [עז] Savona ; and they united themselves with seventeen Venetian ships, and

* קאסאנו.

† קוראדינו.

‡ טורמילו.

five ships of the pope, and blockaded Genoa. And Genoa was straitly shut up; none went out, and none came in by the way of the sea: and Genoa became very poor.

675. Now the emperor sent thirty thousand Germans into Italy to the assistance of the duke of Bourbon, his viceroy, and two hundred horsemen, and George Frankispir* at their head. And the men of Venice were afraid, and they put a guard into their city. And the men of the pope went to Parma at that time and they remained there, and the host of the Marquess Saluzzi remained upon the river Adda; and the duke of Urbino and the nobles which followed him passed over the river, and they went against the Germans on the borders of Mantua, and fought against Borgo-Forte† from morning until evening; and they went to Governo‡, that the duke of Ferrara should give them provisions, and battering rams; and they rested there. And they arose early in the morning and returned to meet them, and the artillery fired and struck Giovanni de Medici§ in his right thigh, and they brought him to Mantua, and he died there. And the confederates drew back,

* פראנקישפיר. Perhaps the renowned George of Frundsberg, or Fronsperg, who headed the imperialists in Italy, and died an octogenarian at Mindelheim.

† בורגו פורטי.

‡ גובירנו.

§ יואנין דמדיצי.

and the Germans passed by Istia* over the river Po, and marched to Fiorenzola†, and encamped on the borders of Parma at that time.

676. In the same year, in the month of June, the Colonnese‡ were gathered together, and at their head the Cardinal Colonna and Don Hugo Moncada§, and they went to their own cities and assembled troops and also horsemen to war against the pope. And when Clement saw it, he also gathered about six thousand men, and the Count Anguillara Orsino|| at their head, and brought them into the city of Rome, and they remained there about a month; and Vespasiano Colonna¶ spake to the heart of the pope with subtlety, saying, “The whole house of Colonna and Don Hugo Moncada are thy servants, O my lord; and now fear not the men that follow us, for we will send them *back* to the cities of the kingdom**, as thy soul liveth, my lord.” And Clement said, “I will also send away these men of war, if the thing be so.” So he went out from before his face, and sent them to the cities of the kingdom. And Clement believed it, and he sent his men away; and they returned every man to his house. And the Colonnese said, “Now is the time

* איסטיאה (?) Este.

† פיארינצלה.

‡ דון אוננו מונקאדה § קלונים, the followers of Colonna.

|| אנגווילארה אורסינו.

¶ וויספיסיאנו קולונה.

** The *kingdom* means probably the German empire.

to laugh:" and they hastened and came into the gates of Rome every morning; and they came into the city, and went into the palace where Clement was, and gave it up to pillage. And Clement fled into the fortress of San Angelo, and shut himself up there; and he spake with Hugo Moncada, and said that he would bring over the men of war whom he had in Lombardy; so they went from him, and the hostility ceased. Now when Clement saw that there was rest, he gathered his troops together a second time, and sent them into the towns of the Colonnas and set them on fire, and they destroyed all the goodly part thereof. And they also gathered together their troops, and went into the cities of the church* and took much spoil; and the war was fierce between them at that time.

677. In those days, the troops of the emperor, which were with the duke of Bourbon, went out from Pavia and went to Piacenza, but could not prevail against it; and they went to Borgo Bel-donin† and gave it over to pillage; and they united themselves with the Germans, who followed George Frankispir; and they went to Bologna, but could not prevail against it, for the Marquess Saluzzi and the confederates were in the midst thereof at that time.

678. And the host of Bourbon went over; and

* i. e. The territory of the pope.

† בעלדונין.

he gave them Florence to plunder, and they went into the tower of Santo Pietro*, and to Bagnio Cavallo†, and to Codoniola‡, and to Brisigila§; and gave them up to pillage, and Meldola|| they burned with fire; and there was none to deliver from their hand. In those days, the troops of Clement came into the towns of the Colonnese, and they took them, and made a great spoil. And the viceroy who was at Naples, went and cast himself down before his feet with subtlety a second time, saying, “ The emperor desireth peace with thee, and with the rest of the kings of the uncircumcised, for he longeth to war with the enemies of our laws; and now, O my lord, only take away from the cities of the kingdom this death.” And he believed his words, and sent to recall the chief captains of his hosts, and Rienzo Orsino¶ and Horazio Bayon** returned to Rome; and the country had rest.

679. And Clement wrote to the lords of Florence, saying, “ The emperor hath peace with us, and now lend to his viceroy two hundred thousand ducats, which will be a help to him, if your hand can obtain it, for he is my brother.” And

* הַאֲנֶטוֹ פּוֹטֵרוֹ.

† בִּאֲנִיָּא קֶאוּוֹאֵלוֹ.

‡ קוֹדוֹנִיּוֹלָה.

§ בְּרִיזִיגִילָה.

|| מִלְדוֹלָה.

¶ רִינְצוֹ אֹרְסִינוֹ.

** אֹרַאצִּיּוֹ בִּאִיּוֹן.

the viceroy went to Florence, and they did according to all he had written ; and he turned from them and went his way.

680.. Now the host of Bourbon went on their journey, and passed over the mountains ; and the spirit of the people became weary on the road ; and they went to Arezzo*, which is in Tuscany, and encamped there. And they met the host of the viceroy which came from Rome, and he honored him much, and saved his life from destruction ; for his men arose against him, and Bourbon saved him from their hand at that time. And they assembled together, and the viceroy went unto the borders of Sienna†, and remained there several days.

681. And twenty-two great ships came from Spain, and in them were many troops. And the men of Genoa prepared ships to meet them. And it came to pass, on a day, that they came against Genoa, when the ships of the confederates were arrayed against it ; and Andrea Doria went out to them with his six ships, and they fired guns upon them. And one of them went down into the deep like a stone ; and the rest fled, for they were confounded before them. And the famine was sore in Genoa at that time.

* אריצו.

† סיאנה.

682. And in the twenty-eighth day of the month of April, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-seven, the inhabitants of Florence arose, all the people of every quarter, and took the castle, and shook the yoke of the Medici from off them: 'and the host of Bourbon was very near to them. And Hippolito di Medici, and the Cardinal Cortona,' returned from visiting the chief captains of the confederate armies, that were encamped in the suburbs of the city round about; and they went into the castle, and swore not to stretch forth their hand against the rebels; and they gave the castle into their hands. And Bourbon refused to go thither, because of the host of the confederates which was near him. And he removed from the mountain of Vargio*, and marched; and in four days he entered the gates of Rome, and he knew not that there were giants† there.

683. And the commanders of the confederate armies went after him by another way, but without success; and Bourbon passed before them, and encamped against the city round about. And he arrayed his host in Belvidere‡; and he spake kindly to the men of war, and said to them, "It has been certainly announced to me,

* מֶהֱב וַאֲרֵגִיאוֹ.

† וְלֹא יָדַע כִּי רִפְאִים שָׁם, Bourbon knew not the valor of the Roman Garrison. Comp. Gen. vi. 4.

‡ בִּלְחִידֵיר.

that I must die when I war against this populous city, and who knoweth but at this time I have reached thither; it is the will of God, who doeth whatever is pleasing [נע] in his sight; for when the body goeth down into the dust, the soul returneth to God who gave it; and there shall remain of it an everlasting name which shall never be cut off." So they abode there that night, and his sleep left his eyes all the night until perfect day, and he went to review his armies; for his heart was like unto the heart of a lion.

684. And it came to pass, on the first day of Pentecost, in the year two hundred and eighty-seven, of the small number, which is the sixth day of the month of May in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-seven, that Bourbon approached the city, clothed in a scaly coat of mail, to view the walls; and the artillerymen shot, and wounded him in his side, and he fell to the ground. And he commanded his servants, saying, "Take me away out of the road, and throw a garment over me, lest the courage of those who come to me be softened, so that they stop." And his servants did to him according as he had commanded them; and he died. And when he was taken out of the road, all the people of the host passed and approached the city, and warred against it with a mighty hand; and it was dark,

cloudy, and misty, at that time; and they who were in the midst of it warred, and filled their hand, and the earth shook at the noise of the cannons. And the commanders of the emperor's hosts shouted aloud and spake kindly to the men of war; and they warred round about the city, and the groanings of the sons of death were heard from afar, and much people died at that time. And they blew with trumpets and tabrets; and the earth was rent at their noise. And they cast down the walls; and the Germans came into the city. And many princes and honorable men of the land fell at that time; and the Spaniards came, and shouted out with a loud voice, "Sword! Sword!" And the Romans fled before them, and fell in the streets, and they trampled upon them with horses so that they died. And they raised the draw-bridges of the fortress at that time, and much people died there. And men exercised in war gathered themselves in Ponte Sisto* to watch, lest the Spaniards should pass. And there were about two hundred men riding on horses. And they slew many of the Spaniards, and many fell slain to the ground, and the city became desolate; and Monte Giordano†, and part of Monte Fiore‡ they set on fire, and

* פונטו סיסטו.

† מונטי יורדאנו.

‡ בונטו פיאורו.

the city of Rome was in consternation. And there fled the two cardinals, Rienzo Orsino* and Horazio, into the fortress, and Clement set Rienzo at the head of the people, and they set a watch round about.

685. And Rome was given up to be plundered; and the houses were pillaged, and the women were lain with, and the city went into captivity, and most of the priests were cut off from the city. And the nuns they ravished, and squeezed the breasts of their virginity, and plundered their whole property. And they gave up the chief castle which belonged to the pope; and all the high places of the saints they gave up to be spoiled, and they brought out of them vessels of silver and vessels of gold, and graven images, and molten images in abundance. And the bones of the saints they threw into the mire of the streets. And they mocked the cardinals and the priests, and put on their clothes and walked in the streets of the town to blaspheme and to revile: for their way was as the uncleanness of an impure woman in the eyes of these German Lutherans; and Rome became very poor.

686. And also the Jews who were there, were given up to be spoiled, and of them also some fell

in that slaughter; and their cry went up towards heaven.

687. And when Clement saw that he had no deliverer, he desired to speak to the viceroy of the emperor, and he came into the city. And every man swore not to hurt his neighbour in those days. And the Spaniards would not let the viceroy go, and Cattinara spake with him, and demanded of him five hundred thousand scudi*, and all the priests and all the soldiers which were with him there. And Clement said, “I will speak in their ears, and return;” so he went away from him. And he spake in the ears of those men, and they said, “We will die this time, and in the hand of these proud ones we will not fall.”

688. Then Florence was moved, and they sought to lay hand on the Medici, for the shadow† of the pope had departed from them. And they said to Hippolito‡, and to the Cardinal Cortona§, “Your eyes do see that evil is determined; and now take off your yoke from the inhabitants of the country, and every one will return to his house.” And they did so, and made with them a covenant, and said that they would give back the fortresses at that time. And the Medici went to Pisa, and

* מנינים, i. e. lit. shields, here *scudi*, crowns.

† צל, *shadow*; i. e. protection. ‡ איפילישו. § קורטונה.

would not give up the fortresses, but garrisoned them. And they fled to Lucca in the darkness of the night, and abode there several days. And Florence returned to its former condition; and they set over her councillors as at the first; and the garrison gave the fortresses into their hands for full money; and they went their way.

689. And Clement answered Cattinara*, and said that he would give to the Spaniards and the Germans four hundred thousand scudi†, and twelve of his kinsmen as a pledge, and he sware to dwell in whichever of the cities the emperor should please; and they did so. And the Spaniards came into the fortress, and they set up their standards upon the walls; and the rest of the soldiers went out from the midst of that desolate city, and went their way. And many of the Spaniards who returned to their country filled with every good thing, Andrea Doria seized in the midst of the sea, and took from them great riches.

690. And there was a great plague in Rome and its environs, and in all Tuscany; and in Florence and its environs died fifty thousand souls of that plague.

691. In those days Alfonso‡, duke of Fer-

* קאטטנארי.

† i. c. Crown.

‡ אלפונסו.

rara, went with a mighty hand, and encamped against Modena, and took it, and he went also to Riso*, and they gave the city into his hand; and they became to him servants unto tribute unto this day.

692. And when Francis, the king of France, saw that Bourbon was dead, he hardened his heart. very much. And he made a covenant with the men of Venice, and with the king of England, and with Francesco Sforza, for their wrath was kindled concerning that which was done at Rome; and they said, “Come on; let us deal wisely with him†.” And he sent a great army into Italy in that year, and Lautrec was over the host in those days. And they came towards Boscho‡ which is in Fraschi§, and about one thousand Germans were in the midst of it, and they besieged it, and cast up trenches against it by day and by night, and took it; and the Germans they sent away free, and took no spoil, only their weapons of war. And they gave up the city to be spoiled; and burned it with fire, and every thing went from it at that time.

693. And they went to Alessandria, and besieged it, and took it, and gave it to the Duke Francesco Sforza, and went their way.

694. And the famine was grievous in Genoa at

* ריון.

‡ בוסקו.

† The emperor.

§ פראסקיא.

that time, for the ships of the confederates besieged it; and the price of a measure of flour in Genoa and its environs was eight golden scudi; and some died of hunger. And they sent four ships to watch them who went to buy corn; and they pursued after them to Corsica, and the men rowed ashore and fled. And two [עז] of the ships they set on fire. Now Andrea Doria was the commander of the king's army at that time. And Antonio Adorno, the doge, sent soldiers to Porto Pin*; and they fortified it, and abode there; and the king's ships went thither, and the duke of Genoa sent thither Augustino Spinola, the commander of the army. And they put there the battle in array, and the French were smitten before them, and the Count Philippino Doria was taken alive; and they brought him into the city. .

695. And the French went into the borders of Genoa, and the duke sent and brought Augustino and his men into the city, and of them there was not one man left in Porto Pin; and the heart of the men of the ships† which were left there melted, and became like water.

696. And Andrea Doria went against them, like a bear bereaved of her whelps, and the seven galleys fled before him, and a wind passed over

* פורטו פין.

† i. e. The sailors and marines.

and drave them back. And the captives* cried with a loud voice, and hearkened not unto the voice of the oppressor;† and they went ashore and fled, and the galleys of war were left to their destruction. And also the great ships which were at Porto Pin, were given to be spoiled at that time.

697. And when the Doge Antonio and the inhabitants of the city saw that evil was determined against them, they sent to Lautrec, saying, “ Make with us a covenant, and we will serve thee;” and he thought to do according to all that they asked, but Savona he would not restore to them. And the men returned, and would no more deliver unto him the city.

698. And Cesare Fragoso went to Genoa, and three hundred men with him, and demanded the city in the name of the king, and they returned him no answer. And Cesare approached and stationed himself in Santo Pietro di Arena, and they sought with subtlety to take him captive at that time. And Augustino Spinola and Martinengo‡ went out to him in the darkness of the night; and they took one of his men and he told them all they asked him, because he was afraid for his life. And they went and sought Borasino§, the captain of the host, and his men. When the morning dawned, they went

* i. e. The galley slaves.

† Job.

‡ מארטינגו.

§ בוראסינו.

down to the foot of the hill, and they divided the people into two companies. And half of them went on the king's road, and the other half descended to the sea-shore. And they said, "Not one shall escape from our hands, and like hell we will swallow them alive." And Cesare strengthened himself in the large ship which was on shore, and fell upon them, and they were smitten before him and fled; and Augustino Spinola and Martinengo were taken alive; and Cesare Fragoso drew nigh, and the Spaniards went out against him, and they also were smitten, and fled. And they shut the gates of the city; and the heart of Adorno melted and became like water. And they said that they should surrender the city in the name of the king, and they sent him Count Philippino the prisoner; and he brought them into the city.

699. And the Doge Antonio rode into the fortress, and Count Philippino went with him to accompany him. And he sent Count Philippino into the city. And he took not any thing of any man at that time; the palace only was pillaged.

700. And it came to pass, after another six days, that Teodoro Trivulci came in the name of the king, and he became to them a shepherd*. And Genoa belonged to the king for a whole year; and

* i. e. Governor or ruler.

when the year came round they revolted, for they were sons of whoredom. And to Cesare Fragoso the inhabitants of the city gave presents and the hire of the men which followed him ; and he went his way.

701. And the king sent in the month of August to Andrea Doria a golden chain, and he accepted of it, and made a banquet for all his friends.

702. And Rienzo of Ziri* went in French ships to the island of Sardinia, which belongs to the emperor, and they took Sassari†. And the soldiers ate of the good of that fat country unto the swelling of their bellies ; and the plague broke out amongst them, and much people died. And Lautrec, the chief of the king's host went to Biagrassa‡, and turned round and passed over to Pavia and encamped round about it ; and Ludovico Biloverso§ was in the midst thereof in the name of the emperor at that time, and Lautrec asked of the nobles of Venice soldiers and battering rams. And they did even as he requested ; and they cast down the walls round about, and the earth shook at their voice. And they cast them down to the ground, and set the battle in array against them ; and they came into the city with a strong hand, and many fell to the ground. And they gave it to be plun-

* רינצו מצירי.

† ביאה גראסו.

‡ סאסארי.

§ בילוורסו.

dered, and the women were lain with, and they went captive before the oppressor, and all the splendor of Pavia departed at that time. And they set many houses on fire, and destroyed its goodliest part. Then Odet de Foix*, that is Lautrec, inflicted the king's vengeance on Pavia, which fell there into the hand of the enemy. And it became also a spoil, neither was there any to save, and their cry went up toward heaven, and they gave it into the hand of the Duke Francesco Sforza, for so they had agreed between themselves. Milan alone remained in the hand of the emperor; and Antonio di Leyva was at that time as a shepherd† in the midst thereof.

703. And Lautrec lifted up his feet‡ in the month of February in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-eight, and marched into the kingdom of Naples, and he passed over the river Tronto§. And Aquileja and its villages revolted against the emperor at that time. And the nobles of the emperor drew back with the Germans, the remnant that had escaped from Rome. And they went to Luzira||, and their number was fourteen thousand. And Lautrec and the armies of the allies reached Troja¶, and fought there.

* אידיטירי פוויס.

† i. e. A governor.

‡ i. e. Set forth or arose.

§ טרונטו.

|| לוצירה.

¶ טרויה.

And the army of the emperor removed from Troja* in the darkness of the night. And they came to Naples, and fortified themselves there. And Lautrec went out and marched against Milfi†; and they warred against it and took it, and slew her inhabitants with the edge of the sword at that time. And the prince fled into the fortress; and it came to pass after some days, that he went out to the French, and they made a covenant with him, and he served the king until his death.

704. And Lautrec and all his men marched against Naples, and their number was sixty thousand; and they besieged it many days. And the troops of the emperor fortified Naples day and night; and the prince of Orange was at their head at that time. And the war was very strong against them, and many gathered themselves into the citadels, for the fear of the French fell upon them. And the soldiërs ate the fat of the country, and bathed the legs of the horses in wine in those days. And the fruitfulness of that land was not known afterwards, because of the famine, for it was very sore. And the wine ceased in the houses of the Germans; but the rest of the army had wine in their dwellings‡. And

* Troja, a city of the kingdom of Naples.

† מילפי, Amalfi (?)

‡ Comp. Exod. x. 23.

the Germans murmured, saying*, “What shall we drink?” And the officers of the army made search; and they gave them of that which they found. So their murmurings ceased. But they murmured again, and gave the house of Alarcon† who was over the army to be plundered, and fifteen of his servants they slew with the edge of the sword. Then Alarcon fled through the window; and the city was in consternation. And when the commanders of the host saw it, they spake kindly unto [ב] them, and gave them silver; and their wrath was appeased. And the Spaniards and the Italians bowed their shoulders to bear *burdens*; and the famine was heavy in the land. And they made a journey of three days, and brought of every thing they could find to refresh their soul. And they went out again, and took all that the bishop of Milfi‡ had, and what the merchants had who came into the camp, and returned into the city; and they went out again a day’s journey, and came to Avellino§; and they found the bishop and his men eating and drinking, and took them alive, and all that was in the city they plundered; and they made ladders and went to Pozzo Real||, and there fell of them about two hundred

* Exod. xv. 24.

† אדארקון.

‡ מילפי.

§ אבילינו, a city in the kingdom of Naples.

|| פוזוראל.

men and two chief captains. . And the rest returned with shame.

705. And two ships of the king came along the sea-shore ; and they brought out little barrels full of money to give it to the soldiers, and it was not known what was the cargo thereof ; and the Spaniards went out, and warred against them, and there was a great cry in the city, and the Italians knew nothing of this, and much people died ; and they divided themselves against them by night*, and the rest returned into the city. And there was not one city which was in safety from the French, in any part of that kingdom. Naples alone and some of the fortified cities remained in the hand of the emperor at that time.

706. And the ships of Venice and the king's ships, and seven ships which belonged to Andrea Doria, the chief of his host, went against Naples also, to prevent coming out or going into it ; and their number was forty-two. And they besieged it from the east and from the west ; and there was no peace for him that came out, nor for him that went in at that time.

707. And the young men in the armies went out on the fifth month to plunder, and some of the Germans went with them to accompany them ; and they dispersed themselves in the vine-

* Gen. xiv. 15.

yards to eat, and two were not found together. And the French fell upon them suddenly, and slew a hundred men of them with the edge of the sword, and the rest fled before them; and the young men came back into the city in consternation and haste, and cried; so they went out to their help. And much people died that day, and ten of the French were taken alive. And on the twenty-fifth day of the fifth month, which is the month of July*, all the ships of the confederates came and drew nigh to the fortress; and the men of the citadel threw stones upon them, and they also filled their hands. And it came to pass, at sunset, that they returned to their former place. And they did so a second time, and would not suffer provision to be brought; and the famine was sore.

708. And Don Hugo, the viceroy, said, “How long shall these ships be a snare unto us?” And he armed his trained servants, seven hundred men, and embarked them upon the sea in six galleys, and two sailing vessels†, and other ships; and Don Hugo embarked also, and the Marquess Guasto and Ascanio Colonna, and many nobles and honorable men with them, and went against them. And he spake to the hearts of his men, saying, “Let us break their bands asunder‡, and let us

* i. e. The fifth month of the Jewish ecclesiastical year.

† פושטי.

‡ Ps. ii. 3.

set at liberty the Spaniards who are bound by them. Our fame shall spread throughout the whole world." And Andrea Doria was in Genoa at that time. And when Count Philippino, who was over seven ships of Andrea Doria heard the report of Don Hugo, he asked of Lautrec three hundred musketeers; and he brought them to him. And it came to pass, when they went into the ships, that the watchmen saw the ships of the vice-roy, and the count said to his men, "Let us be of good courage, for the sake of our nation and for the sake of Andrea Doria, our master: why should we be bereaved of the seven ships in one day*." And Philippino remained on his ward, under the mountain which is by Salerno, at that time. And it came to pass, towards evening, that Don Hugo said, "I will flee before them, and they will come out against us; then we will turn upon them, and we shall see what their dreams will be†." And they did so: and Philippino sent out three ships. And he said to them, "Stand still, and see the salvation of the Lord‡; and it shall come to pass, when they shall war with us, that ye shall fall upon them suddenly, and the Lord will be with us: be not afraid of them." And also some of the Turks who were in bondage§, he

* Gen. xxvii. 45.

† Gen. xxxvii. 20.

‡ Exod. xiv. 13.

§ Probably the galley-slaves.

released, and gave them arms; and they were an assistance to him in that day.

709. And the ship of Don Hugo fell upon them first at the sound of trumpets and of horns; and all the people trembled much. And the marquess said, "Put fire first to the cannons;" but Don Hugo would not: and Philippino gave fire first; and there died about forty men, men of valor who ruled the people: and the ship was like to be broken*. And Don Hugo commanded, and they gave fire; but they effected nothing, for the men of Philippino sat under the deck of the ship until the indignation was overpast, and they drew near; one ship drew nigh to the other†, and they put there the battle in array, the like of which never was; and their voices were heard from afar; and the sea and the dry land were moved at the voice of the sons of death.

710. And the three ships which Philippino sent, came out as an eagle flieth, against the ship, in which were Don Hugo and the nobles; and they put fire into the cannons, and the mast fell down‡, and all who were under it died, and the ship was in consternation. And they wounded Don Hugo in his arm and in his thigh, and he fell into the lowest part of the ship, and many who were slain by the guns fell upon him as they were fighting,

* Jonah i. 4.

† Lit. The one *ship* to her sister.

‡ Lit. To the ground.

and they trampled upon him, and he died ; and the flag fell, and the men of the ship in which Philippino was, took it. And the Turks fought like lions at that time. And the battle was strong between them for four hours ; and much people died. And the wind continued with them, and the ships drew nigh one to another : and the Turks took one of the ships which the Spaniards had before taken from them ; and as for the rest of Philippino's ships, they took again two more of his ships which the Spaniards had taken with their sword, before the three came to them which Philippino sent out. . And two of the ships of Don Hugo they caused to sink into the sea of reeds*, and two fled for their lives, when they saw that evil was determined against them ; and two were overtaken by the destruction of Philippino. And the rest of the ships which were with them were dispersed, one here and one there, and fled for their lives. And the Marquess del Guasto, and Ascanio Colonna, and the many nobles and honorable men who were with them were taken alive. And the French were very glad, and the faces of the nobles of the emperor gathered blackness† at that time.

* ים סוף, the *Sea of Weeds*, is an appellation given in Exod. xiv. xv. to the Red Sea ; but the term is here a mere allusion to the destruction of the Egyptians.

† קבצו פרוך, i. e. They looked sorrowful.

711. And Alarcon spake unto the heart of his hosts, and guided them all during many days by the sweetness of his tongue*. But the famine was very heavy in the city. Nevertheless, some of the French came into the city in those days; and they sent a present to the nobles. Also, the magistrates of Venice sent provisions daily to the cardinals, which they gave to the emperor in Rome as a pledge of sufficient support, lest they should die of hunger.

712. And Lautrec, the commander of the king's armies, demanded the prisoners; but Philippino would not deliver them to him, and he brought them to Genoa unto his master; and the king was very wroth.

713. And the king devised evil against Andrea Doria, and the thing was known to him, and he was on [פא] his guard; and the Marquess Guasto and the nobles who were with him, spake to the heart of Andrea Doria; and they persuaded him, and prevailed upon him to come and serve the emperor, their master. And he abode in the tower of Liriso† until the days of the covenant which he made with the king were completed; and he sent to the emperor, who received him, and made him chief of his host. Now this greatly

* i. e. With pleasant words, fair speeches. 2 Sam. xv.

ליריסו †

displeased the French ; and they spake to his heart, but he would not hearken ; and he went from them in peace : and the emperor gave him the dukedom of Milfi* which he had taken from the prince ; and it has been his until this day.

714. While they were yet besieging Naples, the Prince Camillo Orsi and the nobles who were with him, went against Manfredonia with a mighty hand, and encamped against it round about, and twenty-five galleys went also against it, and they battered its walls from the north and west sides ; but they effected nothing, for the walls were very strong. And Luigi Farnese†, and the men who were with him, delivered it from their hands, so that they returned with shame.

715. And it came to pass, when the shadow‡ of Andrea Doria had departed from over them, that the pilgrims and merchants came to Naples as they were accustomed, and were to the French a stumbling-block.

716. In those days, Antonio Leyva, and the army which was with him, took Pavia and the city of Duke Francesco Sforza with subtlety, and gave it up to be plundered ; and it was in their hands a number of days.

717. And the emperor sent a great army from

* מילפי.

† אלוואיסאו פירניס.

‡ צו, protection.

Germany to help Antonio Leyva who was at Milan, and the rest of his men who were left with him at Naples; and the duke of Brunswick* was at their head, and with them Antonio Adorno, duke of Genoa; and they besieged Lodi, and cast up trenches against it four days; and the earth trembled at their voices. And Alessandro Gonzaga, and the nobles who were with him, delivered it from their hands; so they returned to their country. And there were left of them with Antonio Leyva, only four thousand men, and they returned to Marignano and abode there.

718. And the King Francis sent again many nobles and honorable men, and Monseigneur Saint Pol at their head, and with them a very great force of horsemen and footmen. And they went again to Placentia and passed over the river Po, and went to Marignano; and the commanders of the imperial host went out thence, and took some captives and went to Milan, and the French marched after them, and approached within a short distance† of the city, and these days were the days of the ripening of the grapes: but they approached it no more. And Antonio Leyva set in it a garrison when he returned from San Angelo.

* בראנסוויק.

† Gen. xxxv. 16.

719. At that time went Andrea Doria with his ships to Ischia, and the nobles whom Philippino had made prisoners went with him. And they warred daily against the ships of the lords of Venice, and the nobles of the emperor honored him much.

720. And the ships of the king drew back until they reached Genoa, for his fear fell upon them. And also the ships of Venice went to their own country.

721. And the plague was in the camp of the French unto destruction, and they died swollen like wine-skins; and also Monseigneur Lautrec, the commander of the army, and the Marquess Saluzzi, the son of his sister, died in the plague. From that day and after, the hand of the French in the kingdom of Naples became weaker and weaker, and they went backward and not forward. And the men of the emperor went out against them and slew them, and shivered them until the remnant was destroyed; and they slew Monseigneur de Vallemont * with the edge of the sword; and Pietro of Novara was destroyed, and many who were with him they took alive. And there was no more left of this mighty army than two thousand men; and they took

out of their hand Somma* and Benevento, and Nocera, and Nola, and Capua, and dwelled in their stead; and the war was strong between them, between Barletta and between Trani, several days. And the prince of Orange, the chief of the emperor's army, commanded, and they went and encamped against Manopoli† and battered its walls, but could not prevail against it; for Rienzo Orsino, and Camillo Orsino, and the prince of Milfi, delivered them by the might of their hands; so they went off from them, and went their way. And it came to pass, after some days, that the men of Venice delivered to the emperor Manopoli, and Trani, and Barletta, and they were to him towns of his kingdom until this day.

722. And when Monseigneur Saint Pol, the commander of the king's army, and the commanders of the hosts of Venice which were with them in Lombardy, saw that Antonio Leyva, the commander of the emperor's host fled before them, and that he drew back to Milan; they went and encamped against San Angelo, and the city was besieged. And Giovanni Menaldo, who was over the army, went to see where they should place the artillery; and they shot from the walls, and slew him, and he died. And their wrath was kindled,

and they placed the cannons, and brake its walls and took it; and every one that was found at that time was pierced with the sword.

723. And they removed thence, and went to Pavia and besieged it, and battered its walls; and the earth was rent at their voice, and they took it with a mighty hand. And it was plundered also at that time, and the Count Ludovico Belzoiioso* and the princes and the soldiers who were with him gathered themselves into the citadel, and their lives were a prey unto them: and when they saw that it was not in the power of their hand *to withstand*, they gave also the citadel into their hands, and they went their way free.

724. And Monseigneur Saint Pol, and the confederates who were with him, set Annibale Fizinardo†, the commander of the army of the Duke Francesco Sforza in the midst thereof, to watch it in the name of the duke, his master, at that time.

725. And Andrea Doria, the chief of the imperial armament, returned to his house at Genoa on the twelfth day of the month of September, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-eight, and thirteen galleys with him. And he took four galleys of the king; viz. two which the French left there in their haste, and two which he had taken

* ביל זוייוסו.

† אניבאל פיצנארדו.

along the coast of the sea on the voyage to Savona, and he was to them ever an enemy and a stone of stumbling.

726. And he spake to the hearts of the men of Genoa, so that Genoa revolted against the king at that time. And the city was governed by its own honorable men and elders, and Andrea Doria was ruler over them.

727. Then were darkened the stars of the twilight of Antonio Adorno, the doge, and he slept with his fathers; and he was at Milan during the time that the French and the confederates besieged it; and he had no sons, but daughters, and a son of a concubine. And Genoa was free by desire [פב] of the emperor, except that it was called by his name, and they always followed his bidding. In those days, there was neither prince nor master at Genoa, except the council of the elders, and every man sat under his vine: the little as well as the great were heard, and the cow and the bear fed together*.

728. And the hearts of Saint Pol, and the princes who were with him, were turned against Genoa after he had destroyed Pavia. And he made ready his chariot, and his people he took with him, and set his face towards the desert; and the men of Genoa repaired the foundation of the walls both within and without. And they also gathered

* Isa. xi. 7. An allegorical description of peace.

together men of valor in the midst of the city, and hastened to bring the cannons into the citadel where the French were before they came, and they battered its walls day and night; and they moved not before them, for it was very strong.

729. And when Saint Pol, the chief of the king's army, heard that there were men of valor assembled therein, he turned back a distance of five miles, and approached the city no more. And he said in his heart, "I shall no more be able to subdue this great nation, and the men who follow me are of small number, and starved with hunger; and when the rain comes down for one or two days, they must die. And he turned back, he and all the people with him, to Lombardy, on the third day, on the sixth of the month of October in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-eight; and the peasants went out against them upon the tops of the mountains, and upon the heights, and smote the hindmost, who became weary, until they destroyed them, and they slew *many* of them without mercy; and this was to the shame of the French.

730. Then the councillors of Genoa sent the soldiers who were with them, in galleys, toward Savona, and they besieged it; for it alone was left in the hands of the French at that time; this is Savona, which was of old as thorns in their eyes. To strengthen their dominion over it, they took off

from them the yoke of the men of Genoa by the aid of the king; therefore the men of Genoa revolted against the king, and turned to him their neck and not their face, And they utterly brake down its walls, and took it. And its walls and its tower and its gates they cast to the ground, and they spoiled Savona, and made it a servant unto tribute until this day; and the men of Savona were very wicked, and sinners before God. And the French who were therein went their way free on the fifth day, on the twenty-ninth day of the month of October, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-eight. And the men of Genoa put a garrison in the midst thereof.

731. And it came to pass, after another seven days, when the French who were in the citadel of Genoa, saw that evil was determined against them from the inhabitants of the city, they went out and delivered the citadel into their hands, and their lives were a prey unto them. And the men of Genoa cast down the walls of the citadel even to the ground at that time, and it has been a perpetual heap for ever until this day.

732. And the French returned again, and they were about two thousand men; and they went as far as the gates of Genoa, as an eagle flieth, before their voice was heard. And Andrea Doria was almost taken, for he believed it not

until they came. And he fled into the midst of the city, for his house was close to the wall, and they shut the gates of the city, and spoiled his house; yea, they left no gleanings at that time. While they were yet fighting at the entrance of the gate, there came ships from Spain bearing soldiers; and he was to them for eyes.

733. And the French returned* to Lombardy, for they were afraid of them, and abode in Alessandria, and Novi and its villages, many days. And the Spaniards who came from Spain pursued after them, and abode in Botavio*, and Saravalle†, all the days of that winter‡. And it came to pass, in the month Abib, that they went through by-ways towards Milan with the aid of Antonio Leyva; and they sojourned there.

734. In those days, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-nine, the armies of the king were gathered together again, with the Venetians and Duke Francesco in the beginning of the barley-harvest. And they arose to march towards Milan, and Saint Pol, the commander of the king's army, divided the people who followed him into two bands; and the Count Guido of Anjou§, the first commander of the host, went before him, and Saint

* במיאיו.

† שאראבאלי.

‡ הסתיו.

§ גוידו דאנגו.

Pol marched behind with the artillery. And he marched heavily*, for the wheels of the great cannon came off, and the count knew nothing of it, and they put a space between drove and drove†. And Antonio Leyva came out against them with the soldiers who were with him, and he pursued after them all the night, and the imperialists came up with the French near Adriano; and he said, “ This is the time to laugh, for they are confounded before my face.”

735. And they fell upon them suddenly, and slew them, and dashed them to pieces; and Monseigneur Saint Pol was taken alive, and they brought him to Milan, and his men they slew with the edge of the sword; and all their property, with the cannons, they took as spoil. And when the Count Guido heard it, he turned into Pavia, he and all the people who were with him; and the Duke of Urbino, the chief captain of the host of the Venetian lords, marched to Casano‡, and fortified themselves there.

736. And the marquess of Saluzzi had three brothers; the name of the first was Jean Louis and the name of the second was Monsignore Francesco, and the name of the third was Gabriel; and Jean Louis turned after the emperor; and his mother bound him when he was at

* Exod xiv. 25.

† Gen. xxxii. 16.

‡ INDND.

Doil*, and set a watch over him : and it came to pass, when the men of Saluzzi heard that his brother was dead, they brought him out of the pit†, and made him king over them. And it came to pass, when he was scarcely come out, that he put his mother into the same pit in which he had sitten, and sought to slay her ; but the people delivered his mother, and she returned unto the cities of Gascony, even to her native country. And the king sent to call Jean Louis, and his brethren. Francesco was chief captain of the king's host in Asti, in those days ; and Jean Louis went to France confidently, but the king bound him and set a watch over him, and his allowance was a continual allowance given him of the king, a daily rate for every day‡. And Francesco, his brother, went to Saluzzi, and they shut the gates against him, and they could not speak peaceably with him. And he commanded, and they battered its walls ; but they would not hearken unto him, unless his elder brother should go out free. And Jean Louis, the priest, went out free ; and the men of the city received Francesco as prince over them.

737. And Andrea Doria went to Spain with his cruizing ships, to bow himself before the emperor,

* דואל.

† בור, subterranean prison. Gen, xxxvii. 28.

‡ 2 Kings, xxv. 30.

and to bring him to Italy. And the emperor and the nobles honored him.

738. And it came to pass, in the fifth month, that the hosts of the men of Genoa, and the hosts of the emperor went against Novi, which is on the borders of Genoa, and is accounted their country*. And their number was about six thousand men; and in the midst of Novi were about five hundred men, in the name of the king, at that time, and they brought up against it rams of brass†, and the men of the city feared greatly. And when its inhabitants saw that evil was determined against them, [פפ] they went out to sue for peace, and made a covenant with them on the thirteenth day of the month Ab; and Novi belonged to the men of Genoa unto this day. The men of Tortona also trembled for fear and called to them for peace: and they set in the midst of *Tortona* men of valor in the name of the emperor at that time.

739. In those days, Andrea Doria sat in the gates of the emperor at Barcelona, which is in the kingdom of Catalonia, and the king‡ loved him much. And he went down with him to the sea into ships with all his nobles and servants going to Italy, and ten thousand men with him. And they came to the borders of Genoa in the sixth month,

* Artillery. † The king of Spain; i. e. The emperor Charles.

‡ i. e. Novi is in the territory of Genoa.

in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-nine, and remained at Savona several days. And the men of Genoa made a great bridge* upon the sea, fifty cubits long and fifteen cubits broad, and they covered it with white, green, and red coverings; and the beginning of the bridge was like a great gate†, ornamented‡ with artists' work, and they did the same in two wide places of the city. There was not the like made in Genoa, since she became a nation.

740. And on the twelfth day of the month of August, they reached Genoa, and the sound of their rams of iron and brass shook the earth, and the fulness thereof; and their smoke went up towards heaven, and it covered the eye of the sun, which withdrew its shining§ all that day; and the earth was rent at their voice. And the emperor Charles, the son of Philip, the son of Maximilian, went upon the bridge, and the nobles of the city and her elders received him, and they honored him much. And in the city of Genoa was splendor and gladness, and they came with him into the palace; and he resided there several days.

741. And the emperor, and the King Francis, and the king of England, made peace; and the king of Hungary, and the king of Portugal, and

* A sort of pier.

† A triumphal arch.

‡ מצויר.

§ Joel ii. 10.

the pope, made a covenant between them. On the sixth day*, the fifth of the month of August, they made a covenant of peace; and on the Sabbath day, the twenty-eighth day of the month of August, the matter was known. And the law was given at Genoa with trumpets and the sound of a horn, and all the people were glad, and the land was quiet. The marriage-contract was, that the emperor Charles should give his sister Eleanora to Francis the king of France, to wife; and the dukedom of Burgundy as a dowry and present: and that the first-born son, which she should bear, should be duke of Burgundy, which dukedom should belong to his seed and his generations. And if the woman should not bear a male child, then should Burgundy return to the emperor after her death, and he should resume the possession thereof. And King Francis gave to the emperor all the rights of sovereignty which he had over the dukedom of Milan, and over the kingdom of Naples; and silver and gold in abundance, on condition that the emperor should send back his two sons into his kingdom of France. And the rest of the particular conditions, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Roman Kings?

742. And many of the nobles of Italy came to

* i. e. Friday.

Genoa to bow before the emperor, and he accepted and honored them, and spake kindly to them, and they were comforted concerning the toil of their hands, and concerning the desolation of the land, whose surface, instead of being like the garden of the Lord, was covered with dead : by reason of the disturbance of wars which were there until that time.

743. And the elders of Florence sent wise and experienced men to fall down at his feet, and to pray before him for their lives, for they had turned after the king. And Charles regarded not their presents, but sent them from before his face with shame, and they returned into their own country.

744. And the sister of the emperor went to France, and the two sons of the king with her. And they went to Paris, and the king and the princes went out to meet her, and the city of Paris rejoiced and was glad. And the king saw them, and was glad in his heart and ran to meet them, and kissed and embraced them. And he brought his wife into the tent ; and she obtained grace and favor in his sight*, and he put the royal crown upon her head, and gave her the government of all the royal cities ; and he loved her much. And he made a great banquet for all his nobles and servants, the banquet of his wedding day, and

* Esther ii. 9.

he gave kingly gifts. And all the people of the land were glad, and the young men played and ran with horses; there was not the like done at Paris until that day.

745. And the emperor removed from Genoa on the second day*, on the thirtieth day of the month of August, and went to Piacenza, which is in Lombardy, and abode there two months, and the chiefs of his hosts he sent against Pavia; and they besieged it during many days, and the inhabitants of the city delivered it into their hands, and they made with them a covenant. And Francesco Sforza, the duke, disregarded even this, because the nobles of Venice had turned his heart, for they are a stiff-necked people; and he made not peace with the emperor, who was at Cremona at that time.

746. The king sent thither Francois D'Angoulême, his viceroy, to bow down before him, and all the goods of his master were in his hand; and chariots and horsemen came also with him, and the emperor honored him much. And he spake to the emperor concerning the covenant which they made, and he gave him the money which he brought in, according as they had agreed between themselves. And the horsemen who were with him he left with the emperor; and returned to his master into

* i. e. Monday.

France, and told him the words of the emperor; and the king was very glad.

747. And Solyman departed to go and war against Vienna with a numerous people and a strong hand, in that year; and their number was two hundred and fifty thousand horsemen and footmen, and eight hundred waggons* and cannons were with them; and as for the camels, they were numberless; and his camp was very great. And Ferdinand, the brother of the emperor, heard it, and feared greatly; and he set in the midst of Vienna about twenty thousand men, and one hundred pieces of brass cannon faced the tumult, and three hundred small field-pieces, and plenty of gun-powder. And he burned the suburbs round about, and every goodly house he cast to the ground.

748. And Solyman hastened to go, before *Ferdinand* could gather many troops; and before him ran about thirty thousand men, whose hearts urged them to go with them†. Hire of silver they did not take; and they went as far as the river Inn‡, at Lientz§, and they burned the houses, and cast down the cliffs||; and all that were found, they slew with the edge of the sword, and they took

* Ammunition waggons. † i. e. With the troops of Solyman.

‡ אִינוּ.

§ אֵלִינוּ.

|| הַמַּדְרָגוֹת. The steps of a ladder mean here steep places, which impeded the march of the Turkish army.

the captives and the spoil. Then they returned unto the camp. And the men of Vienna went out against them, but fell slain before the Turks, by reason of the many guns, and could not withstand ; and the chief captain of their host died, and the rest returned into the city with shame, and many were taken alive at that time. And the Turks clothed them in purple, and sent them into the city to speak to the hearts *of the citizens*, saying, “ Let not Ferdinand entice you, for he will not retain strength before this great host : and now incline your ear, and bow your shoulder to bear the yoke of Solyman, and ye shall eat the fat of your land ; but if ye refuse and rebel, the sword shall devour, for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.” And the men of Vienna would not hearken, and returned them no answer ; and they stood upon their guard as yesterday and the day before*. [פד]

749. And Solyman besieged Altenburg† with his vanguard‡, and took it ; and three hundred Bohemians were therein, and they went also captive before the oppressor at that time. Some of them also he sent to the city *of Vienna* to speak to the hearts of the citizens ; but they would not hearken. And he came also, and the rest of the hosts ; and he set not his heart against the rest of the cities which

* Gen. xxi. 5.

† אלטבורגה.

‡ בבואי.

were behind him, for he was in haste to march until he reached the city of *Vienna*.

750. And the city of Presburg* also remained behind him, and in the midst thereof were about three thousand Bohemians; and it was as thorns in the sides of his ships at that time. And it came to pass, when the ships came filled with brazen cannons, they cast some of them into the depth of the river, and some of them they took; and it was to the Turks as a stumbling-block.

751. And it came to pass, when Solyman came into the camp, that the earth shook at the noise of the sound of the cannons and guns, and they encamped in the suburbs of the city round about. And Vienna was besieged on the twenty-sixth day of the month of September; and the uncircumcised upon the wall round about could retain no strength, because of the wrath of the oppressor.

752. And the Turks divided themselves round about it into five heads, and their tents were four thousand; and there was no peace for the goers-out or the comers-in for three days' journey at that time; for the Turks hunted their steps that they could not go.

753. And they brought up against Vienna round about, the rams of brass, and battered its walls,

* פּוֹסֵנִיָּא. Lat. *Posonium*; Hung. *Posony*; Slaw. *Presburek*.

and gave them no rest. And they fought against it day by day, and drew nigh to the walls. And they shot stones among them, and many fell slain to the ground, and the rest drew back with shame; and there died of the *Germans* in those days much people.

754. And it came to pass, on the fourteenth day of the month of October, that Solyman commanded, and they warred against it round about. And they drew nigh to the falling walls, and shouted with a loud voice and discharged guns against it; and their voice was heard from afar. And it came to pass, when the voice of the cannons and guns waxed louder and louder, that the earth shook and the fulness thereof; and their smoke ascended up to heaven*. The men of the city filled also their hands and discharged guns upon them, and they cast some of them slain to the ground; and the whole camp trembled and turned the neck, and the rest turned back with shame. And Solyman was very wroth, and commanded, saying, "Every one that returneth into the camp shall fall by the sword; and now go into the city, and return unto your burdens." And they hearkened not unto him, for distress of spirit, but said, "Let us die this time by the sword of the Turks; for by the guns of

* Joshua viii. 20.

those uncircumcised we will not fall." Then the Turks knew, that not like unto the wars of Persia, and Syria, and Egypt, are the wars of Germany. And they had not seen the like except that day, and they went away with shame, and returned unto the camp; and much people was missed on that day.

755. In that night the sleep of Solyman left him, and he took council with his wise men, and his nobles, and they brake down the fortifications which they had builded, and killed the wounded and sick, whose hope was lost, and left the lame horses and departed from the city; and they divided the people into three heads, and went their way. The first band went by the way of Istrigonia, and the second by the way of Bosnia*, and the third by the way of Garnagno†, and returned into their country. And Solyman made a covenant with the woywode, John, the prince of Transsylvania; and they brought him back into his office, and the country was quiet.

756. In those days, Ferdinand gathered together about one hundred thousand men, Germans and Bohemians and Moravians, to war against the Turks; and when he heard that Solyman went his way, it grieved Ferdinand, and he sent them from him‡, and

* בושינה.

† גארנאגנו.

‡ i. e. He disbanded his army.

came into the city; and the men of Vienna received him with gladness.

757. And the emperor went to Bologna, which is in Lombardy, on the fifth day of the month of November, in the year five thousand two hundred and ninety; and also the Pope Clement of Medici went thither; and the nobles of Bologna received them with gladness, and honored them much. And they bowed one to another, and greeted each other, and rejoiced in love in those days. And they took also sweet counsel together, and the emperor vowed to Clement to bring back himself and the men of his family into Florence, as before; and the pope was very glad.

758. And they sent men to war against Florence, for its people had stiffened their neck; and they besieged it many days; and the nobles of Florence fortified the city round about, and the night was to them for watching, and the day for labor; and Malatesta Baglioni* was the head over them, and they brought into the city about eight thousand Italians, and fortified themselves strongly. And the men who warred against Florence were about fifteen thousand, and the prince of Orange† was the head over them. And they gathered themselves, first by Ispilo‡, and warred against it; and Juan d'Urbino§, the chief captain of the Spanish

* באיין. † אורנגי. ‡ אישפילו. § יואן דורבינו.

host, died : and the Prince Leon delivered Florence from their hand that time.

759. And it came to pass, after some days, that they delivered the city into their hand, and made a covenant with them ; and they went away free with their property. And the men of the emperor warred against Cortona, and the besieged gave this city also into their hand, and went their way. And also Rizo* was given into their hand (and the *imperialists* wearied† not their hand on it) but they made a covenant with them.

760. And the prince of Orange, the chief of the host, drew nigh unto the city, and the city was invested. The host of the pope encamped also against Scarparia‡, and there was no peace for him that came out, nor for him that went in, at that time. And they warred against Florence fifteen days, day after day.

761. And the nobles of Florence put soldiers into Prato§ and Pistoia, and fortified those cities ; and they remained on their ward many days.

762. And Francesco Sforza, the duke of Milan, went to cast himself down before the emperor when he was at Bologna ; and *the emperor* accepted his person, and restored him unto his former office.

* ריצו.

† i. e. Rizo surrendered without resistance.

‡ סקארפאריאה.

§ פראטו.

And he gave to the emperor nine hundred thousand denari of gold ; and Lombardy was quiet, except that *Sforza* surveyed the country to give the gold by command of the emperor, every one according to his taxation : he extorted the silver and the gold of the people of the land to give it to the emperor ; and Lombardy became very poor.

763. Then the men of Venice made peace with the emperor ; and the law was given at Venice at that time. And when one of the eunuchs of the Turk Solyman saw that they had made peace, he returned to his master into Turkey, and told him what was done in Italy ; and the Turk was very wroth.

764. And in the year five thousand and two hundred and ninety after the smaller date, which is the year one thousand five hundred and thirty, the hand of the Lord was against Genoa, to disturb and destroy them. And a fire was kindled in Genoa, and devoured in one [פד] night eleven galleys, and who kindled it was not known ; and all the city was moved, and their faces gathered blackness. It was a night of bitterness to them ; that night was the night of the third day*, the twenty-second of February ; and the nobles trembled much.

765. And on the twenty-fourth day of the month of February, the pope and his cardinals,

* i. e. Tuesday, "ב י"ג, the third day of the week.

and nobles, unanimously assembled themselves at Bologna which is in Lombardy, and none disturbed *them*. And they set the imperial crown upon the head of Charles, the son of Philip, the son of Maximilian, after their manner* in the high place of San Petronius, as the emperor's soul desired. And the pope and the nobles of Italy, and Spain, and Germany, honored the emperor much on that day, and they went out from the high place† with gladness, rejoicing. And the emperor helped the pope to mount his horse, and he would have gone before him on foot, but the pope declined; so the *emperor* rode also, and they went both together through the streets of the town. And as for the priests and the nobles who walked behind them, the first-born *went* according to his birthright, and the youngest according to his youth‡; they were numberless. And there walked before the emperor, the Marquess Montferrat, with the golden sceptre in his hand; and the duke of Urbino, with his sword drawn in his hand; and the duke of Bavaria§, with a globe|| in his hand, and the duke

* i. e. The manner of the Christians.

† i. e. Cathedral.

‡ i. e. Every one according to his rank; Gen. xliii. 33.

§ באבירה.

|| כדור, i. e. The apple of the empire belonging to the regalia of the German emperors.

of Savoy*. And after them went two cardinals; and they had with them sacks filled with coins of gold and silver; and they scattered them as they passed through the markets, and the streets: and all the people of the land were glad. And they returned every man to his house. And it happened, when the emperor reached the open place of the city, they put fire into the ramst†, and discharged the guns; and the earth was rent at the sound. And the *emperor* came into his house; and they sat down to eat bread, and he made a very great banquet; and what was left of the meat and bread they cast out through the windows; and all the people were glad, and said, "Let the emperor live for ever!"

766. And had it not been for the mercies of the Lord, which never fail, the Jews would have been soon given up to pillage on that day. For the men of the emperor gaped with their mouths, hissed and gnashed with their teeth against them; but the Lord delivered them.

767. And the emperor and the pope abode at Bologna some days; and the emperor said, that he would make Alessandro di Medici duke of Florence; and they parted one from another. And the pope returned to Rome, and the emperor

went to Mantua; and he remained there many days.

768. And Frederico Gonzaga, the marquess of Mantua, honored him, and gat favor in the eyes of the emperor, who made him duke of Mantua at that time. And they sounded with trumpets in the streets of the city; and proclaimed with a loud voice, “Thus shall it be done to the man whom the emperor delighteth to honor!*” And the city of Mantua rejoiced, and was glad.

769. And the emperor removed from Mantua, and went to Germany, and resided at Regensburg† several days. And thither went also his brother Ferdinand, king of Hungary, and their sister Maria, the wife of the former king, who was drowned, when he fled before the Turks‡.

770. And they bowed before *the emperor*, and spake peace to each other, and they came into the tent. And the emperor comforted them; and he spake kindly unto them; and he said to them, “Fear not. And they were glad together at that time. There they took sweet counsel together, and were united against the Turk, who warred in Hungary in those days.

771. And Solyman came again with a strong

* Esther vi. 9, 11.

† רינשבורק, Ratisbon.

‡ See page 57, paragraph 662.

hand, and besieged Vienna ; and they discharged guns against it, and the wall fell upon its foundation ; and in the midst thereof were many soldiers. And it came to pass, on a day, that the Lord put cowardice into the hearts of the Turks ; and they left the breaches of the wall as they were ; and returned to their own country.

772. And at the desire of the emperor, the King Francis sent eleven ships of war unto Genoa, to join the squadron of Andrea Doria, the chief of *the emperor's* host. And the emperor sent him to Africa ; for the men of Algiers, by the aid of Barbarossa, brake off from them the yoke of the emperor at that time. And about three thousand men went with him, and the ships were twenty-nine *in number*.

773. And they went to Sicily, where there was an open city situated on the sea-coast. And they found there some ships which belonged to the Ishmaelites, and they took nine of them, and the rest they sunk in the sea, for they could not bring them out ; and the men who were in them, and the slaves, fled into the city before they came, for they knew them. And they drew nigh to the city, and took it with a mighty hand, and the men of the city fled for their lives ; part of them ran into the citadel, and part of them fled to the mountain. There were none left except the slaves, who

were in the prison-house, and Andrea Doria brought them out free into the ships ; and it came to pass, at eventide, that the ships could not remain in their station, for the fierceness of the canons in the fortress ; and they went outside. And the men who were left in the city were dispersed in the streets to plunder, and there were not found two together ; and the men of the citadel gave the signal, and the Hagarenes came down from the clefts of the rocks, and the men of the citadel went out also, and fell upon them, and slew them with the edge of the sword ; there was not one man of them left. And they that died in that slaughter were about three hundred and sixty men : and of those who were set over them about eight heads died in that time. And the rest cast away their weapons of war, and swam upon the water about a thousand cubits, until they came to the ships ; and Andrea Doria trembled much. And he hastened to go to Spain ; and to the councillors of Genoa he sent for aid, and their wrath was kindled at this evil report.

774. And when Barbarossa heard what God had done to Andrea Doria, he said, “ I will go out on the way against thee, and will make the arrows drunk with blood ; for evil is before them*.”

* Exod. x. 10.

And he armed his trained servants, and pursued after *Doria*, but found him not, and he came into the sea of Provence at that time. And he lifted up his eyes, and saw, and behold! two great ships were coming which the men of Genoa sent, and upon them about three hundred men, and plenty of corn and bread, and weapons of war, and gunpowder. And Barbarossa went against them, and met them like a bear bereaved of her whelps; and he cast upon them the instruments of his wrath, and one sank into the deep like a stone. And he arrayed a battle against the second, and took her. And he took the captives and the spoil, and returned to Algiers with gladness. And Andrea Doria hastened to his house sullen and angry, and his coming was not heard; and he sent the king's ships to France, and the French returned every man to his own house.

775. And Florence was straitly shut up; none came out, and none went in. And they went out of the city to war against their enemies as at other times; and many fell slain to the ground in that battle. And the prince of Orange heard that Lastra*, which is on the banks of the Arno, was in the hand of the Florentines, and that soldiers were therein. And Francesco Ferugo† com-

* לאסטרה.

† פירונו.

manded *the garrison*, saying, " Stop here to prevent them which bring provisions into [פ"ו] the camp. And he sent two chiefs of the hosts of the Spaniards to war with Lastra ; and they went and climbed upon the walls in a moment, and the watchmen of the walls slew them, and dashed them down, and cast stones on them. And they warred until sunset ; and they went from Lastra, and remained in their place. Also from Florence they sent soldiers to their aid at that time. And it came to pass, about the morning watch, that the Spaniards returned unto the wall, and said, " Give us the city, that ye may live and not die." And the men of the city said, " When we shall give the city into your hands, shall we go free?" And they said, " We will do so:" and they opened the gate, and the Spaniards came into the city ; and they took the nobles of the host, and their men they slew with the edge of the sword. And it came to pass, on the next morning, that they blew the trumpets, for the men of the host came whom they sent from Florence ; and when the Spaniards saw it, they fortified themselves in the midst of Lastra. And it was told the *Florentines*, saying, " The city is taken, and the *Spaniards* slew also the men of the host with the edge of the sword ;" and it grieved the men of *Florence*, and every man returned to his own place.

776. And the pope sent also Alessandro Vitello* and his men, to watch the road. For there stood the priest of Parma†, and it happened that he killed every one that passed by. And the report was heard at Florence, and they put it into their hearts to go out over the rest of the camp suddenly. And Stefano Colonna went out in the darkness of the night, and seized the guard and fell upon them suddenly, and slew among them with great slaughter. And all the people trembled, and arose from their sleep, and they gave the signal for battle. And the chiefs of the host went to the prince, and he sent them one hither and one thither, where the storm was; the men went and remained upon their ward. And Stefano Colonna placed the artillerymen upon their ward, and they took the fords; and the battle waxed strong at that time. And when Maria Orsino saw that the men of the emperor had compassed‡ Stefano Colonna, they put fire into the two cannons, as he commanded; and Ottaviano Signorello§, and the nobles who were with him, went out to his help; and the war increased, and their voice was heard from afar.

777. And when the prince heard it, he ran also with his sword drawn in his hand, and they fought

* אליסאנדרו ויטלו.

† פארפא.

‡ כתו כתר, to surround, to encompass.

§ סיניורילו.

from one end of the camp unto the other, and much people died; and the earth shook at the voice of the sons of death. And Malatesta saw that the men who went out of the city had filled their hands. He sounded the trumpet; and when the men heard it, they returned into the city with subtlety. And the prince wondered much; and he commanded, and they fortified the camp round about, lest they should come out once more against them.

778. And it came to pass, one day, that Hercules Rangon*, the chief of the host of Florence, encamped against Fizaolo†, and in the midst of it were fifty horsemen. And it came to pass, as they were fighting, that the Don Pero‡, with one thousand five hundred men came to their assistance. When they drew nigh to the city, they made a noise with tabrets, and shouted with high-sounding trumpets; and Hercules trembled and went off from the city, and Pero pursued after them, but they had set up an ambush against him, and they fell upon him suddenly, and much people died. And Pero fled on foot into the Florentine tower, and thirteen of his host were taken alive. And the report was heard in Florence, and all the people of the country were glad; and two of the

* ראנגון.

† פצאולו.

‡ פירו.

chiefs of their hosts went to fortify the walls, and the artillerymen* shot, and brought them down with blood to the grave; and their joy turned into mourning at that time. And they buried them in their coats, and honored them much.

779. In that day, the men of Florence chose Malatesta, and gave him the great banner; and he was to them a head, and a Satan. In those days, Don Vitello† destroyed and broke the power of the priest of Parma‡, under the tower of Montechio§; and they gave the city into his hand, and pursued after him, and they warred the second time; and they made peace between themselves, and the priest returned not to war any more.

780. And when Pero|| heard that the men of Florence were at Forcoli¶, he went there. And they went out against him and fell before him; and twenty-five men were taken alive. And they said, "Send us free; and we will send twenty-five men of those who are in the hand of Hercules Rangon** in our stead;" and this was pleasing in his sight: and they did so.

781. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that

* מורים, mורים; here probably artillerymen or gunners.

† ויטילו.

‡ פרפה.

§ מונטיקיו.

|| פירו.

¶ פורקולי.

** אירקוליש ראנגון.

Pero returned to war with Palæa*, and his men fell slain to the ground; but Pero and the rest fled for their lives, and he returned into the camp.

782. And the men of Florence went out to hew wood; and the prince fell upon them suddenly, and they arrayed a battle there, and much people died; and the hewers of the wood fled, and the rest returned into the city.

783. And the nobles of Florence gathered four thousand men of the inhabitants of the city exercised in war, and Stefano Colonna was at their head. And the bishop of Faenza came to speak unto Malatesta in the name of the pope, in those days; and it came to pass, when he came, that the nobles of Florence envied him, and said to him, "Why is this man come to thee; let us know his speech." And he said, "To make peace with us, he came; fear not." But it seemed evil in their sight; and they trusted Malatesta, the chief captain of their host, no more. And he feared also, and from that day forward went no more into the palace; for he was afraid for his life. And he went to dwell on the other side of the river, in the Roman gate, opposite the camp; and it came to pass, that this gate, and three gates

which were close to it, were in his hands until the day the land came into captivity. And Malatesta went not unto war all those days, saying, "I fear, lest mischief would befall me, and I shall be unto the city a stumbling-stone." And he went after the lusts of his heart, and turned not himself to the words of the nobles in those days.

784. And Alessandro Vitello went to give back the royal cities under the government of the Medici, and he reached Volterra* at eventide, and said to them, "Give ye also this city into the hand of the Medici, according as the rest of the cities have done through which I passed, and ye shall eat the good of your land." And they returned unto him an answer, saying, "It is better for us to die upon the walls, than that we should serve one of the merchants of the city." And all the captains were in the midst thereof at that time, besides the soldiers. And Francesco Corso was at the head over them; and he spake hard things unto them, and he turned and passed over, and went with San Dalmazio†, and he took those cities; and Fabricio Maratao‡ came also, and they encamped the second time against Volterra; and they betrayed the city into their hands. And

* בולטירה.

סאן דאלמאציו.

‡ פאבריציו מאראטאו.

Francesco drew back into the citadel, and dwelled therein unto the day of battle.

785. And he wrote unto the rulers of Florence; and Niccolò Strozzi* said, "Fear not; I will go and pass in the midst of the camp, and I will bring back the city unto you." And it was pleasing in their sight; and they said unto him, "Go to Impolit, and what Francesco Ferrigo† shall tell thee, thou shalt do: only be strong and of good courage." [פו]

786. And Niccolò Strozzi and the five hundred men which followed him, removed in the darkness of the night, and with them they had weapons of war and plenty of gunpowder; and they went their way. And when the watchers of the camp heard it, they shouted with a loud voice; and Niccolò hastened and passed the camp, and went his way. And he passed over the river when the morning dawned. And he met about three thousand men, and two hundred horses, which came against him; and they arrayed a battle there, discharging guns. And the smoke went up towards heaven; and their voice was heard from afar. And the men of Strozzi ascended the mountain; and they met with an ambush, and they fought against them. And many fell slain to

the ground, and two of the captains of his hosts died in that slaughter. And the rest fled, and they pursued them as far as Impoli*, and Ferugo† went out against them. And the Spaniards feared and drew back, and they delivered Niccolò from their hands; and he returned to Impoli, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And the men removed thence and went to Volterra‡, and they warred against it, and they surrendered it into his hand; and he fortified it, and put soldiers into it, and he gave them their hire.

787. And Ferugo waxed very great, and the soldiers envied him, and his fame spread over all the country. And all the days which he stood at Impoli, he sent sheep and oxen and provisions into the city of Florence, and he shattered the heads of their enemies and took the cities from their hands with a strong hand.

788. And it came to pass, when the famine was sore, that they went out again from Florence in the morning watch, to war with the soldiers. And the Spaniards went out to meet them; and they arrayed a battle there, and much people died on that day.

789. And the viceroy of the emperor said, “ They are idle, they are idle: but now, let us go, I pray,

* אינפולי.

† פירונו.

‡ ולטירה.

against Impoli and Volterra, and let us make a breach therein for us: let the battle be heavy upon them, so that they may not return any more towards these two cities in which their soul yet trusted*.”

790. And he sent Alessandro Vitello†, and one of the captains of the Spanish host against Impoli; and they warred against it, and took it, and it was spoiled at that time. The men went also to Volterra and broke their walls; and the earth shook at their voice. And Francesco Corso‡ went to help *the men of Volterra*, and *the imperialists* went away from Volterra; and Francesco died in that battle. And they went out again from Florence, when their souls fainted within them, because of the want of every thing; and they fell into the camp of the Germans, and they slew of them with the edge of the sword about five thousand men; and Malatesta, the chief of their host, refused to fight in those days; and the lords of Florence feared much.

791. And they sent to call Francesco Ferugo, and he lifted up his feet to go, and about three hundred footmen§ and one hundred horsemen were with him. And he went the road of Pistoia, saying, “The friends of the city will gather themselves to me,

* Comp. Deut. xxxii. 37. Is. xxx. 2. Ps. xvii. 7; lvii. 1.

+ וויטילו.

‡ קורסו.

§ וכשלשת איש רגלה, probably מאות is to be understood.

and then will we go." And he passed over unto the tower of Bel Marcello, and the mountaineers came not to his help; for the enemies went and put a garrison therein. And they went their way, and the rain poured down upon him and the wing of his army* all that day.

792. And when the prince of Orange heard it, he went out to meet him with nine thousand footmen, and all the horsemen of the host. And he sent also to Fabricio Maratao, saying, "Go thou out also against them†, that their name may be remembered no more." And the lords of Florence heard that the prince came out against them, and said unto Malatesta, "Go thou also against the rest; perhaps the Lord will give them into thy hand;" but he would not hearken unto them.

793. And it came to pass, when they were on the road, that Francesco Ferugo met those who sought his life; and he arrayed a battle against them, and the foremost fell before him slain to the ground. And after a moment, there fell upon them also the prince and the horsemen and the footmen who followed him, and he arrayed a battle against them; and the prince fell slain to the ground in that battle, and the battle ceased. And they wounded also Francesco Ferugo, and he

became feeble, and was delivered into the hand of Maratao* at that time. And he commanded, and they cleft him in twain on that day, because he had hanged one of the servants of Maratao†, a drummer; which thing ought not to be done‡. And the men of Ferugo fell by the edge of the sword on that day, and the rest were taken; and the men of Florence grieved much.

794. And the men of the emperor also trembled at the death of the captain of the host. And they chose Don Feranto§ Gonzaga in his stead, and he was head over them. Also in that day when the men of Florence were distressed, they implored Malatesta to go out before them, but he would not hearken; and he was a Satan|| unto them.

795. And it came to pass, one day, that he said to them, “Ye see that the misery is great, now therefore deliver the city into the hands of these princes, that we may live, and not die.” But they answered, “No; for we will go out and fight, and God may do what is pleasing in his sight; or we will send off the men of the host which follow thee, and it shall be a relief for us, and the rest shall live upon that which is left;” but he would not fight, and

* מארטאו.

† מראטאו.

‡ Gen. xxxiv. 7.

§ פיראנטו גונזאגה.

|| A hinderer or adversary.

also of the men who were with him, he would send none out *of the city*; and he was to them a stumbling-block. And he said to them, “Ye know that with all my might I have delivered this city unto this day; my renown is great among the nations, and now if I shall send of those who follow me, then I shall be left with a few men, and they will take it, and will give it up to pillage: whither shall I cause my shame to go? * Is it not better, that I go out with all the men of the host who follow me, and my name shall not be called upon by you any more? and do ye as it seemeth good in your sight.” And they hearkened unto his speech, and sent unto him two men, saying, “According to thy words we will do; and now arise and go out of the city, thou as well as the men who follow thee; and we will stand valiantly for the sake of our people and for the sake of the cities of our God, for there is no restraint to the Lord to save by many or by few †.” And his wrath was kindled very much; and he took a sword and twice struck one of them who was seventy years old; and the city of Florence was in consternation.

796. And every one took his weapons of war; and he hastened also, and took the ford of the river

* 2 Sam. xiii. 13.

† Comp. 1 Sam. xiv. 6.

Arno, and revolted against the lords of Florence with a high hand. And he turned the cannons of brass, which were upon the walls, against the city, and sat upon his ward. And he sent to them, saying, "Take counsel, that ye may wisely consider what ye shall do, lest I open the city, and ye be delivered into the hand of the enemy."

797. And the men feared much, when they saw that also he had joined their enemies; and they said unto him, "Do as it seemeth good in thine eyes, for all is in thy hand; we will live, and not die:" and his wrath was laid. And they sent to the men of the host, and made a covenant with them. And all this proceeded from the pope with Malatesta; but he turned his heart backward.

798. The copy of the covenant was, that the city should remain with its councillors and judges as it was; only, that they should restore to the Medici what belonged to them, who should pardon the men who had lifted up their hands against them. The *Medici* [פח] should not cause to fall one of the hairs of their head to the ground; and the emperor should give them statutes and judgments, and teach them the way wherein they should walk; and they should give to the chiefs of the host eighty

thousand scudi, and every one should come in peace to his place. And the overseer of the pope, and the captains of the host, entered the city on the eighth of the month of August, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty; and the law was given, and the country had rest.

799. And it came to pass, when they came into the city, that they overstepped the statute, and violated their covenant, and did in the city according to their own desire; and they brought down six of the heads of the city into the grave in blood. And many were put into the lowest pit in the prison. And one hundred and fifty men they sent out and expelled from their country. And many fled, when they saw that evil was determined against them, and all the people they plundered; and the cry of the city went up toward heaven.

800. And it came to pass, after some days, that the deputy of the emperor made a covenant with the Medici; and they gave the government unto Alessandro, a kinsman of the pope, as duke of the city; and Florence became a servant unto tribute at that time. And it came to pass, that Alessandro did judgment and righteousness in the land, and he was skilled in knowledge; however, the great men of the city were not with him, and knew not how to speak peaceably unto him.

801. And in the eighth month, on the sixth of the month, the Lord caused it to rain upon Rome, and its environs, the portion of their cup*. And the windows of heaven were opened. And on the seventh day the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the waters of the flood were upon the earth. And the waters prevailed, and they increased much upon the earth†; and the river Tiber came into the city in the middle of the night, in the night of the sabbath; and the city was in consternation. And the Tiber increased more and more, and overflowed in abundance; and houses filled with every thing good it cast to the ground. And the houses of the city were filled with mire and dirt; and the church of the Spaniards in the Piazza Navona‡ was almost cast down, and its walls were shaken, because HE was wroth. And the waters prevailed, so that all the marks were covered, whereunto the waters reached of old times, and they prevailed ten spans§ above; the like has not been from the day it was founded, until now. And they went in boats in the streets of the town. For the waters prevailed in some parts from the foundations of the houses unto the second story, so

* Ps. xi. 6.

‡ גאמנה.

† Gen. vii.

§ זרחות.

they sold them which sat upon it provision. And there was a great cry* in Rome during that night, and on the next morning, whose like was not before when strangers seized its property ; for this overthrow was much greater. And there died from the overflowing of the proud waters, about three thousand souls of men, and much cattle. And the number of the houses which the waters cast down were four hundred ; and the wine, and the oil, and the wheat, and the flour, and the clothes which the waters overflowed, were countless. And on the tenth day of the month, which was the second day, about thirty houses were pulled down in the Via Giulia. And in the night of the eleventh day of the month, of the year one thousand five hundred and thirty, the palace of Eusebio was cast down, which he bought for ten thousand ducats ; and there died Eusebio and about forty souls with him under its *ruins* in that night. Tell it to your children, and let your children tell it to their children, and their children to another generation ; for what the great pestilence left, the sword of Bourbon devoured ; and what the sword of Bourbon left, the famine devoured ; and what was left of the famine, the proud waters devoured† :

* Exod. xii. 30.

† Joel, chap. 1.

the Lord is just, and Rome became very poor in those days. And *it was told me* that there died not one of the children of Israel, the mercy of the Lord being upon them, except one old woman ; may her rest be glorious ! It was the finger of God.

802. And in *Flanders* also, the Lord fulfilled his wrath in the year five thousand two hundred and ninety-one, and he caused to rain upon them an overwhelming rain, whose like never was ; the waters covered their heads, I said, “ They are cut off.” And much people of them fell on the second day of the month of November, one thousand five hundred and thirty ; and as to the cattle *which perished*, there was no number.

803. In those days there was a great storm at Lisbon, in Portugal ; and all the people trembled, and they feared a great fear ; and they said, “ We must all die.”

804. Then the councillors of Genoa sent messengers to Francis, king of France, to call for peace, and to fall down before his feet, and to speak concerning the rebellion which they had rebelled against him ; but he hardened his heart, and forgave them not. And they abode at Paris many days, and returned unto Genoa on the fourth month, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-one. And all the merchants

of Genoa, as they returned, the king of France drove entirely out from his country.

* 805. In that year came a Turk, a man of Belial, and spake to the heart of the grand-master of Rhodes*, and to his brother, saying, " Arise, let us go unto Modon, and let us make a breach for us therein, for the land is very good. And ye are quiet; be not idle to go, and I will give the tower into your hand; and as ye come, ye will come to a quiet and secure people, and these, God has given unto you; why do ye tarry." And it came to pass, one day, that they hearkened unto the voice of that man, and sent thither a ship bearing wine; and in the lowest part of the ship about eighty men. And the ship came securely into the haven of Modon, and six galleys which they had came after her, no man knew of their coming. And there went upon *the first vessel* some of the Turks, of the watchers of the city, and they asked at random, for they prophesied and then ceased†, " Are there here any Nazarene dogs?" And they said, " No; we are true men‡; the ship bears wine, as much as she can carry; behold, and see." And they gave them to eat and to drink, as much as their soul desired, until their

* The knights of St. John retained the title of Rhodes after their expulsion.

† במנעון.

‡ Gen. xlii. 11.

hearts were merry with wine; and they became drunken with them* at that time. The wine was yet in their throat; and the man who spake to them, slew the post-captain of the Turks, who was on the citadel. And he gave the signal, and the men who were in the ship went out swifter than the leopards, and stronger than the lions. And they slew the watchers of the gate with the edge of the sword, and they came into the city of Modon upon that quiet and secure people, according as he had told them. And they slew all whom they met in the markets and in the streets with the edge of the sword; and their wives and their children, and all their property they plundered, and there was none to deliver from their hands, for they were terrified before them. And when the thick smoke ascended from the houses which they burned with fire, the galleys came, even those which were at a distance of ten miles, as an eagle flieth. And they came against the city with two hundred men, and filled also their hands with their swords devouring flesh, and their arrows were drunken with blood; and they stretched their hand unto the spoil. And many of the inhabitants of the city fled at their voices, and were put to flight by the sword, and stayed not; for they knew not whence this great evil came unto them.

* Gen. xliv. 34.

And many gathered themselves into the palace which was in the midst of the city, whose doors were of brass; and they fortified themselves there, and their lives were unto them a spoil. And it came to pass, at eventide, that two thousand Turks riding on horses gathered themselves, and came also into the city with anger, and with wrath, and with a great noise; and the earth was rent at their voice. And the uncircumcised fled before them, and they gathered themselves unto the ships with the spoil and the plunder; there were not missed of them more than twenty-five men. And the captives, whom the ships could not carry, they slew with the edge of the sword. And they returned unto Malta, which the emperor gave them to dwell in, [פ"ט] after their expulsion from Rhodes, to abide there. And the wrath of Solyman was greatly kindled against them, and against those who joined them. And of the children of Israel, there was not taken even one, for when they heard their voice they fled unto the mountain; and their lives were unto them a prey. Only their riches and all their property the men of Modon plundered, for they were oppressors unto them.

806. And Louise of Savoy*, the mother of the king, died on the seventeenth day of October, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-one.

And she was buried at Paris, without the city; and the king wept over her, and honored her greatly.

807. And Solyman would return to war against Vienna, and he commanded Zay*, the chief of his armament at sea; and his ships went out from the haven of Constantinople on the second day of the month of May, one thousand five hundred and thirty-one, with joy and with singing, with tabrets and high-sounding trumpets; and the earth was rent at the noise of the cannons. And their number was fifty light galleys, and sixty heavy ones; and they went to the coast of Corfu, for so the king had commanded him, and they met there the rest of the galleys, and they were one in the hand of Zay†.

808. And the Sofi, king of Persia, sent messengers unto him, and they spake to him on the sixth of the month; and Ibrahim Pasha went with them to accompany them.

809. And they went into the high place on the tenth of the month, and paid the bullocks with their lips‡. And they blessed the great banner, which is the banner of Mohammed: and they brought it into the palace with gladness, and with

* יני.

† i. e. They were united under his command.

‡ Hosea xiv. 3, offered the calves of their lips: i. e. They offered the sacrifice of prayer.

songs, and with three thousand janissaries, and many nobles and honorable men, Turks, were found there at that time.

810. And they removed from Constantinople many of the men of the host on the twelfth day of the same *month* ; and they carried on waggons one hundred and twenty cannons of brass, and gun-powder in abundance and sling-stones*. And on the fifteenth day of the *month*, there removed three thousand janissaries, the sultan's body-guard ; and they went into the camp. And on the sixteenth day of the same month, there removed four hundred slaves of the king, bought with his money, riding upon horses, who were clothed in silk clothes embroidered with gold, and their spears in their hands ; and fifty waggons covered with purple went after them, and four horses to each of them, and upon them were some of the concubines whom the sultan kept in his house of women, and silver and gold in abundance, and four thousand horsemen went with them to accompany them ; and they all went into the camp.

811. And on the seventeenth day of the same *month*, Solyman removed at the dawn of morning, and four thousand janissaries ran before him. And

* אבני קל, means here bullets.

after them ran four hundred camels bearing tents, and two hundred horses covered with silk-coverings and precious stones in abundance. And two thousand horsemen went after them, and the great standard in the middle embroidered with pearls, whose like was not seen in the whole world. And a hundred boys, servants of the king, drave after them riding on horses beautiful to look upon, who were clothed in golden garments, and each had his spear in his hand; *they wore* their hair upon their shoulders, and red turbans upon their heads, and above a golden crown round about. And twelve of them wore helmets of brass covered with precious stones, and the last wore a turban embroidered with goodly stones, a wondrous thing, for the merchants of Venice made it, and Ibrahim Pasha bought it for one hundred and forty thousand ducats, and gave it to Solyman as a present.

812. And after them went one thousand footmen clothed in silk garments, like the brightness of the firmament, and high turbans of gold and white feathers on their heads, and their bows by their sides, and in their midst *rode* Solyman the king. And he was clothed with purple garments, embroidered with gold, after the manner of Damascus; and the worth of his sword which was on his thigh, and of his dagger, was inestimable. And the turban which he had on his head was covered

with diamonds; and he rode on a horse, upon which were precious stones in abundance. And four of them who see his face followed him, and his counsellors, and his nobles, and about two thousand men, Turks, all men *of valor*; and their voice was not heard; and they went on their way unto the camp.

813. And they came to Adrianople on the twenty-fourth day of the month with gladness and merry hearts, and they remained there nine days: there spake unto the sultan the messengers of Ferdinand, king of Hungary; and he honored them much, and they returned unto their country.

814. Also the messengers of Sofi spake unto him the second time, and they returned unto their own country; and the king sent some Turks to accompany them, and honored them much.

815. And Solyman removed on the second day of the month of June, and he went in four days unto Sophia, and they encamped there. And the messengers of Venice said unto him, “Dismiss us our Lord, O king, for it will be no honor unto us to go with thee in the way in which thou goest, for these *thine enemies* are uncircumcised like unto us.” And he sent them from him, and they returned unto their own country. And they removed from Sophia, and went three days’ journey, reaching unto Nitzi*; and they abode there several days.

And one said unto Solyman, “ Behold, the woywode of Transsylvania cometh to thee;” and he sent Zinzino Pasha to meet him, and many nobles and honorable men, and two thousand horsemen; and he honored him much. And the woywode came and bowed before Solyman unto the ground, and saluted him, and went from him in peace. And they removed from Nitzi and went unto Tush*, which is by Belgrade, and they encamped there. And Solyman came unto Belgrade on the twenty-fourth of the month of June, and they received him with gladness. And they made the likeness of gates† in the streets of the town, and the people of the country were very glad. And all the men of the host removed, and went eastward of Buda, and Ibrahim Pasha also followed them, and thirty thousand horsemen with him. After them followed the king and the nobles, and the people who were with him; and they went also to Buda, and encamped there; and the king sent on the second day of the month of July, Aliondante Galzaa‡, unto the king of Poland to make a covenant with him, for he had heard the report of the emperor Charles, and there was not done any thing with him; and also to Tartary he sent to hire thirty thousand horsemen; but he would not hearken.

* טוש.

† i. e. Triumphal arches.

‡ אליאודאנטו גאלזאאה.

And the number of the soldiers whom Solyman brought with him, were three hundred thousand men, and thirty thousand bearers of burdens and tillers of the ground*. And of all the languages of the uncircumcised, there went with him about eight thousand men, and in the midst of them four hundred Italians, all men *of valor*: and he loved them much.

816. And when the emperor heard it, he went to Ratisbon, and gathered a host, also horsemen in Italy and Germany, and he went the way of the river Danube in ships unto Lientz; and he abode there several days. And he removed thence, and went the way of the river unto Vienna before they came, and spake unto his brother the king of Hungary; and Antonio Leyva [צ] went thither also, with the rest of the princes of the host, and they fortified themselves. And they gathered all the men of battle, and his camp increased much. And they encamped in Vienna, and its environs, in those days. And most of the nobles of Italy and Germany, and the pope, and the Venetians, helped *the emperor*; but the king of France helped him not in that war.

817. Then Andrea Doria, by the emperor's command, prepared seamen to fight against the

* עובדי האדמה, probably miners.

ships of Solyman, which were in the Grecian sea, to bring him back from Hungary; for his fear had fallen upon them*. And the hand of the Lord was upon Genoa at that time. And a fire was kindled in the gunpowder which was near the palace, and the houses which were round about fell down; and the whole city was shaken because of them†. And there died under the *ruins* about twenty-five souls of men, besides those who were slain on that day, which was the third day‡, on the second of the month of July two hundred and ninety-two, and the men of the city were greatly astonished§; it was not known who kindled it.

818. And Andrea Doria, by command of the emperor and of the pope, departed from Genoa with all his ships, at the end of the fifth month||, and went to Sicily to carry off the soldiers whom they had hired there for marching. They thence departed, and went to Greece, and during several days besieged Coron, which is on the uttermost part of the borders of Greece. And the Turks who were in the midst thereof delivered it into his hand, on the day of Hosanna Rabba¶, of the year two hundred

* Est. ix. 23. † Ruth i. 19. ‡ יום השלישי, i. e. Tuesday.

§ Gen. xliii. 53. || Ab, i. e. August.

¶ יום השענה רבה, the 21st of September, the last day of the Feast of Tabernacles, next in importance to the יום הכפור, or Day of Atonement. The name originated from the word השענה *salva quæso*, at the commencement of most prayers for that day.

and ninety-three; and they made a covenant with them; and there were saved by that covenant the Turks only with their children, and all their goods; and there, at that time, the Jews were given up to be plundered; and because of their sins, they went captive before the oppressor*, and there was no deliverer for them; and this cruel oppressor divided them among the troops. According to the deeds of his hand, requite him, O Lord!

819. They went also to Patras, and took it, and took great spoil, and cannons in multitudes. And the Jews also, of whom there was a great congregation in that place, went captive on that day before the oppressor. And some of them were ransomed in Zante, but the rest were sold for slaves and handmaidens, into Sicily, Naples, and Genoa; and into all places whither the fleet went: some of them the congregation of Italy ransomed for the full money. May the Lord remember this to them for good, and plead their cause!

820. Also to Avellino† went those sinful men‡ to make spoil; and there went out against them the men of the city, Turks and uncircumcised, and slew them with the edge of the sword; and there fell there about three hundred men. And the rest were gathered into the ships; and their life

* Lam. i. 5.

† אבילונה.

‡ Andrea Doria and his men.

was a prey unto them. The Lord is a God of vengeance.*

821. And Solyman heard the report of the emperor, and that much people were gathered together at Vienna, and he changed his mind and returned back, and turned unto Vienna the back and not the face; and it came to pass, while they were in Terra Nova, that Micalogili† Pasha said unto the king, “ Let thy servant go into the countries of these uncircumcised to make spoil;” and he said unto him, “ Go in peace.” And the man went, and fifteen thousand horsemen with him. And they ran unto Lientz, which is on the other side of Vienna, and destroyed every goodly part thereof. And it came to pass, when they returned, that about two thousand horsemen went out against them, Hungarians and Croatians, and four thousand Germans, and four hundred Spaniards, raisers of bulwarks‡, who shut up their way. And the Spaniards fell upon them first, and set the battle in array against them; and there fell one hundred Spaniards, and five hundred Germans at that time slain unto the ground: and the battle ceased. And Micalogili feared; and he chose two hundred horsemen, and said unto the men of war, “ Be

* Ps. xciv. 1.

† מיקלוגילי.

‡ שופכי סוללות, sappers; comp. 2 Sam. xx. 15.

strong and of good courage*; be not afraid of them, for God hath given them into our hand: and I and my men, we will go on the other side of the river; and we will turn round and take them in the midst, and will fight against them before and behind." And he passed the river, and they fled before them, and he returned unto the camp; and the rest fought until sunset, and many fell slain to the ground; and many were taken alive on that day.

822. And Solyman returned unto Turkey; for he could not remain, because of the dreadful cold which is in the north country, and because he heard the report of Coron and Patrast†.

823. And when the emperor saw that Solyman was gone from him, he sent the troops, every man unto his own home. And when the Italians returned back, they destroyed, laid waste, and burned with fire all the cities through which they passed in Germany; for *Charles* had given them no money, and their soul was embittered against them‡. And the emperor sent to speak to their heart, but they would not hearken, for they were hungry and grieved in soul; and they listened not to the voice of the teachers.§

* Deut. xxxi. 6. Josh. i. 9. † See pages 145, 146.

‡ i. e. The emperor and his subjects.

§ ולא שמעו קול מורים, i. e. they became mutinous against their commanders.

824. A Jew-man, whose name was David, came from a distant country of India unto the court* of the king of Portugal in those days, and said unto him, “ I am a Hebrew, and I fear the Lord, the God of heaven† ; and my brother, the king of the Jews sent me unto thee, O king, for help ; and now, be a helper unto us, and we will go to war against the Turk Solyman, and will take the Holy Land from his hand.” And the king said unto him, “ Be thy coming with peace ; and now go, I will send thee unto the high priest‡ ; and whatsoever he shall say, I will do.” And he went out from him, and abode in Lisbon several days. And the forced *Christians*§ believed his words. And each said unto his neighbour. “ He is our deliverer, for God hath sent him ;” and they gathered themselves unto him, and honored him much. And the man departed thence, and passed through Spain ; and in all the places through which he passed, many flowed unto him of those who were scattered there ; and he was unto them a stumbling-block. And he passed over to France and went unto Avignon. And he departed thence, and came to Italy ; and he made banners of

* שַׁעַר, gate, porte, comp. Ottoman Porte. † Jonah i. 9.

‡ The patriarch of Lisbon.

§ הַאֲנוּסִים, the compelled ones, i. e. Jews who had been driven by the inquisition into an outward conformity with ecclesiastical rites.

cunning work*, and wrote upon them the names of the Holy; and many believed him in those days. And also unto Bologna, Ferrara, and Mantua, came that man; and he said that he would, with the consent of the kings of the uncircumcised, lead all the Jews who were found in the midst of them, unto his place and into his land. And he spake also unto the pope: and the children of Israel feared much. And it came to pass, when they spake unto him, saying, “And what shall we do unto our wives this day, if we shall all go unto the battle, and *what* unto their children which they have borne?” That he replied, “Surely there are many women in our country, like unto these women†: fear not, for there is no restraint with the Lord to save‡.” And he invented a writing of his own heart, saying, “My brother, the king, hath sent it unto me written and sealed with the king’s ring§;” and it came to pass, one day, that his secret was discovered, and they believed him no more; for he decreed decrees of nothingness||.

825. And there came forth a rod¶ from Portugal, whose name was Solomon Molcho, of a stem of Israel, which had been scattered there since

* מעשה חושב, Exod. xxvi. 1. i. e. The work of an embroiderer.

† 2 Sam. xii. 8.

‡ 1 Sam. xiv. 6.

§ Esther viii. 8.

|| Is. x. 1.

¶ Isaiah xi. 1.

the days of destruction* ; and he was a lad with the scribes of the king at that time. And when he saw the man David, the Lord touched his heart, and he returned unto the Lord, the God of his ancestors ; and he circumcised the flesh of his foreskin. And he knew nothing of the law of the Lord, and of the Holy Scriptures in those days ; and it came to pass, when he was circumcised, that the Lord gave wisdom unto Solomon, and he became wiser than all men in a very short time ; and many wondered at him ; and he went to Italy, and with a daring face he spake of the law of our God in the presence of [NY] kings, and hid not his face from them. And he went unto Turkey, and returned unto Rome, and spake with Clement, who extended towards him kindness against the desire of all those who knew law and judgment†. And he gave him a written privilege signed with his name, to dwell according as it should be pleasing in his sight, and he surnamed himself by the name of Israel‡ ; and he was wise in the wisdom of the Cabala ; and he brought forth from his mouth words of grace, for the spirit of the Lord spake in him ; and His word was constantly upon his tongue. And he continually drew also § from the deep fountain of the Cabala goodly words ; and he wrote them

* i. e. Baptism.

† Esther i. 13.

‡ i. e. he professed Judaism.

§ Exodus ii. 19.

upon tables ; but I have not yet seen them. And he preached to many at Bologna and in other places ; and many ran after him to hear his wisdom, and to prove him with riddles*. And Solomon told them all their words : there was nothing hid from him which he told them not ; and when they saw the wisdom of Solomon, they said, “ It was a true report which we heard concerning thee, and thou hast gained wisdom exceeding the fame which we heard†.” And many clothed themselves with envy against him ; but they could cast no evil upon him in Italy, for he was beloved in the sight of the nobles : and he united himself with David, and they were as one in those days.

826. And Solomon wrote unto the wise men, words of peace and truth, saying :—

827. “ Ye great mountains, ye pillars of the
 “ captivity‡, knowing science, and understanding
 “ knowledge, a goodly sight before the face of
 “ HIM who dwelleth in the *holy* habitation, in
 “ whom is power to stand in the temple of the
 “ HOLY KING, *and who are* bound up in the
 “ bundle§ of the seventy faces|| of the tree of

* 1 Kings, x. i., and 2 Chron. ix. 1.

† 1 Kings, x., and 2 Chron. ix.

‡ i. e. The Jewish communion ; which being dispersed among the Gentiles, is considered to be in a state of captivity.

§ 1 Sam. xxv. 29.

|| There are, according to the rabbies seventy manners of interpreting the law which are called the Seventy Faces,

“ righteous life, to be a strong wall and a high
 “ bulwark round the destroyed city. May we
 “ live to see its rebuilding! And much peace be on
 “ the throne of the King Messiah. These* are the
 “ seed blessed by God from heaven.

828. “ Incline your ear to hear the words of a
 “ worm and no man†, a rod out of the stem of the
 “ children of our captivity‡, which came forth from
 “ a land§ of our adversaries, sitting in a forest and
 “ in a desert, in a place of thorns, thistles, and
 “ briers; there he fed, and there he lay down;
 “ for his father and his mother forsook him||; he
 “ walked in darkness and had no light¶, medi-
 “ tating in the night upon his couch**, by what
 “ way the light is parted††, that he might know
 “ the place of the dawn, to keep himself from the
 “ ways of the violent, that he might walk in the
 “ paths of God to seek wisdom of him, and to hear
 “ the words of truth. And HÆ put in his heart
 “ anxiety and trouble at all times, to save his
 “ soul from destruction, to shine in the light of
 “ life, that he might hold fast unto the right hand of
 “ God, and cast from him the left‡‡; in his distress

* The sages addressed in this letter. † Ps. xxii. 7.

‡ Comp. Isaiah xi. 1. § Portugal. || Ps. xxvii. 10.

¶ Is. l. 10. ** Canticles iii. 1. †† Job. xxxviii. 24.

‡‡ שׂמאל, i. e. What is not right; an allusion also to the name of the devil. שׂמאל, Sammael, angelus malignus, et princeps mortis.—*Buxtorf*.

“ he lifted up his voice unto Him, even unto the
 “ Head and said, ‘ HOLY, make the tabernacle of
 “ peace.’ For it is better to trust in the Lord, than
 “ to put confidence in princes* (because they are
 “ dragons†, and will be destroyed); He shall
 “ stand for ever: see ye, and hearken unto this,
 “ give glory unto our God‡.

829. “ In the twelfth month in the year
 “ OMRIM (‘ When I heard אִמְרִים THEM SAY§,
 “ Let us go’||,) he went to supplicate the face of the
 “ Lord, and to seek the Lord of Hosts; I also
 “ went into the palace of strangers in the great
 “ city¶, which is destined to become desolate, and

* Ps. cxviii. 9.

† תַּנִּינִים, belluæ marinæ, pisces ingentes, Gr. κητοι, Gen. i. 21,
 dracones, serpentes. Gesenius, *Lex. Manuale*.

‡ Deut. xxxii. iii.

§ Gen. xxxvii. 17, אִמְרִים, א = 1

מ = 40

ר = 200

י = 10

ם = 40

291

291 + 5000 = A. M. 5291, or A.D. 1530.

|| The passage between parentheses has no connexion with the sense of Molcho’s letter; and is merely cited, according to the custom of the Rabbies, because it contains in the word אִמְרִים the date of the year. There occur subsequently similar instances of this practice.

¶ i. e. Rome.

“ whose land will be burning pitch : there came
 “ thither the messenger of your highnesses, and in
 “ his hand a roll of a book ; and he spread it out
 “ before me, and it was full of pleasant and tender
 “ words, and it was in my mouth like honey for
 “ sweetness* ; when I read therein with under-
 “ standing eyes, I thought to return unto your
 “ highnesses an answer briefly. It is already
 “ known unto the honor of your learning, con-
 “ cerning the vision which I wrote from the
 “ city Monasterio† unto our master, the revered
 “ Joseph Titsa‡ (may his Rock and Redeemer
 “ preserve him !)§. For when I was there, he
 “ asked of me to make known unto him my jour-
 “ ney from Portugal, in what manner it was ; and
 “ I wrote to him every thing after its order ; and I
 “ vowed to write also all which should in future
 “ happen unto me in the kingdom of Edom|| ; and
 “ in that vision your highnesses will see what came
 “ upon me during my coming from Portugal and
 “ Turkey unto the land of Edom, wherein I am
 “ now a prisoner by the hand of the king over
 “ kings of kings, the holy ONE (holy and blessed
 “ is HE !), by the hand of his servant, my master,

* Ezek. iii. 3.

† מונישטיריאו.

‡ טיטסה. § יצ"ו, a contraction for יצורו וגואלו.

|| i. e. The European states, but especially Italy.

“ David, without permission to do any thing ex-
 “ cept that which is shewn unto me from heaven.
 “ And now I am come to tell your highnesses the
 “ verity of the words of truth. When I reached
 “ Ancona, immediately an assembly of the wicked*
 “ encompassed me, and slandered me before the
 “ bishop, by their saying how I dwelt in the tents
 “ of Kedar†, but now am I in peace: for when
 “ he sent for me, Jews from that place, and from
 “ Turkey, went with me to see how the thing would
 “ fall out; and he asked of me concerning the
 “ matter, and I said unto him, ‘ They have told
 “ thee the truth.’ And he answered me, ‘ What
 “ hast thou seen concerning it‡?’ And I replied
 “ unto him, ‘ That the Lord is God; He is truth,
 “ and his law is true, and there is no other; and
 “ he became dumb like a dead carcase.’ And
 “ upon the men who were with me there fell a
 “ great trembling§. And he dismissed me with
 “ peace, but commanded me, that I should not
 “ preach unto the Gentiles in opposition to their
 “ law. But notwithstanding all that, every time I
 “ was preaching, there came into the synagogue
 “ nobles and priests, and much people; and I also

* Ps. xxii. 16.

† Ps. cxx. 5. i. e. What was my condition and character among the orientals. Kedar means here the Mohammedan territories.

‡ Idiom for, Why hast thou done thus? Esther ix. 26.

§ Gen. xv.

“ had an argument with a bishop in the market-
 “ place : and this was the occasion on which the
 “ Duke of Urbino brought me away with him ;
 “ and I left my servants in his country, and I
 “ went on foot*, I alone, and no man with me, for
 “ so it was commanded me. And on the fifth
 “ day of my journey, I saw the place from afar†,
 “ which was a stumbling-block unto us, because
 “ of the multitude of the sins which we have
 “ committed against the Lord our God, and we
 “ have not entreated his face, to return from our
 “ wickedness, to hearken unto his voice, and to
 “ attend unto his truth ; and I lifted up mine eyes
 “ unto heaven, and I wept a sore weeping over
 “ my sins and the sins of the children of our
 “ people ; and I opened my mouth toward the
 “ gate of tears‡, and said, ‘ Lord of hosts ! how
 “ long wilt thou not have mercy on Jerusalem and
 “ the cities of Judah, for the sake of the wrongs
 “ done by them who stand up in this city to op-
 “ press us, and to cast us away from our country.
 “ Because of our sins, and for the wickedness of
 “ our fathers, Jerusalem and thy people have be-

* ררך בצרה, via conculcationis.

† Gen. xxii. 4.

‡ According to a rabbinical tradition there are various gates in heaven, through which tears, prayers, mercies, snow, &c., pass to the places where they are treasured up. This tradition they support by passages like Ps. lvi. 9, “ Put my tears into thy bottle,” and Job xxxvii. 11, “ gates of death,” and ib., verse 12, “ the treasures of snow,” &c.

“ come a reproach round about us*. And now,
 “ hearken, O our God, unto the prayer of thy
 “ servant, and unto his supplications†.

830. “ ‘ That the holy stone may be engraven,
 “ the one stone which thou hast placed upon the
 “ breast of thy holy priests to clothe them with
 “ righteousness and salvation, to cause the horn of
 “ thy anointed to bud forth‡. Forgive, I pray thee,
 “ the sins of thy country and the sins of thy chil-
 “ dren, the children of thy covenant, whom thou
 “ hast caused to go into captivity among the na-
 “ tions. And remember unto us the covenant
 “ and the loving-kindness which thou hast sworn
 “ unto our forefathers of ancient days. And let
 “ thy countenance shine into thy desolate sanc-
 “ tuary, for the sake of my Lord, and for the sake
 “ of thy Name, by which thy city and thy nation
 “ were called§.’ The while I was speaking and
 “ praying according to those words, mine eyes
 “ became like unto an increasing fountain, and my
 “ strength left me, neither was there breath left in
 “ me||; but I gathered strength, and I prayed the
 “ evening offering in the field, before the entering-
 “ in¶ of the city. And when I came to the blessing,

* Dan. ix. 16.

† Dan. ix. 7.

‡ Ezek. xxix. 21.

§ Dan. ix. 19.

|| Dan. x. 17.

¶ פְּנִיָּסָה, פְּנִיָּסָה, פְּנִיָּסָה, introitus, ingressus, congressus, congregatio.

“ ‘ The deliverer of Israel,’ I heard a voice speak-
 “ ing into mine ears, and it was that of my own
 “ rabbi speaking*, and it said unto me, ‘ And Seir
 “ shall be a possession for his enemies†.’ And on
 “ the blessing, ‘ The gatherer of the scattered of
 “ Israel,’ I heard also the same voice, and it said,
 “ And Israel shall do valiantly‡.’ And on the
 “ blessing, ‘ The king who loveth righteousness and
 “ judgment,’ I heard, ‘ Their foot shall slide in due
 “ time§.’ And at the blessing, ‘ The support and
 “ safety unto the righteous,’ I heard, ‘ And He
 “ will repent himself concerning His servants||.’
 “ And on the blessing, ‘ The builder of Jerusalem,’
 “ I heard, ‘ To me belongeth vengeance, and re-
 “ compensate¶.’ And on the blessing, ‘ Who causeth
 “ the horn of salvation to bud forth,’ I heard, ‘ And
 “ Edom shall be a possession**.’ And at the end of
 “ my prayer I went into the city, and I went into
 “ the house of the commander of the host, and I gave
 “ him the horse, and my goodly raiment††, and I
 “ said unto him, ‘ I have in this country a beloved,

* Like an echo, **והיה מהרבי שלי ויאמר אלי**. The Rabbi heard a **בית קול**, a sort of oracle, on repeating the eighteen blessings in the daily prayer of the Jews.

† Numb. xxiv. 18.

‡ Deut. xxxii. 35.

§ Deut. xxxii. 35.

|| Deut. xxxii. 36 ; Psalm cxxxv. 14.

¶ Deut. xxxii. 35.

** Numb. xxiv. 18.

†† Gen. xxvii. 15.

“ whom I have loved [עב] since the days of old and
 “ in former years; and my soul was bound up in her
 “ soul*; but her father and her mother have con-
 “ cealed her in secret places of concealment; and
 “ it is impossible for me to speak unto her, unless
 “ I dress myself like a stranger with the clothes of
 “ the poor who beg at the doors: procure them for
 “ me, that I may go.’ And the commander of the
 “ host did so. And I put on the clothes, and
 “ changed the brightness of my countenance into
 “ blackness†, and tied linen cloths smeared with
 “ oil upon my legs, and went about mourning‡, like
 “ one despised and rejected of men§; like a man
 “ of sorrows and acquainted with grief||, and in whom
 “ there is no soundness¶. And I passed through the
 “ streets of the city unto the bridge which is over
 “ the river Tiber, near the fort of the pope, where
 “ are the poor and the sick; and I sat among them
 “ thirty days, like unto one stricken and smitten of
 “ God**. I did not eat pleasant bread, neither
 “ came flesh nor wine in my mouth††. And it
 “ came to pass, at the end of the thirty days, on
 “ the tenth day of the month of the Gentiles, which
 “ is the twelfth month Adar‡‡ of the year RUTS,

* Compare Gen. xliv. 30.

† שחור, gloom.

‡ Ps. xxxviii. 7 (6).

§ Is. liii. 3.

|| Is. liii. 3.

¶ Is. i. 6.

** Is. liii. 4.

†† Dan. x. 3.

‡‡ Esther iii. 7.

“ (‘ he spake unto his lad RUN רץ* ;’) when about
 “ the middle of the night, a deep sleep fell
 “ upon me†, and behold, the old man, whom
 “ I had seen before in a vision, came unto
 “ me and said, ‘ My son, I am come to make
 “ thee understand what will happen unto the na-
 “ tions in the midst of whom thou art. Come with
 “ me unto the ruins of Jerusalem, where thou wast
 “ at first.’ And he took me, and led me unto a
 “ place of two mountains, which are in the plea-
 “ sant land, between Mount Zion and Jerusalem,
 “ and between Zephath‡ and Damascus ; for I
 “ had already seen them in a vision long ago, and
 “ their likeness is upon my seal above the two
 “ lameds which are in my name§ and surname|| ;
 “ for from the day I had seen them, I put them

* Rabbi Joseph quotes here 1 Sam. xx. 36, וַיִּאָמֶר לְנִעְרוֹ רָץ, but רץ is the only word which contains the number.

ר = 200

צ = 90

$$290 + 5000 = 5290 = \text{A.D. 1529,}$$

See ante, p. 154, note.

† Comp. Job iv. 13.

‡ צִפְתָּה specula, a rad. צִפָּה “ And Judah went with Simeon his brother, and they slew the Canaanites that inhabited Zephath, and utterly destroyed it. And the name of the city was called Hormah.” Jud. i. 17.

§ Salomo.

|| Molcho, or as Jost writes : *Malchu*.

“ upon my seal for a sign. And the right one of
“ these two mountains, which is over against Ze-
“ phath and Damascus, is the smaller ; and the left
“ one, which is over against Mount Zion and Jerusa-
“ lem, is the larger. And as we were there, he
“ made me to stand upon my feet upon the top of
“ the right mountain, and said unto me, ‘ Lift up
“ thine eyes, I pray thee, towards the left moun-
“ tain, and tell me what thou seest.’ And I said,
“ ‘ I see a man clothed in white raiment, in whose
“ hands are the balances, and above him, a man
“ who is greater than he, clothed in linen, whiter
“ and costlier than that which I saw first. And the
“ man in whose hands were the balances was upon
“ the top of the mountain, and above him the second
“ man, according as it had been in the first vision ;
“ and as I spake with him, the mountains ap-
“ proached one unto the other, and the taller man
“ was left between the earth and the heavens above
“ our heads. And as I was upon the smaller moun-
“ tain, the legs of the man who was upon the top
“ of the left mountain lengthened, until my head
“ was between his knees. And the old man said
“ unto me, ‘ Open thy mouth, and thou shalt
“ speak unto him, and ask him what will be the
“ judgment of the nation, whence I have taken
“ thee.’ I said unto him, ‘ How can the servant
“ of my Lord speak with this, my lord, since I

“ am unworthy ? for what am I, and what is my
 “ life, or what is the righteous and upright work
 “ of mine hands, that I should come and intrude
 “ myself to ask from before the face of my lord, a
 “ small or a great thing ?’ But the man said unto
 “ me, ‘ Fear not, peace be unto thee, my son ;
 “ ask of me, and I shall give it*, for therefore am
 “ I come.’ And I bowed down and worshipped
 “ with my face toward the ground. And I said,
 “ ‘ To-day thy servant knoweth that I have found
 “ favor in the sight of my lord ; I pray, let my lord
 “ speak in the ears of his servant†, and tell me the
 “ judgment of the nation, among whom I was
 “ upon the bridge.’ And he answered and said
 “ unto me, ‘ This is the book in which is written
 “ what shall happen in time to come, because of all
 “ the evil which is done. Speak unto the old
 “ man, and he will tell it unto thee.’ And he
 “ gave the book into the hand of the old man, and
 “ who would give‡ that I had permission to write
 “ the vision of that book ! And he read therein,
 “ and he gave it back unto the man, and the man
 “ said unto him, ‘ Go, and tell the young man
 “ who is with thee what thou hast read.’ And
 “ he took me by the hand, and said, ‘ Let us go

* Ps. ii. 8.

† Gen. xliv. 18.

‡ i. e. Would that I had liberty to write, &c.

“ to the place where thou stoodst;’ and we went
 “ unto the bridge, and I sat down in my place as
 “ at the first. And as I was there, I lifted up mine
 “ eyes, and saw a great beast, and her likeness
 “ was that of a winged fowl of many colors,
 “ flying over the earth. And it came up from
 “ the salt sea, and rested upon the citadel which
 “ is on the river side. And I said unto the old
 “ man, ‘ What is this, my lord?’ And he said
 “ unto me, ‘ This is the mother of the great sea-
 “ monsters which sitteth in the cities of the sea,
 “ whose name is C’rum*, which causeth vileness†
 “ to the sons of men, and she receiveth strength
 “ from the end of all flesh‡; and when this bird
 “ removeth, the windows of the heavens are
 “ opened, and the rains come on all the places
 “ over which she hovers. And were it not for the
 “ covenant, which God hath made between him-

* The Rabbi makes a name of the word כָּרִם in Ps. xii. 8. (Heb. 9). כָּרוֹם fuligo. “ *Berach*, fol. 6. 2. legitur: est quædam avis in urbibus maritimis, וְכָרוֹם שְׁמוֹ, et Kerum nomen ejus est, quæ quando sol oritur mutatur in varios colores. Præterea est lapidis pretiosi nomen, cæruleam vel vel aquæ marinæ colorem referentis, unde vocatur כָּרוֹם יָמָא Turcicus marinus Thalassius. Chrysolitum, Septuaginta reddunt. Legitur pro Hebræo כֶּרֶם שֵׁשׁ, Exod. xxviii. 20. Forte est Amethystus. Extat et Esth. viii. 15.” *Buxtorf Lex. Chald. Talmudicum et Rabbinicum*, s. v. כָּרוֹם.

† זֶלָת.

‡ i. e. This bird feeds upon dead carcasses.

“ self and all flesh, when they were sinners on the
 “ earth, the world would return into nothingness*.
 “ And as I stood, I saw again the likeness of a
 “ small bird, in fashion like unto the first, of a
 “ white color, exceedingly beautiful. And it went
 “ out from the great ocean, and rested above its
 “ fellow†, the other bird; and I said, ‘ What is
 “ this, my lord?’ and he said unto me, ‘ This is
 “ the beast of the field‡, which sitteth upon
 “ the wonderful rocks which are sunk in the
 “ deep; whence issue sweet showers, and rains
 “ of blessing and life, and every good thing.
 “ And there the birds make their nests§, that there
 “ might be deliverance on earth, and to satisfy
 “ man with fruit of the work of God. It is con-
 “ stantly against the fowl, which cometh up from
 “ the salt sea to break her strength; and under
 “ both of them are smaller and greater animals.
 “ And at the time when God judges, the one
 “ becometh lower, and the other higher; when
 “ he judgeth with justice, the smaller is lowered;
 “ and when with mercy, the greater is lowered.
 “ But now they both are lifted up, to work out
 “ righteousness and judgment; righteousness to
 “ Israel; and judgment to all the nations: for the

* תוהו, chaos.

† Companion.

‡ שרִי may mean either *field* or *Almighty*; but *field* in Ps. viii.

8; l. 11; lxxx. 14.

§ Ps. civ. 17.

“ cup is in the hand of the Lord*, to PASS over the
 “ earth, that the inhabitants of the world may
 “ drink, and with them all the wicked of the earth,
 “ to bring down all their horns, and to exalt the
 “ horns of the righteous†.’ The old man was yet
 “ speaking unto me, when there fell a feather of
 “ the wing of the great living creature, and a storm
 “ blew against it and drave it away; and there was
 “ left on the other wing, like the plumage of ravens,
 “ instead of the first which was of various colors.
 “ And there was thunder and lightning as on a day
 “ of rain; and on the smaller fowl, there was no
 “ change nor movement. And the lightnings
 “ coming down from heaven separated between
 “ us and between the beasts, and a great fear
 “ and a great terror fell upon me; and I went
 “ near unto the old man who was with me,
 “ and said, ‘ Surely, even the heavens are not
 “ pure‡ enough to know the will of their
 “ Creator; and how can corrupt man, sullied
 “ with all manner of abominations and evil works
 “ like me? Verily, his mercies are great over all
 “ his creatures, and he will not recompense them
 “ according to the works of their hands§, for he is
 “ a long-suffering God||, and is called the Lord of

* Ps. lxxv. 8.

† Ps. lxxv. 10.

‡ Job. xv. 15.

§ Jer. xxv. 14.

|| Ps. lxxxvi. 15.

“ mercies*. I pray thee, O my lord, tell thy
 “ servant what these great and fearful visions are,
 “ for I know that there is nothing hid from the
 “ eyes of my lord, who has seen all written in the
 “ book which was in the hand of the man who
 “ spake unto us upon the holy mountains. Let
 “ the kindness of my lord, I pray thee, be great
 “ toward me, to make good his mercy with me,
 “ according as he hath done from the day of the
 “ covenant until now.’ And he answered me,
 “ and said, ‘ Know, my son, that the great fowl
 “ which thou hast seen is a vision of earthquake
 “ and deluge ; the deluge will be in this country,
 “ and in another country, on the north side, on the
 “ uttermost part of the earth ; and the earthquake
 “ in the land of thy kindred†. So far as the beast
 “ is above the earth, will the water be above the
 “ houses, and the feathers of the beast which fell
 “ from it are to confound‡ the dwellers of this
 “ world among themselves, and for the confusion
 “ of them who flee from the earthquake and the
 “ deluge. And as for the smaller fowl which
 “ rested above its fellow, it cometh to intercede
 “ for the inhabitants of the whole world, and to
 “ establish the covenant which God hath sworn
 “ when the waters of Noah were overpast§. And

* Dan. ix. 9.

† Portugal. Gen. xii. 1.

‡ פלפול.

§ Is. liv. 9.

“ these wonders shall be for a sign unto thee.
 “ And thou shalt not stay in this place ; but it
 “ shall come to pass, when the deluge shall be
 “ over, that thou shalt return thither. And in
 “ those days, the earthquake will be in the king-
 “ dom of Portugal ; and when the deluge shall be
 “ at Rome, it shall also be in the north. And the
 “ lightnings which came down from heaven, which
 “ separated you from the birds, shew, that after
 “ the flood [צג], two great stars shall be seen,
 “ one upon the citadel on which were the fowls ;
 “ and the second upon the great place which is
 “ situated high on the clefts* of the rock And
 “ each star shall have a great tail of purple color†,
 “ and they shall be in the sight of the inhabitants
 “ of Rome for many days, and they shall all pro-
 “ phesy concerning them. And the star which
 “ shall be seen over the place, will show, that
 “ there shall abide a great weeping over the place,
 “ and over all its cities, which are on the west‡ of
 “ Turkey, for they shall be the inheritance§ of their
 “ enemies. And the second star sheweth that
 “ this shall not be for ever ; but that Israel will do
 “ valiantly¶, that singing may be in the morning||.
 “ And as for the fear thou fearedst before the

* חגוי סלע. Jer. xlix. 16. Song. ii. 14.

† מנונא ארנונא.

‡ מערב.

§ ירשה, possession, inheritance. Num. xxiv. 18.

|| Ps. xxx. 5.

¶ Num. xxiv. 10.

“ lightnings, it sheweth, that in the time, when
 “ the two stars will be visible unto the eyes of the
 “ people, there shall a great fear befall thee ; for
 “ the wicked of thy people will seek to take thy
 “ life. But fear not, for they shall not prevail
 “ against thee. And from that time until seven
 “ months, (for thirty years must be completed for
 “ thee, to receive* higher degrees†, two and one,
 “ to put on the linen garment, because they have
 “ poured out thy soul unto death‡) then shalt thou
 “ have leave to go to the place which thou knowest ;
 “ because, for this purpose, I have brought thee
 “ over out of Turkey. And thou knowest also the
 “ earthquake of the kingdom of Portugal, and the
 “ deluge which shall be in the north, why they will
 “ come ; and now I go to see the change of
 “ Ephron and Charum§. For when in Ephron
 “ the bird shall sing, there will be a present given
 “ to them who dwell in the dust, to sing upon
 “ the tree of life. Then shall the souls which
 “ are in the body be destroyed||, and the wicked
 “ shall no more exist to be contemptible round
 “ about with the things which stand upon the

לִקְבֹּל דְּרַגְיִן צֵלָאִין תְּרִי וְחַד *

† דְּרַגְיִן, steps, Targum Onkelos. Exod. xx. 23. 26, the Hebrew מַעְלֹות.

‡ Is. liii. 12.

§ חֲלוּף עֶפְרוֹן וְחָרוּם.

|| See p. 5, l. 1. : עֲבָדָה זָרָה : אֵין בְּנוֹ דְּדוֹר בָּא עַד שֶׁיִּכְלֹוּ כָּל הַנְּשָׁמוֹת שֶׁבְּנִפְחָה

“ height of the world, and the living and eternal
 “ king shall be living and exalted*, according
 “ to the mystery of the vaù (ו) in the holy name
 “ Jehovah (יהוה), which was the staff in the hand
 “ of Jacob, to support by it the righteous of the
 “ people who are called man (אדם). And then
 “ they shall say, Blessed be the Lord that day,
 “ who hath given a wise son unto David. This day
 “ is the day of joy known to the Lord. And on
 “ the self-same day shall rest upon the king Mes-
 “ siah a holy spirit, a spirit of wisdom and under-
 “ standing†, to make him rule over a great people,
 “ and to be at eventide a light to shine through
 “ the night. After this shall awake from the dust
 “ the dead of the world, and he will renew them
 “ by a perfect resurrection. No satan and no evil
 “ spirit shall then be, and the Lord will give rest
 “ to his people.’ And it came to pass, when the
 “ old man left off speaking according to these
 “ words, that Solomon‡ awoke, and stretched out
 “ his hands toward heaven, and said, ‘ Lord God
 “ of Israel, I acknowledge before thee, that thou
 “ hast dealt kindly with me this day, for the sake
 “ of thy great mercies, and not according to my
 “ righteousness; and for the sake of thy loving-
 “ kindness, and not for my innocency; for what

* המלך חי וקים יהי חי ורם, viz. in the hearts of his people.

† Is. xi. 2.

‡ The writer of the letter.

“ am I, that I should be taught a high matter
“ over which there is a watcher* ; if it was not by
“ thy good and great hand, to shew the good unto
“ criminals which thou hast shewn me this day,
“ not according to the work of mine hand, but ac-
“ cording to thy righteousness, O living God, that I
“ have seen what I have seen, and my soul is pre-
“ served†; blessed be the Lord who sheweth good-
“ ness unto debtors !’

831. “ And it came to pass, in the morning,
“ when the dawn arose‡, that I went unto the
“ house of the commander of the camp, and
“ took the clothes which I had left there. And as
“ mine hands were weak, and my body was sorely
“ fatigued, I besought the Lord in my heart, that
“ I might recognise a Jew man of the children of
“ Israel among the Gentiles; and I placed myself
“ at the parting of the way where much people
“ pass by, and the Lord gave me according as it
“ was in my heart; and I called unto one of
“ those that passed, and separated him from the
“ rest of the people, and I asked him, ‘ What is
“ thy name ?’ And he said, ‘ Menachem.’ And I
“ said, ‘ Are there rabbanim among you ?’ And
“ he said, ‘ There are.’ And because he answered

* Namely, to guard its mystery.

† Gen. xxxii. 30.

‡ Gen. xix. 15. Joshua vi. 15.

“ me with a feeble voice, I knew that they were
 “ not upright; and I said unto him, ‘ Let me
 “ know their names, that I may know the good.’
 “ And they were expressed by name from his
 “ mouth; and I considered them, and behold,
 “ among the number of their names, was a man,
 “ whose name was Judah, the son of the Rabbi
 “ Shabthi* (may his remembrance be for a bless-
 “ ing!) in whom I recognized that there was an-
 “ cestorial piety for his salvation, and I said,
 “ ‘ Call him unto me;’ and he called him, and he
 “ came. And I said unto him, ‘ I am the servant
 “ of Solomon, who remaineth in the city of Pesaro
 “ with the duke of that city, and he sent me about
 “ his affairs. And behold, I am much fatigued
 “ from the way; therefore, bring me, I pray thee,
 “ into the house of one of the children of Israel,
 “ that he may give me bread and relish† to eat,
 “ to relieve my soul‡.’ And he led me into the
 “ synagogue, and commanded one of his ac-
 “ quaintance to honor me with all his power.
 “ And the slanderers knew my dwelling-place,
 “ and they slandered me unto judgment, and
 “ set watchmen at the gates of the city to lay
 “ hold on me. But because the pope was not in
 “ the country, I leaped over the wall of the city

* שבתִי.

† לִפְתָּן i. e. obsonium, saporetto. See the Zemach David, of David de Pomis. Also the Kehilath Jahacob of Moreira, p. 63.

‡ לִיפְתָּן :

‡ Lam. i. 11. 16.

“ and went to meet him, and the horse was left in
 “ the city ; and after I had secured myself, I
 “ went into the synagogue on the Sabbath-day,
 “ and waited until the time when the book of the
 “ law was brought out, for they were not aware of
 “ my return ; and I went up into the pulpit, and I
 “ began to preach on the verse, ‘ Blessed is the
 “ man that trusteth in the Lord*.’ And so I did
 “ from Sabbath to Sabbath, from day to day†.
 “ And this was my manner until I removed thence,
 “ for fear of the waters of the flood, accord-
 “ ing as it had been commanded me. And in those
 “ days I heard them say that the prince David
 “ was come into Italy, and also upon him passed
 “ the cup of slandering from the wicked sons of our
 “ people. And I purposed, that when I should see
 “ his face he should teach me knowledge ; but it
 “ was the reverse of this, for he inquired of me.
 “ Yet I do not believe but that he is a very wise
 “ man ; and when he saith, that he does not know
 “ the law and wisdom, it is only to steal the mind
 “ of the people, and also to see how I would behave
 “ towards him. And this being my intention, I
 “ was constantly with him, like the servant before
 “ his master. And when I was at Venice, whither
 “ I went to speak unto the printer, to print for me
 “ wonderful and deep things from the mysteries of
 “ our holy law, to encourage every one that studies

* Jer. xvii. 7.

† i. e. Many succeeding Sabbaths.

“ therein; there was there a physician, and he
 “ appeared in my sight as a man of faith, and his
 “ name was Doctor Rabbi Jacob Mantin*, and he
 “ had strife with another physician, the son of an
 “ Ephrathite, and his name was Doctor Elias
 “ Chalphon†; and I would make peace between
 “ them, but he would not. And he was minded
 “ to go to Rome, but I would not let him; when
 “ I told him, that the day of their destruction by
 “ the waters of the flood was nigh‡, he went to
 “ another city, saying, ‘ That he would not stay
 “ in a country with his enemies.’ And when he
 “ saw that I had friendship with the physician
 “ aforesaid, he turned out an enemy toward me.
 “ And during these events, the flood was upon the
 “ land of Rome. And they said unto him, ‘ Why
 “ doest thou recompense evil for good?’ He an-
 “ swered, that this knowledge was like the
 “ knowledge of sorcerers; and he spake of me a
 “ great many things before the government, to
 “ fulfil the saying of our rabbies of blessed me-
 “ mory, ‘ The mustard burns the man who wrought
 “ the spoon§.’ For had not the Lord been my

* מאנטין.

† חלפון, a changer of money.

‡ The famous inundation mentioned by Benvenuto Cellini in his Life, cap. xi., and by other cotemporary writers.

§ כפא דחט נגרא בגויה נשרף לחרדלא, Cochlear quod sculpsit artifex eo urit sinapi, scil. os artificis. *Berach.* fol. 28. 1. Sic opus noxium redit in caput artificis. *Buxtorf, Lex. Talmud.*

“ help, they had almost done me wrong. And
 “ by the hand of Jews, they gave me deadly
 “ poison ; but from that also the Lord delivered me.
 “ And after I was healed, I went to Rome, to ob-
 “ serve the stars and their appearance ; and before
 “ they came, I told it all unto the pope, and to some
 “ of the cardinals belonging to the great of the court,
 “ written in a letter. And I also wrote unto the
 “ king of Portugal by the hand of his ambassador,
 “ for I spake to him in his chamber*. And when the
 “ earthquake came, they marvelled much. And
 “ the ambassador said unto me, ‘ If the king had
 “ known before thou removedst from Portugal, that
 “ thou art so very wise, he had given thee permis-
 “ sion to act by every law thou wouldst.’ And
 “ daily he and his servants honored me much at
 “ his house, and before the pope. And the cardinals
 “ held meetings upon meetings, and assemblies upon
 “ assemblies. When they beheld the honor be-
 “ stowed upon me by the pope, some said, ‘ He
 “ should be killed, because he has despised the
 “ waters of baptism which passed over him in Por-
 “ tugal ;’ and some said, ‘ He should not be killed,
 “ for he is a very wise [75] man, and he told us
 “ things to come ;’ and they honored me before the
 “ multitude of the people with their words and
 “ their deeds.

832. “ And the report was heard by the wise

* i. e. A private audience.

“ man, the experienced Doctor Rabbi Jacob
 “ Mantin, at Venice, and he said unto the Jews
 “ who were there, ‘ Now I will arise and go to
 “ Rome, and pursue the man Solomon to injure
 “ him, until he return unto his manner*, or else
 “ he shall be burned with fire.’ And the Doctor
 “ Jacob Mantin came to the city of Rome, and
 “ went first unto the house of the ambassador of
 “ Portugal, and said unto him, ‘ Why art thou not
 “ zealous to honor the king, thy master; because
 “ of that man who standeth in the court of the
 “ pope, who was a scribe in the house of the king
 “ as one of his servants, and now he is a Jew ?” And
 “ the ambassador answered him, ‘ That is not our
 “ way, and thus shall not be done in our place†, to
 “ go about slandering, and to *follow* such as slander
 “ privily‡, and this was never my manner.’ And he
 “ went out from before his face with a burning
 “ wrath§; and he went before the judges, the great
 “ men of the city, who knew law and judgment,
 “ with a voice the voice of Jacob, and the hands
 “ the hands of Esau||, &c., and with all the
 “ forces of his strength¶. And the judges an-
 “ swered him, saying, ‘ We can do nothing
 “ without witnesses: when it is in the power

* לסורו, i. e. to his Christianity.

† Gen. xxix. 26.

‡ Ps. ci. 5; Levit. xix. 16; Jer. vi. 28.

§ Exod. xi. 8.

|| Gen. xxvii. 22, i. e. like a wolf in sheep's clothing.

¶ Job. xxxvi. 19.

“ of thy hands to bring witnesses, we will fulfil
“ all thy desires.’ And he went out to and fro, to
“ seek witnesses of the men of Portugal, who were
“ then to be found in Rome, to inquire of them if
“ they knew me ; and he sought diligently, and
“ found witnesses, and brought them into the
“ judgment-hall. And they wrote an accusation
“ to condemn me in judgment, and they called me
“ before them, to know of me, how and what the
“ thing was, and upon what I claimed to be a Jew,
“ after having formerly belonged unto another
“ people, and moreover, because I preach to many
“ concerning the law ; which thing ought not to be
“ done. Then I shewed unto them the security of
“ the pope, written and sealed, how he had given me
“ power and permission to do according to my de-
“ sire ; and no men should gainsay it in my hand.
“ And they took the security from my hand with
“ an overwhelming wrath, and went before the pope
“ with a great anger, and said unto him, ‘ Why
“ doth anything like this proceed from thee ? And
“ if thou pervertest the judgment, why hast thou
“ made us judges ?’ And he returned them this
“ answer, ‘ I know it also ; be silent, for I have a
“ secret with him ; not that the right is so ; but
“ the time requireth it so.’ And when the man
“ saw that he could not prevail against me, he

“ took with him the first vision, which I sent to
 “ the Doctor Joseph Titsak*, the copy of the
 “ whole matter†, which was stolen, and he trans-
 “ lated it into the Nazarene language‡, and shewed
 “ it to many cardinals that they might be ashamed,
 “ and blush at that which the pope suffered against
 “ their own law ; until the end of the words was,
 “ that because of their much enticing and urging,
 “ the pope gave permission unto the nobles of the
 “ judgments, to do what the law requireth ; and
 “ unto me he said, ‘ Stay thou with me here, lest
 “ the men who seek thy life should lay hold on
 “ thee.’ For being anxious about my honor, I
 “ have said, ‘ Seize him, and burn him, for there
 “ is no deliverer.’ And the most high God, for
 “ the sake of his mercies and loving-kindness
 “ which have not ceased, caused to meet them a
 ‘ man in my form and in my likeness, clothed in
 “ garments like mine, and they took him sud-
 “ denly, and hastened and burned him in fire.
 “ And they came unto the house of the pope,
 “ saying, ‘ The man in whose honor thou de-
 “ lightest is become a burning fire.’ And I was
 “ hid in the most secret chambers. And when I
 “ came before him, he was surprized at the sight.
 “ And he called the chief of the judges, and said,

* Here spelled טיטסק.

† Comp. Ecc. xii. 13.

‡ The Italian.

“ ‘What deed hast thou done? Behold! there is
“ Rabbi Solomon with us, and thou hast burned
“ another in his stead; and now, hasten and
“ write in the judgment-place, that the man
“ who was burned, had reviled and blasphemed,
“ and cursed his king and his God, so that it may
“ not be known that he was burned instead of
“ Rabbi Solomon, lest the world go astray after
“ him.’ And they hastened so to do. Then I said
“ unto the pope, ‘Thou hast already seen the
“ stars with thine own eyes, according as I have told
“ thee from the beginning, and thou knowest what
“ shall happen unto thee, according as these stars
“ shew, that weeping may endure for a night, but
“ joy cometh in the morning* ; send me away, I
“ pray thee, for I have no permission to stay any
“ longer here upon trial.’ And he dismissed me
“ in peace, and I rode upon a swift horse in the
“ night, and with me a goodly company, sent by
“ him. And all the things which I have related
“ unto you, ye will recognize, and know that
“ they are true, from the contents of the certificate
“ of the heads of the congregations of Rome and
“ the rabbanim, which I send unto you, and many
“ such and such things† of the travail which hath
“ come upon me; I am weary of writing them, for

* Ps. xxxiii. 5. [Heb. 6.]

† 2 Sam. xii. 8.

“ no book can contain them. And also to spare
 “ the shame of the children of our people, lest I
 “ should uncover their shame and contempt, in all
 “ the abominations which they have done unto me :
 “ peradventure ye shall hear part of them from
 “ the mouth of wayfaring men. And now, behold,
 “ I dwell here, and remain in this district to ex-
 “ pect the hour and time of which the Lord hath
 “ assured me to deal wonderfully with me accord-
 “ ing to his desire and pleasure; and he will be
 “ with me, and keep me, according as he hath
 “ helped me until now, and from him will my help
 “ come, to complete what is incumbent upon me
 “ to do. For there is yet a vision for the appointed
 “ time*, and a time for every purpose†, until the
 “ Holy One, blessed be He, shall surely make
 “ known unto his people the power of his works ;
 “ for surely, with power 𐤎𐤁 the works of the
 “ Lord were made in twenty-eight times‡ ; viz.—

833. (1.) “ First: A time to be born:—When the
 “ Holy One (blessed be He!) had created heaven
 “ and earth, the world conceived, and bare the first
 “ man, and the Lord blessed him, and left him in
 “ the garden of Eden, to keep his commandments :

* Hab. ii. 8.

† Eccl. iii. 1.

‡ See Eccl. chap. 3, where the word 𐤅𐤅 occurs twenty-eight times. 𐤎𐤁 *power, might*, contains the number 28. 𐤎 = 20, 𐤁 = 8.

“ and (2.) a time to die, according as he had not kept
 “ what He had commanded him, for he was driven
 “ from the garden of Eden, and poured forth his
 “ soul unto death*. (3.) A time to plant :—When
 “ he knew his wife Eve, they became fruitful, and
 “ multiplied until they became a great people ;
 “ and they were planted in the world in security,
 “ their houses being safe from fear. (4.) And a time
 “ to pluck up that which is planted :—So great was
 “ the wickedness of man in the earth, and every
 “ imagination of the thoughts of his heart was
 “ only evil all the day†, that he rooted them out
 “ from the world by the waters of the flood.—(5.) A
 “ time to kill :—When all the earth was one tongue,
 “ they said each one to his neighbour, ‘ Come on,
 “ let us build a city ;’ and the Lord scattered them
 “ abroad upon the face of the whole earth, and
 “ they were forgotten as the dead out of mind‡.
 “ (6.) And a time to heal :—When Abraham our
 “ father came, he brought a remedy into the world ;
 “ for they were sick by the sickness of idolatry as it
 “ is written ; ‘ And the souls which they had gotten
 “ in Haran§.’ (7.) A time to break down :—When
 “ wicked Esau came, he made a breach in the
 “ holy seed, and went in the way of the old serpent,

* Is. liii. 12.

† Gen. vi. 5.

‡ Ps. xxx. 12 (13).

§ The Jewish commentators make of Gen. xii. 5. “ *The souls that they had regenerated (i. e. converted) in Haran.*”

“ which made a breach in the world. (8.) A time
 “ to build up:—When Jacob came to complete
 “ the building of the world by the Twelve Tribes,
 “ the tribes of Jah*. (9.) A time to weep:—By
 “ the spies; for it is written, and the people wept in
 “ that night, and it was instituted to weep for the
 “ generation in the ninth night of Ab. (10.) A time
 “ to laugh:—When Israel was in Egypt, they made
 “ them to serve with rigor, but the Lord saw their
 “ affliction and their oppression; the Holy One
 “ (blessed be He!) saw fit to hasten the end, by the
 “ merit of the patriarchs; and he said unto them,
 “ ‘Diminish your name by one letter, then I
 “ will hasten the end unto your children.’ Then
 “ said Abraham, our father, before him, ‘Lord of
 “ the world, how shall I do this, when thou gavest
 “ me the ה, to become the father of many nations†.
 “ And should I give it thee back, then should I
 “ be left as at the first (אברם).’ Jacob said, ‘If I
 “ give up yod (י) of my name, then will remain
 “ עקב (deceive).’ Isaac said, ‘If I should give
 “ up yod (י), then there would remain שחק,
 “ (laughter).’ For at first my name was Isaac
 “ with a ש; to reveal unto us this mystery, it
 “ is so written four times in scripture, as a true

* The Eternal Lord. Ps. cxxii. 4.

† Gen. xvii. 5.

‡ אברם means illustrious father, but אברהם father of a multitude. Gen. xvii. 5.

“ witness, that so was his name on the four wings
 “ of the earth. And Isaac said before the Holy
 “ One (blessed be He!), ‘ Lord of the universe, take
 “ from me the **ש**, which contains the number of thy
 “ name in the alphabet Atbash **ש"א"ת ב"ש***, and give
 “ me a **צ** instead, and Israel shall be in the captivity
 “ of Egypt two hundred and ten, with so much as
 “ [צה] the **ש** is more than the **צ**, and no more.’
 “ And so it was for the sake of Isaac, Israel went
 “ out from Egypt to receive the law, which was
 “ rejoicing always before him†. (11.) A time to
 “ mourn:—The angels of peace wept bitterly over
 “ the destruction of the temple. (12.) A time to
 “ dance:—When Israel entered the land; and then
 “ he mentions the coming out of Egypt after the
 “ matter of the spies, and the entering into the
 “ land after the destruction; in order to mention the
 “ punishment first, and after it the good. For so is
 “ the manner with Israel according to the blessing
 “ of Isaac, but not according to the blessing of
 “ Balaam; but first before the birth of Abraham,
 “ he saith the good first, viz. the time to be born,
 “ &c. (13.) A time to cast away stones:—When
 “ he threw from heaven to the earth, the beauty of

* The alphabet Atbash **ש"א"ת ב"ש** is that cabalistical spelling according to which the first letter of the usual alphabet retains its place, but the last is put for the second, the second for the third, the last but one for the fourth letter, and so on.

† Prov. viii. 30, 31.

“ Israel*, the stones of the sanctuary were dispersed
 “ in the streets; then Israel went into captivity.
 “ (14.) A time to gather stones:—The time of Mor-
 “ decai and Esther, to go and gather all the Jews†.
 “ (15.) A time to embrace:—In the time of Ezra,
 “ when they went out from Babylon; for it is said,
 “ ‘ And I gathered them unto the river, &c.’; for so
 “ is the manner of them that return, that one
 “ embraces his neighbour. (16.) A time to refrain
 “ from embracing:—In the time of the kings of the
 “ house of Chashmonim‡, when the kingdom of
 “ Greece was strong, and they sentenced evil sen-
 “ tences upon the daughters of Israel. (17.) A time
 “ to get wisdom:—The time of Hillel the aged,
 “ and Rabbi Akibah, when they asked of the
 “ Lord to deliver into their hand the guardian
 “ angel of the law. (18.) A time to lose:—When
 “ Israel went into the captivity of Edom, then
 “ was wisdom lost from among them; and to
 “ recompense measure with measure, it is writ-
 “ ten, ‘ And I will destroy the wise men from
 “ Edom.’ (19.) A time to keep the Law:—In the
 “ same captivity, when so many destructions§ and
 “ so many slaughters passed over Israel in the
 “ captivity of Edom, and the law was not forgotten
 “ by them. (20.) A time to cast away:—When
 “ they could not stand the trial like the former,

* Lam. ii. 1. † Esther iv. 16. ‡ Maccabees. § Baptism.

“ under the weight of oppression they cast from
 “ themselves the yoke of the commandments, and
 “ went out from the communion of the children of
 “ Israel. (21.) A time to rend:—Those who brought
 “ destruction tore the law, and translated it in
 “ divers tongues, and exposed it for schism; and
 “ of these is said, ‘ Look not upon me, because I
 “ am black, because the sun hath looked upon me,
 “ my mother’s children were angry with me, &c*.’
 “ (22.) A time to sew:—When Onkelos, with many
 “ others, were converted, he translated the law and
 “ made a seam against the tearings which the
 “ wicked had made†. Upon this it is said, ‘ I am
 “ black, but comely, O ye daughters of Jerusalem,
 “ as the tents of Kedar‡;’ that is to say, ‘ comely
 “ and fair,’ in the translation which is made in the
 “ language of Kedar, whose meaning and comment
 “ is, ‘ white and clean like the curtains of Solo-
 “ mon.’ (23.) A time to keep silence:—In the time
 “ when wrath is in the world, as it is said, ‘ Hide
 “ thyself a little moment until the indignation be
 “ overpast§.’ (24.) A time to speak:—When a time
 “ of benevolence is awakened in the world, then
 “ the gates of mercy are opened; and the man

* Cant. i. 6.

† Solomon Molcho means to say here that Onkelos, by his Targum or Chaldee paraphrase, in the vulgar tongue, stopped the progress of heresy and vice.

‡ Cant. i. 5, 6.

§ Is. xxvi. 20.

“ ought to speak and to ask for his necessities, and
 “ the Lord will then grant his request. (25.) A
 “ time to love:—viz. Israel, when the Lord will
 “ remember them in this captivity; as He saith, ‘ I
 “ love you, saith the Lord, &c.’ (26.) A time to hate:
 “ —viz. Esau, for his violence against his brother
 “ Jacob, as it is written; ‘ And I hated Esau*.’
 “ (27.) A time of war:—When all the nations will
 “ gather themselves into the pleasant land, as it is
 “ written, ‘ I will gather all the nations against
 “ Jerusalem to war.’ (28.) And a time of peace:—
 “ When the Lord will go out to war against the na-
 “ tions, ‘and he shall rebuke many people, and they
 “ shall beat their swords into ploughshares.†’ And
 “ the Messiah, the son of David, shall be revealed
 “ unto us, and he shall speak peace unto the Gen-
 “ tiles; and his rule shall extend from sea to sea,
 “ and he shall awake for us the time of benevolence,
 “ and the times shall cease which are under the
 “ moon which have changes, times for good, and
 “ times for evil, according to the days of the moon;
 “ and this is what he saith, ‘ And abundance of peace
 “ so long as the moon endureth, he shall have domi-
 “ nion also from sea to sea, &c’‡. And when all the
 “ times shall be completed, in which all the works
 “ of God are typified, then shall the house of Jacob

* Mal. i. 3. and comp. Obadiah, 6.

† Isaiah ii. 4.

‡ Psalm lxxii. 7.

“ inherit their possession; and upon this it is said,
 “ ‘The strength* of his works he told unto his
 “ people, to give them the inheritance of the Gen-
 “ tiles.’ And now we are in the time of love,
 “ when the Lord will verify among us *what is*
 “ *written*, ‘ I have loved thee with an everlasting
 “ love, therefore with loving kindness have I
 “ drawn thee†.’ Verily, I fear, lest sinfulness
 “ should prevail, God forbid‡, and lest mischief
 “ should befall me in the place of dangerous herds
 “ of beasts. I thought to intreat the face of the
 “ dwellers in the pleasant land, that they should
 “ pray for me towards our glorious and holy
 “ temple, which is the gate by which prayer
 “ entereth the heavens, and they may ask of the
 “ blessed God, that He would always be with me,
 “ and keep me in every way I shall go, and be a
 “ helper and supporter unto me every where.
 “ For the root of prayer is in the Holy Land, and
 “ there it is accepted, and is more valued before
 “ God than the prayers of angels.

834. “ And behold, I will reveal a great mystery
 “ respecting that. Know, that the angels which
 “ sing before God have their voice in their wings;
 “ and thereupon it is written, ‘ And I heard the

* כ"ח *strength*, is here taken again numerically for 28, in allu-
 sion to the twenty-eight repetitions of *time* in Ecclesiastes.

† Jer. xxxi. 3.

‡ הם ושלום, protection and peace, i. e. *absit, μη γενοιτο*, Far
 be it! God forbid!

“ voice of their wings ;’ and the Holy One (blessed
 “ be He!) made six wings* to each of them, and
 “ with them they praise him all the days of the
 “ week, every day with one wing ; and they say
 “ one to another, ‘ Sing unto the Lord a new song,
 “ for he hath wrought wonderful things ; for day
 “ by day, in the beginning of the creation, were
 “ made new works ; and when the Holy Sab-
 “ bath Day came which the Lord blessed and
 “ sanctified, and which is a great day before
 “ him, the ministering angels said, ‘ Lord of the
 “ universe, with what shall they praise thee on
 “ the Sabbath-day, as the number of wings is ex-
 “ hausted on the sixth day ?’ And the Holy One
 “ (blessed be He!) replieth, ‘ From the wings of
 “ the earth have we heard a song, the glory of the
 “ righteous ; and ye shall praise me with my sons
 “ which are in the Holy Land.’ Then the angels
 “ go and say together with Israel, ‘ The glory of
 “ the Lord shall endure for ever, the Lord shall
 “ rejoice in His works.’ Then the Holy One,
 “ (blessed be He!) saith, ‘ My leanness ! my
 “ leanness !’† But I have no permission to re-
 “ veal more ; except that though there be some new
 “ song every morning, the greatest of all is the song
 “ of the righteous nation who keep the faith ; and
 “ therefore it is said, ‘ Great is thy faithfulness !’‡

* Isaiah vi. 2.

† Is. xxiv. 16. *וְיָי לִי*, *i. e.* Woe unto me !

‡ Lam. iii. 23.

835. “ I will not enlarge more at this time :
 “ but know, that from all the good that the Lord
 “ hath dealt out kindly to me, I have done good
 “ unto you, to let you hear news and wonders ; and
 “ I will send the writings by the way of Venice,
 “ by the hands of the faithful man of the name,
 “ Master Elias, the physician, the son-in-law of
 “ Master Calo*, the physician. So shall ye also
 “ write often, and send the writings through his
 “ hand at Venice.

836. “ And because that many say vain things,
 “ and make false writings, and tell words which
 “ I did not speak, and which I have not com-
 “ manded, neither came they into my heart ;
 “ therefore I warn you, that ye turn not your
 “ heart†, except unto the writings which are writ-
 “ ten with mine own hand, and signed with my
 “ name and sealed with my seal ; and this will be
 “ perfectly true judgment, and ye shall not regard
 “ lying words‡, but only the words of truth, which
 “ I shall let you hear : ye shall stand fast, and
 “ your hearts will be strengthened, all ye which
 “ hope in the Lord. Blessed be the Lord for ever-
 “ more ! Amen and Amen !”

837. And Solomon would speak unto the

* קאלו. † *i. e.* Not to attend to any thing but, &c.

‡ Exod. v. 9.

emperor about the faith, well explained. And he went his way when the emperor was in Ratisbon, and he spake unto him there. And the heart of the emperor was hardened, and he hearkened not unto him for anguish of spirit*. And he commanded, and they put him in prison, and his friend Prince David, and his men; and they remained there several days.

838. Now when the emperor saw, after the Turk returned from him, that there was respite†, he removed from that place. And he returned unto Italy, and brought them bound in waggons unto Mantua, and set a watch‡ over them. Then the emperor spake to the wise men, for so was the imperial manner§, and they found him guilty of death||; and they said, “Bring him forth, and let him be burned¶.” And it came to pass, one day, that they put a bridle on his jaw-bones**. And they brought him out, and all the city†† was [𐤀𐤃] moved about him, and the fire burned before him. And one of the nobles of the emperor said, “Take the bridle from between his teeth, for I have a message unto him from the king‡‡;” and they did so. And he said unto him, “The emperor

* Exod. vi. 9. † Exod. viii. 15. [Heb. 11.] ‡ Job vii. 12.

§ Esther i. 13; *i. e.* the manner of government.

|| Deut. xxi. 22.

¶ Gen. xxxviii. 24.

** To prevent his speaking to the people.

†† Ruth i. 19.

‡‡ Judges iii. 19, 20.

hath sent me unto thee, saying, ‘ If thou turn from thy way, shalt thou not be accepted and live?’* And he will maintain thee, and thou shalt be before him; and if not—evil is determined against thee†.” And he stood not up nor moved before him‡. And he answered like a saint, like an angel of God, and said, “ Because I walked in that religion, my heart is bitter and grieved; and now what is good in your sight do; and my soul shall return unto her father’s house§, as in her youth||, for then it will be better with her than now.” And they were full of indignation against him¶, and cast him upon the wood which was upon the fire, and they brought him as a burnt-offering unto the Lord, wholly burned**. And the Lord smelled the sweet savour††, and took to him his spotless soul, and she is with him as one brought up with him, rejoicing always before him‡‡. But they brought his servants out from the prison, and they went their way. There was none left in their destruction, except the noble Reubenite, his friend, and they set a watch over him. And the emperor went to Bologna; and they took the Reubenite with him in a waggon, bound with fetters§§, and took

* Gen. iv. 7.

† Esther vii. 7.

‡ Esther v. 9.

§ Lev. xxii. 13.

|| Comp. Hos. ii. 16.

¶ Esther v. 9.

** Lev. vi. (15) 22. Holocaustum.

†† Gen. viii. 21.

‡‡ Prov. viii. 30.

§§ Solomon’s Song, vii. (6) 5.

him to Spain; and he abode there many days, and died in the prison-house.

839. And many in Italy believed, at that time, that Rabbi Solomon Molcho had been delivered by his wisdom from the hand of those who sought after his soul to destroy it*, and that the fire had no power over him. And there were some witnessed, and sware before the assembly and congregation, that he stood in his house eight days after the burning, and that he went his way thence, and they saw him no more; the Almighty God alone knoweth†. And would to God I could write in a book with certainty and sincerity, whether his words were true or not.

840. And my wife conceived, when we were at Botago‡; and when her time was fully come that she could bring forth, she had hard labor. And I cried unto the Lord concerning her, and He

* Ps. xl. 14.

† In A.D. 1666, when the notorious Pseudo-messiah Shabthai Ts'vi was frightened into Mahommedanism, there were also people who would not be undeceived. "Non obstant cela, il ne laissa pas de s'en trouver quelques-uns qui affirmoient que Sabatai ne s'estoit point fait Turk, et que c'estoit seulement son ombre qu'on voyoit sur la terre avec un turban blanc, et un habit de Mohamettan; mais que son veritable corps et son ame avoient esté enleveez au ciel pour y demeurer jusqu'au temps prescrit, a l'accomplissement des merveilles qu'il avoit preschées." *Histoire de Deux Turcs, et d'un Juif, de l'Anglois de Mons. T. E.* Paris, 1673, p. 138, 139.

‡ בוטאנו.

heard me from his holy habitation. And He opened her womb, and she bare a son on the eleventh day of the month Shebat, two hundred and ninety-three after the smaller date ; and she ceased from bearing. And I said, “ Now will I praise the Lord,” and I called his name Jehudah* ; and the child grew, and obtained favor in the sight of all that looked upon him†.

841. And Andrea Doria, the oppressor of the Jews, returned with all his ships unto Italy in those days.

842. And it happened, when they came, behold there was with them among the captives, a virtuous woman of the Hebrews, whose name was Esther, the wife of Rabbi Jacob, the priest. And the prison-keeper‡ said unto her, “ Go to now, I pray thee, let me come in unto thee§.” And she went after him and covered herself, and plunged from the ship into the depths of the sea||, and died before it was known whither the woman went ; and they marvelled much concerning her. I pray thee, O God of the spirits¶, bring her back from the depths of the sea.

843. And Andrea Doria rode on a horse and went to Bologna, and bowed with his face to the

* Gen. xxix. 35.

† Esther ii. 15.

‡ דִּשְׁבָּאִי.

§ Gen. xxxviii. 16.

|| Micah vii. 19.

¶ Num. xvi. 22 ; xxvii. 16.

ground before the emperor. And he abode there some days and returned unto his ships, and came with gladness to Genoa in the month of January in the year two hundred and ninety-three, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-three*. And he brought with him the spoil of the cities, which the Lord had overturned in his wrath. And in Coron he left about one thousand five hundred Spaniards, warlike men; and corn, and bread, and wine, and oil, and gunpowder, and cannon-balls, in abundance; and they abode there many days. Now the city of Coron was a fortified city, so that those who were in it could withstand one against a hundred, and a hundred against a thousand. And they took it, because of the cowardice of the Turks, who abode in the midst thereof in those days.

844. And Solyman sent about ten thousand men, and they besieged Coron many days. Also his galleys besieged it, and gave no peace either to those who went out or to those who came in; and the city was besieged†.

845. And the emperor Charles and the pope abode in Bologna several days, and rejoiced in love in those days. And they said one to another, “How long shall Italy be a desolation, as overthrown by strangers‡? Come, let us deal wisely, let us make her a name, lest she

* A. D.

† 2 Kings xxiv. 10; xxv. 2.

‡ Is. i. 7.

should again become a spoil* ; and one shall help the other† when there falleth out any war‡, and they shall not sorrow any more at all§.” And the thing was good in their sight, and in the sight of the nobles of Italy ; and they made a covenant among themselves ; and there entered the covenant, the pope, the emperor, the men of Venice, and the Duke Francesco of Milan, and the rest of the nobles of Italy, both those who were nigh, and also of them who were afar off|| ; to unite their shoulders¶, to root out, and to destroy every power of people or of country that should come to war in Italy, and that every one should give, according to those that were numbered of them**, some more and some less. And this decree was given†† at Bologna on the twenty-eighth day of the month of February ; and Antonio Leyva was over the host in those days. A

846. And Francis, the king of France, sent messengers unto the emperor, and with them nobles and very honorable men ; and demanded of him Milan, and Genoa, and Savona : but he hearkened not unto them. And *Charles* gave them also time to come into the covenant ; and they went from him in peace. One of them went unto Ferrara, and the other returned to France ; and every thing they had done was told the king.

* 2 Kings xxi. 14. † Is. xli. 6. ‡ Exod. i. 10.

§ Jer. xxxi. 12. || Esther ix. 20. ¶ Consent. Zeph. iii. 9.

** Numb. xxvi. 54 ; Exod. xvi. 17. †† Esther iii. 15. .

847. And the emperor removed from Bologna in the month Abib, and came unto Cremona, passed through Pavia, and laid up his carriages at Milan*. And he saw the cities which were appointed to be overturned; namely, most of the cities of Italy, those which were nigh, and also those which were afar off; and he went on his journey unto Genoa in the second month, two hundred and ninety-three. And he went down to the sea in ships, and turned his face unto Barcelona. And also his spouse, the queen, came thither before they arrived; and the greater part of the nobles of Spain she brought with her at that time. And the men of Barcelona made a great and exceedingly fine pier† in the sea. And it came to pass, one day, when the ships arrived there, that they went out to meet him; but he was not there to be found‡, for he had come into the city three days before they arrived, and they knew nothing of it. And he lay down on the bosom of the queen in her chamber, and they rejoiced in love; for bread *eaten* in secret is sweet§.

848. In that month, Giovanni-Giorgio, the marquess of Montferrat, took to wife the daughter of the king of Naples, whom Ferdinand, the king of Spain, had put away by command of the emperor. And the woman came unto Casale, the

* Isa. x. 28.

† גשר, *a bridge*, here, according to the context, *a pier*.

‡ Gen. i. 24.

chief city of his dominion, with tabrets and dancing, and the earth was rent at the voice of the cannons and the high-sounding trumpets, and all the people of the country rejoiced greatly. But in a little moment* their joy was turned into mourning†, for his servants made a conspiracy against him before he went in unto her; and he died, and left the principalities unto the emperor in those days.

849. In that year went Galeotto Pico, the prince of Concordia, which is on the uttermost borders of Mantua, into the fortress of Mirandola in the darkness of the night, and took it; and her sentinels he slew with the edge of the sword. And he went into the chamber where was the Signor Francesco Pico [13) his uncle, and brought him down into the grave in blood, and one of his children also; and Mirandola has been his until this day.

850. Now Coron was straitly shut up‡, before the oppressing sword§. And they sent messengers unto the emperor for assistance; for without, the sword bereaved||; and within, the young children were asking bread, and no man brake it unto them¶; and the famine was sore. And Andrea Doria sent one of his ships, to see what could be done for it. And the rest of his ships went alone

* Is. xxvi. 20; Ezra ix. 8.

† Comp. Lam. v. 15.

‡ Joshua vi. 1.

§ Jer. xlvi. 16; 1. 16.

|| Deut. xxxii. 25; Lam. i. 20.

unto Sicily, and lay at anchor by the border of the sea.

851. And Francis, king of France, and his wife and his children, came in the third month unto Lyons, and abode there many days; and they removed thence and went to Avignon; and those days were the days of the first-fruits*. And he sent his ships on towards Pisa, to fetch the sister of the Duke of Florence, whom he had taken for his second son to wife. And they passed by Genoa on the twenty-ninth day of the sixth month, and the men of Genoa sent a present unto them; and they went their way.

852. And the ship which Andrea Doria had sent, went unto Coron; and she returned back on the fourth month in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-three. And the ships of the Turk pursued her, but they reached her not, and they were very wroth. And Andrea Doria went unto Naples in the beginning of the fifth month, for they sent unto them, saying, "Coron is straitly shut up; and the soul of the inhabitants fainteth for want of bread." And he went thence unto Messina, but there he tarried not many days; and he removed from Messina on the second day of the month of August two hundred and ninety-three, and twenty-six galleys with him, and

* יוֹם הַבְּרִיּוֹת, *dies primitiarum*, occurs also for the feast of Pentecost. Num. xiii. 20; xxviii. 26.

other large ships which brought soldiers, and corn, and wine, and oil, and weapons of war, as many as they could carry; and they reached Coron on the eighth of the month, and there were the ships of the Turk standing on their guard: and it came to pass, when the chief captain of the Turkish armament heard the report concerning Andrea Doria, and that he approached with his ships unto the shore, and that their number was sixty-eight, small and large, and that Andrea Doria passed on before them, that the Turks discharged against them cannon-balls in multitudes; and the sea and the shore shook at their noise, and their smoke went up toward heaven. And the ships of the uncircumcised moved not before them, and gave them no answer, and they went on their way and approached unto the city. And two of the larger ships remained alone in the midst of the sea, for the wind ceased to drive them on towards the city; and some of the Turkish ships went out unto them, and they took one by force, and slew her men with the edge of the sword. And also unto the other the Turks came, and fell upon her. And when Andrea Doria saw that they were set on mischief*, he went out with his ships like a bear bereaved of her whelps, and set the battle in array against them, and took the ships from their hands; and about two hundred and fifty Turks who were

* Exod. xxxii. 22.

upon her they slew with the edge of the sword; and some of them they took alive at that time, and the ships of the Turk returned back, for they were terrified before them, and went unto their former place; and they removed thence, and went unto Modon. And there fell of the men of Andrea Doria about two hundred men in that battle; also of the Turks, they slew many with the edge of the sword; and the rest were taken alive.

853. And the men of the city went out among the rest, to war against the men of the Turks who besieged them on land. When the Turks saw it they turned their backs, and left the clothes and tents and other things as they were. And *the men of Modon* pursued after them, and spoiled their camp; and nine battering-rams, which they had left there in their haste* they took, and returned unto the city with gladness. And Andrea Doria brought unto Italy a part of the men of the host who were at Coron, and left some of those who went with him in their stead. Also of the men of the city, and their children, who were burnt with hunger†, he brought with him; and they went as fugitives and vagabonds begging bread in Sicily and Calabria, because they said, Aha! Aha!‡ against the children of Israel; and they were also

* 2 Kings vii. 15.

† Deut. xxxii. 24.

‡ Ps. lxx. 3. (Heb. 4.)

a reproach among the nations. The Lord is righteous*.

854. In that month, which is the month Elul, two hundred and ninety-three, the ships of Barbarossa, the king of Algiers, came into the seas of Piombino, and they found there seventeen ships from Genoa, and they took them and burned them with fire, and their smoke went up toward heaven. And of the men who were in them, some fled before they came, and some they slew with the edge of the sword; some also were taken alive. And other ships were there; but the fortress of Piombino saved them, and they went their way.

855. And after he came back, there went three galleys which belonged to Andrea Doria, to bring bales of silk which belonged to the merchants of Genoa and Lucca. And the Lord delivered them at Calabria into the hand of those who sought their life, into the hand of the eight galleys which belonged to the Ishmaelites; and they brought them unto their country. And the uncircumcised cast many down slain, as they fought; and there remained one of the eight galleys as a cottage in a vineyard† in that war, and the captives who were upon her escaped, and fled unto Naples; and their life was unto them a prey.

* Lam. i. 18.

† Isaiah i. 8.

856. And Barbarossa went his way unto Turkey; and Solyman, the Turk, made him chief of his host.

857. And Francis, the king of France, again sent ships unto Leghorn, to fetch the Pope Clement who was there, at the end of the seventh month, two hundred and ninety-four. And they went, and they came unto Marseilles, and the pope entered the city on the third day of the month of October, and the earth was rent at the voice of the battering-rams. And the king came also into the city on the next morning; and he bowed before the pope unto the ground, and kissed his foot and his knee and his mouth, and they asked each other's peace, and went each unto his own house. And it came to pass, after some more days, that Eleanora, the queen, came also into the city with numerous people and with a mighty hand, and the two daughters of the king with her; and they went also to kiss the feet of the pope, and he saluted them; and they came into the chamber, and they remained there several days, and they spake face to face; no stranger passed between them*, and they returned each one unto his place.

858. And Rome was a den of robbers until Clement returned, and they shed innocent blood in the midst of her; for the viceroy whom he had left there died. And the inhabitants were in

* Job xv. 19.

those days, as sheep which have no shepherd*, and blood touched blood†.

859. And the men of Genoa sent messengers unto Francis, the king, while he was at Marseilles, to see whether he would be reconciled unto them while his heart was merry, but his wrath was kindled against them at that time also; and he would not hearken unto them. And they returned unto Genoa with shame in the month of November, which is the ninth month two hundred and ninety-four, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-three.

860. And Augustino Granada, the Genoese, spake into the ears of the King Francis, saying, "If thou art inclined unto my counsel, O king, my lord, thou wilt come with thy ships unto Genoa [נצ] securely, and no man shall deliver it from thy hand. For according to the power of my hand‡, I will sink two ships into the depth at the entrance of the port, where the galleys are in winter time, and they shall not be able to come out, and we will take them alive, and thou shalt come into the city. And the thing was pleasing in the eyes of the king, and he shewed him kindness, and gave him money to do according to all he had spoken. And the thing was known at Genoa before they came; and when he returned

* 1 Kings xxii. 17. 2 Chron. xviii. 16. † Hos. iv. 2.

‡ Gen. xxxi. 29.

unto his house, they put him into the lowest prison. And he acknowledged all the evil which he spake of doing unto his people, and they cut off his head, and they rent him as one would have rent a kid*, and his violence came down upon his own head†.

861. And the Pope Clement returned unto his place. And in the month of January in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-four, the French took a large ship which came from Spain, bringing goods from the men of Genoa; because they had revolted against the king to go a whoring, after the stubbornness of Andrea Doria; and they spoiled her, and the ship went her way; and all this was of the Lord, because they had injured his people Israel.

862. And one of the chiefs of the ships sinned against the king, who found that he had discovered what Augustino Granada, the Genoese, had devised to do. And the king commanded, and they took off his head from him, and they brought him down in blood into the grave: such are the ways of those who are greedy of gain‡; their master taketh their life, that they may do no more presumptuously§.

863. And the Turks besieged Coron during the whole winter, and would not let any thing come into the city. And the Spaniards went out

* Judges xiv. 6.

† Ps. vii. 16 [Heb. 17.]

‡ Prov. 1. 19

§ Deut. xvii. 13.

daily to plunder, and to make spoil for themselves. And it came to pass, one day, that they went unto Androssa, for they were called with subtlety, and about two thousand Turks were in the midst of it; and it is thirty miles distant from Coron. And they found its gates open, and heard no voice of an oppressor*; for the Turks hid themselves in the houses before they came into the city, and remained upon their guard. And it came to pass, when they came, they kindled fire in the first houses, and their smoke went up toward heaven, and all the city was moved about them. And the battle was strong against the Spaniards from within and without. And the chief of their host died at the entrance of the gate, and there fell of them to the ground about eighty men, beside the wounded who were smitten in multitudes. And some of the Turks also the sword did devour, and many of the houses were burned. And the Spaniards gave the signal, and they returned back; for evil was determined against them. And the Turks pursued after them about eighteen miles, and they returned embittered and wounded unto Coron; and they were about one thousand men.

864. And the uncircumcised could not abide at Coron, and could not send thither provision as they had sent time after time; and they delivered it

* Job. iii. 18.

into the hand of the Turks, by command of the emperor at that time; and the men of the host who were in the midst of her, went down to the sea in ships and returned unto Italy; and the war ceased.

865. And the Duke of Würtemberg went in the same year, and took back to himself with a strong hand from Ferdinand, king of Hungary, every city which the emperor Maximilian had taken. And there fell of the men of Ferdinand about twelve thousand men slain to the ground in that war. And Ferdinand strengthened himself to go to war against him, and there went out against him the cardinal of Mayence* and the duke of Saxony†, and they said unto him, “How long will the sword devour?‡” and they made peace between themselves. The copy of the treaty of peace was, that the duke of Würtemberg and the Landgrave his friend should go to cast themselves down before the emperor and his brother. And they would forgive their sins, and the sins of those who were joined unto them, neither should they learn war any more§. And the cities which he had taken should be for the duke, and to his male children after him unto all generations. Only that he must return unto the king the battering-rams

* מאנאנציה. † שאגשניאה. ‡ Comp. 2 Sam. ii. 26.

§ Is. ii. 4; Micah iv. 3.

which he had taken from his hand at Inspruck* and other cities, and that they should not spread any further the new belief† which they have among them. And every one should return in peace unto his place: and his country was quiet.

866. And Solyman went out to war against the Sofi in the same year, and he sent before him Ibrahim Pasha in the month of August, and with him was a very great host. And he went on his journey, and reached Tabriz, and came into the city. And when the Sofi, king of Persia, heard it, while he was warring against the green turbans‡ which were nigh at that time, he sent thither his brother and thirty thousand horsemen, warlike men, with strength of valor. And he said unto him, “ Be a son of valor, and I will go unto the Turk, and we shall see what will become of his dreams.” And he set his face toward Tabriz, and with him were eighty thousand chosen men, and five thousand artillerymen riding on horses, and three hundred waggons of battering-rams; the like was not seen in Persia until this day. And they arrayed a battle there, and there fell many of the Turks slain to the ground, and the rest drew back, for they were confounded before them. And when Solyman^b saw that the Lord had delivered his host into the hand of the

* איספרוק.

† Protestantism.

‡ The Sunnites.

king of Persia, he returned unto his country with no advantage in that year. And the rest of the particulars of the war, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Persia and Media?

867. Then sent Andrea Doria two large ships to the east country to plunder and to spoil, for he was greedy of gain: this was his manner all the days. And there gathered themselves unto him every man who was in distress, and every man who was in debt, and every one who was discontented; and he became a captain over them. And they were about four hundred men*; and they went and returned in the month of January, two hundred and ninety-five, in the year of the Christians one thousand five hundred and thirty-five, bringing captives Turks, and Ishmaelites, and clothes, and things which they plundered; and most of them died on the road, by the sword and by famine, and also of the captives who were with them died many.

868. And the emperor gave Christorga†, the daughter of the king of Dacia, his sister's daughter, unto Francis, duke of Milan, to wife in that year. And the woman came to Milan on the third day of the month of May two hundred and

* 1 Sam. xxii. 2.

† קרישמירנה.

ninety-four, with gladness and songs, and tabrets, and harps. And the earth was rent at the voice of the tabrets, and of the dancings, and of the high-sounding trumpets, and of the battering-rams. And there came with her many princes and honorable men*; and the mighty of the land went out to meet her. And all the people from one end to the other, rejoiced, saying, “She will comfort us from the toil and troubles which came over us†; therefore she shall be called Commanderess, for she was taken by command of the emperor‡; certainly she is his bone and his flesh, and he will not walk contrary unto her§, and we shall be guiltless from iniquity||.”

866. And the galleys of Andrea Doria came back from roving in the seas at the end of the fifth month, unto Gepoa, with gladness. For the Lord had given into their hands three ships of the Ishmaelites, upon which were about one hundred and fifty Turks, all men, besides the captives which were with them; and Andrea Doria was very glad. While he was yet speaking, there came also another¶, and Doria's gladness was turned into mourning**, for they told him, saying, “The ship which thou hast sent unto the emperor has

* Numb. xxii. 15.

† Gen. v. 29.

‡ Comp. Gen. ii. 23; xxix. 14.

§ Lev. xxvi. 21, 23, 24, 27, 28, 40, 41.

|| Num. v. 31. ¶ Job. i. 16, 17, 18. ** Lam. v. 15.

been taken in the pits* of the Ishmaelites, and their men were but few in number, for some of them went on [צ] shore, and she had no deliverer. And the heart of Andrea Doria was turned†, and his face gathered blackness, for he began to fall before them‡; and the Lord will have him in derision§.

867. And Haradin||, that is Barbarossa, went out by command of Solyman, with his ships from the haven of Constantinople, in that year. And their number was eighty-three, small and large, and they came unto the island of Zante which belonged to the Venetians, and they passed into the seas of Italy with a high hand¶. And in Calabria the Lord gave Santa Nogita** into their hand, and they cast down many slain, and their eye did not spare them. And they took the captives and the prey, and the city they burned with fire, and their smoke went up toward heaven. And also the Jew who was there was taken among the captives, and his household were slain with the edge of the sword.

868. And they found at Zitraro†† six new cruisers and they burned them with fire, and the watchmen thereof they slew with the edge of the sword,

* Lam. iv. 20.

† Comp. Esth. vi. 13.

|| האראדין.

** האנטה נוגיטה.

† Exod. xiv. 5.

§ Comp. Ps. ii. 4.

¶ Exod. xiv. 8.

†† ציטרארו.

and some of them fled to the mountain*, and their life was unto them a prey†. And also Fondi‡ and Isprolongo§ and Garigliano|| the Lord gave into their hands; and they did unto them according as they did unto the rest of the cities, and the priests they slew with the edge of the sword. And the best of the women and the children they took captive, and their riches, their silver and their gold they plundered, and there was no one to save them. And the Jews who were at Fondi they took away with them, for they knew them¶; and their spoil, and the ransom for their souls they took. And four great ships they found on the way**; nevertheless, the seamen rowed hard to come on shore††, and they left them as they were, for they feared for their lives. And the Turks came into the ships, and there was no man, and they took what was good in their sight, and burned them with fire; and they went their way. Then fled Calabria, and the inhabitants of Naples fortified themselves. The inhabitants of Messina were amazed before Barbarossa, and trembling laid hold upon the princes of Palermo,

* Gen. xiv. 10. † Jer. xxi. 9; xxxviii. 2. ‡ פונדי.

§ אישפרולונגו. || גאריליאנו.

¶ They recognized them to be Jews, and expected to obtain a ransom for their release from other Jews.

** i. e. Sailing.

†† Comp. Jonah i. 13.

the seamen of Genoa melted away*, fear and dread fell upon them†, and they fled, when there was none to pursue‡, for the dread of Barbarossa fell upon them; and his fame went throughout the whole world§.

869. In the same month, which is the month Elul, two hundred and ninety-four, the men of Genoa fortified the walls of the city, and set the battering-rams of brass round about it. And they set up watchmen every day and night, for the man Barbarossa went on increasing, and his fame went throughout the whole world. His dread fell upon them. And they said, “Go to, let us build unto us a fortified wall, and towers round about it; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth||,” and they did so. And Genoa builded a fort for herself, and gathered silver like dust, and their heart was much lifted up.

870. And Barbarossa sailed to Africa and took Tunis, like a man who taketh the tip of the ear, and he abode there. And Muley Hassan¶ the king, and her hired men who were in the midst of her like fatted bullocks, fled away together; they did not stand, because the day of their calamity was

* i. e. They lost their courage. † Comp. Exod. xv. 14—16.

‡ Comp. Lev. xxvi. 36, 37; Prov. xxviii. 1. § Esther ix. 3, 4.

|| Gen. ix. 4.

¶ מולי האסין.

come upon them, the time of their visitation*. And he went unto another country; and the war was strong between them in that year.

871. And Andrea Doria went unto Messina after he had passed over, to see what the day would bring forth†, and he hastened and returned to Genoa, but did not prolong his days there.

872. And the Pope Clement fell sick, and he died on the 26th day of the month of September on the day of the new year two hundred and ninety-five‡, and they buried him in the sepulchres of the popes. And the king's ships went to carry the cardinals to Rome, and they chose the cardinal Farnese§, and he was a Roman; and they called his name Paul the Third until the day of his death. He builded the walls of the fortified city of Placentia||; and he set up her gates, and was highly exalted.

873. Also Alfonso, duke of Ferrara, ended his days on the last day of the month of October, and all the people of the country wept over him, and they buried him in the sepulchre of the dukes, and chose Hercules¶ his firstborn son. And they made him to ride through the streets of the

* Jer. lvi. 21.

† Ps. xxvii. 1.

‡ ביום הכסה, the full moon, Ps. lxxxi, 3 (4); but among the modern Jews it is the name of the festival of the new year.

§ פירניסי.

|| פלאסינציה.

¶ אירקוליש.

city*, and they called before him, “Bow the knee!†” And all the people of the country rejoiced, and he was unto them a shepherd all his days.

874. And unto the oppressed‡, which fled from Portugal, he gave leave to dwell in his country.

875. And Girolamo Laskito§ went unto Solyman the Turk, and found favor in his sight, who made him woywode, and governor over all Transylvania; and he went out from him in peace. And it came to pass, when he returned, that the waiwode John bound him, and he set a watch over him, and the Turk sent Ludovico Gritti, a man of Venice; for Ludovico was great in the eyes of the Turk, and his fame went throughout all the provinces, and his heart was much lifted up. And Ludovico went to put Zibak|| the bishop of Waradin into the prison-house, and brought him down to the grave in blood; and it grieved Transylvania much, and they made a conspiracy against him¶, and killed him, and the men who went with him; so the wrath of the Turk was kindled against them.

876. And Muley Hassan**, king of Tunis, sent messengers unto Charles the emperor, saying,

* Esther vi. 11.

† אברך, Gen. xli. 43.

‡ i. e. The Jews who had been compelled to feign Christianity.

§ ירולאמו לאסקיטו.

|| ציבאק.

¶ 2 Chron. xxv, 27.

** מולי האסין.

“ Save me, I pray thee, from the mouth of Barbarossa, and deliver me from the horns of the Turk, and I will surrender unto thee the city and the fulness thereof*. In my land thou mayest build a fortress as it pleaseth thee, and I will pay the garrison of thy men therein with my own treasures, and we will be called by thy name†, and I will be a servant unto thee, bringing presents all my days. And the thing was pleasing in his sight, for he feared lest a fire should come out from Tunis‡, and devour all the maritime cities, both those which were nigh, and those which were afar off. And he gathered about thirty thousand men who made war with strength and valor, Spaniards, Italians, and Germans; and two thousand horses, and weapons of war and gunpowder, and corn and bread and victuals in abundance, and he led them down to the sea into ships, in Spain and Italy, and gave them provisions for the way§. The king of Portugal also filled his hand||, and he also sent unto the emperor ships and soldiers, and there was not one stumbling person¶ in his camp. And the ships which went out from Spain were three hundred,

* Amos vi. 8.

† i. e. We will recognize thy sovereignty. Comp. Is. iv. 1. Dan. ix. 18, 19.

‡ Judges ix. 20. Numb. xxi. 28.

§ Gen. xlv. 21.

|| מלא ידו, i. e. He took up the matter.

¶ Ps. cv. 37.

small and great, besides one hundred ships which went out from Italy ; the like was not seen in the seas of Tunis since it became a nation*.

877. And Barbarossa observed the thing†: for whatever was done in Italy and Spain, it was told unto him exactly, day by day. And he also gathered together a host and horsemen, Arabians in multitudes, besides the six thousand Turks, men of valor, whom he had brought over. And the night was unto them for watching, and the day for labor‡. And he had about six thousand men [ק] captives, who made trenches round about. And he builded in Goletta§ a fortress and bulwarks of cunning workmanship, to shoot therefrom with stones, and with arrows, and with cannon. And his renown went out far and wide, for he helped marvellously, yea, mightily.

878. And the ships of the emperor went out from Genoa, and from the rest of the cities of Italy, at the beginning of the month of April two hundred and ninety-five, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-five, and they went unto Sardinia, and the Marquess del Guasto was head over them. And they sojourned there until the emperor came, and the soul of the people

* Exod. iv. 24.

† Gen. xxxvii. 11.

‡ Neh. iv. 16.

§ גוליטה.

was much discouraged because of the way*, for the sea wrought and was tempestuous†. But Andrea Doria went unto Barcelona to bow before the emperor, and abode there about a month of days‡, until the rest of the ships were gathered together, and the soldiers who went with him.

879. And the ships of the Ishmaelites came into the seas of Genoa to see the nakedness of the land§; and they took captives, and returned unto their country. Also the man Lewis Prisinda||, who brought about the covenant between the emperor and the king of Tunis, was taken in their pits¶; for the Ishmaelites that went with him, sold him unto Barbarossa, who put him into prison.

880. And many of the nobles of Florence besought the emperor after the death of Clement, to take off from them the yoke of Alessandro dei Medici, who had spilled their blood like water, and made himself altogether a prince over them**, which was not according to the covenant which they made with them. And also some of his kinsmen and of their family, sought for this matter††; and they could not speak peaceably unto him‡‡. And

* Num. xxi. 4.

† Jonah i. 11.

‡ Gen. xxix. 14.

§ Gen. xlii. 9.

|| פריסנדה.

¶ Lam. iv. 20.

** Num. xvi. 13.

†† viz. The deposition of Alessandro.

‡‡ Gen. xxxvii. 4.

they went to speak unto the emperor when he was at Barcelona, and to entreat before him, for the city which was tributary, until that day. And he said unto them, “ I will go and return, and that which the Lord will put in my mouth, that I will take heed to speak*.” And also the Cardinal Ippolito dei Medici went to speak unto the emperor, to intreat him for his people. And it came to pass, when he was at Itri†, that he fell sick and died, for they gave him deadly poison to drink, by command of Alessandro the duke, because he presumed in his heart to go‡.

881. And the emperor and Andrea Doria and the best of the nobles of Spain, whose hearts were willing to go, went to sea in ships, at the end of the third month. And they went along the coast of Sardinia, and came unto Cagliari§ on the thirteenth day of the month June, which is the fourth month. And they found there ships of Italy; and the Marquess del Guasto, the chief of the host of the emperor, went to bow before him, and to speak with him there. And the land and the sea clave asunder at the voice of the battering-rams, and the high-sounding trumpets||; and they rejoiced together on that day. And

* Num. xxii. 38; xxiii. 12.

† Esther vii. 8.

|| Num. xvi. 31; xxxi. 5.

† איטרי.

§ קאליארי.

the men removed thence, and went into the seas of Tunis on the fifteenth of the same month. And the report was heard at Tunis, and the country trembled, for the fear of the emperor fell upon them.

882. And Barbarossa rode about in the streets of the town, and spake unto the hearts of the men of the city and to the captains of his hosts, and their spirit revived*, for he was wise and a mighty man of valor in war, both by sea and land. And he was sixty-six years old, and his eyes were not shut from looking into all this†, and the beginning of his kingdom were two galleys, and the Lord was with him, and he was a prosperous man, and a wild man, his hand was against every man, and every man's hand was against him, until that day‡. For the stars of his heavens drew back, and he knew it not.

883. And on the sixteenth day of the month on the same day, the emperor and his men went on shore at Porto Farina§, and pitched their tents by the light-house which is near Goletta, and not even a dog moved his tongue against them||. And his wise men said unto him, "It is better for us to war against Goletta first, than to enter the city, lest the war might be both before

* Gen. xlv. 27:

† Is. xlv. 18.

‡ Gen. xiv. 12.

§ פורטו פארײנא.

|| Exod xi. 7.

and behind us:" and they besieged it about a month of days. And the Turks went out against them, and the Arabs who ride daily upon swift horses, swifter than the leopards and stronger than the lions*; and they warred against them day by day. And the men of the emperor made trenches round about, so that they could not pass over against them, for they hunted their steps that they could not go.† And the Turks who were at Goletta threw great stones into the camp of the emperor and into his ships by day and by night, all those days, until they became tired of throwing; but they destroyed only very few, because of the number of their trenches, and by their little understanding‡; or because they fought from heaven against them, they shut their eyes lest they might see it.

884. And the men of the emperor brought down from the ships seventeen battering-rams of the best battering-rams of brass which they had brought with them, and they also builded a fort near Goletta, and besieged it, and Goletta was besieged.

885. And there came out from Goletta about six hundred Turks, all men, on the twenty-third day of the fourth month. And they fell upon the

* 2 Sam. i. 23.

† Lam. iv. 18.

‡ i. e. Their want of skill.

place where the count of Sarno* had pitched his tents, and his men, the Italians, who were with him. And they slew them and discomfited them†; and they fled, put to flight by the sword‡; they stayed not, for the Lord drave them, and the count was left and about sixty men with him, and his hands were not bound§ when they were attacked. And the Turks mocked him, and cut his head from him, and took it with them, and returned unto the fortress rejoicing and merry in heart with one banner which they seized, and of them they missed but a small number of people, and two were taken alive.

886. And they went out again on the twenty-fifth of the same month at noon, in the heat of the day. And they fell upon the place of the Spaniards when they were sleeping and tired, and thirsty also, and their soul fainted within them. And they slew of them about six hundred men with the edge of the sword, for the Turks are a people that jeopardeth their lives unto death||. And the Spaniards were smitten with blindness at that time by the blowing of the storm and the sand of the sea, which was driven into their faces, and they turned their backs and not the face, and fell slain to the ground.

* מסארנה.

† Num. xiv. 44.

‡ Lev. xxvi. 6.

§ 2 Sam. iii. 34.

|| Judges v. 17.

887. And Muley Hassan, king of Tunis, came into the camp on the thirtieth day of the same month, and about three hundred men with him. And the emperor sent the best of the princes who were there to meet him, and they honored him much, and he bowed down to the ground before the emperor, and entreated him saying, “ I know thee by name* ; but thou hast added much to thy fame†. For like as an angel of God, so is my Lord the emperor‡ ; and a king as thou art§ at this day, would not wish to trample upon his kingdom and cities and houses, for the hearts of many kings of this country are not like unto me, they will incline to thee with obedience day by day, and will serve thee. But I will not be like one of them, to lick the dust of thy feet all the days of my life||. Therefore I will not ask of thee my lord, the emperor ; and I will not try any thing small nor great, only I will serve thee in the sincerity of my heart, and thou shalt act toward me kindly, for as the man is, so is his strength¶.” And the emperor answered and said, “ Fear not, neither be faint-hearted**, for I also have the heart of a king like unto thee, my people is like unto thy people this day ; I will show thee kindness,

* Exod. xxxiii. 12.

† 1 Kings x. 7.

‡ 2 Sam. xiv. 17.

§ 1 Sam. iii. 23.

|| Comp. Is. xlix 23.

¶ Judges viii. 21.

** Is. vii. 4.

and I will bring thee again into thine office*, only let the throne be exalted.” And the emperor spake more good and comfortable words unto him, for his bowels did yearn over him†. And he went out from before him, and they brought him into the tent which the emperor had pitched for him, and he set a watch over him, and his allowance was a perpetual allowance given him of the emperor all the days he was there‡. [87] And the emperor gave unto him silver and gold; and he divided it among three hundred men who came with him.

888. And to the rest of his men, and his nobles, the Arabs, who did not turn after him, he sent, saying, “ Let Barbarossa not entice you when he speaks to turn you away from the emperor§, for his heart is peaccable towards us; as for me, he will bring me back to mine office, and every one shall seek his God after his own will : for as for the drinking according to the law *of the Christians*, none will compel; for so the emperor has appointed to me||, and he will not alter the thing that is gone out of his lips¶, only in the throne will he be

* Gen. xl. 13; xli. 13.

† Gen. xlix. 30.

‡ 2 Kings xxv. 30.

§ Deut. xiii. 5.

|| Esther i. 8. Rabbi Joseph means to say, no Mahommedan would be compelled to drink wine.

¶ Ps. lxxxix. 34 [35].

greater than I*; and every one shall return unto his place in peace†.”

889. And the Turks fell upon the place of the Spaniards on the fourth day of the month of July, and slew among them a great slaughter‡. And they took one banner; and also Ludovico Mendez, the chief captain of their host, the Turks slew with the edge of the sword. And they pursued after them, and returned unto Goletta; and the earth was rent at the voice of the rams which they discharged when they returned, for gladness of heart; and they hung the banner on the wall, and its head turned downward to the ground, and this was a shame to the uncircumcised.

890. And the nobles of the emperor set the battering-rams round about Goletta on the fourteenth day of the fifth month. And they discharged guns against it, and battered its walls from morning until noon, and the earth was rent at their voice. The large and small ships also filled their hand, and threw stones therein from the east and from the west; and the sea and the earth trembled. Its walls were shaken, and the thick smoke went up toward heaven, and the sun withdrew his shining§. The Turks also filled their hand as at other times, and again slew in the

* Gen. xli. 40.

† Exod. xviii. 23.

‡ Comp. Num. xxxi. 7.

§ Joel ii. 10; iii. 15.

ships with a great slaughter. And from their ships they threw also sling-stones in abundance into the camp of the uncircumcised; and there died on that day much people.

891. And the men of the emperor went out from the camp before the artillery had ceased to discharge, and before they heard the high-sounding trumpets; and they approached Goletta, swifter than the leopard and stronger than the lions. And they scaled the walls, and made breaches in it. And the Turks could not withstand, but turned the neck, because the fear of the guns fell upon them. And the caul of their heart was rent*, they fought not as at other times† before, but left Goletta as it was, and fled unto Tunis with shame; and the uncircumcised slew at that time all the feeble behind them‡, they left not any soul§; and there fell of the Turks about six hundred men in that slaughter, and of the uncircumcised also some were taken in their pits||, for they made war with good advice¶; and they set fire to the gunpowder, and it destroyed all who went up first, and their stink went up toward heaven**.

* IIos. xiii. 8.

† Judges xvi. 20; xx. 30, 31.

‡ Deut. xxv. 18.

§ Deut. xx. 16.

|| i. e. Ambuscades.

¶ Prov. xx. 18

** Joel ii. 20.

892. And Barbarossa went to help them as they were fighting, and ten thousand men with him; and when he saw that the men of Goletta* fled, who were about three thousand men, he returned unto the city of Tunis, and they shut the gates of the city, and fortified themselves therein. And the Turks left there three hundred brazen battering-rams, and garments and weapons in abundance; and they belonged unto the men of the emperor at that time; and also eighty-three galleys, of which the greater part were not meet for any work†; and they set them on fire‡, and their eye did not spare them. That day was darkness unto Barbarossa§, for the stars of his heaven drew back, and he knew it not||.

893. And it came to pass after another six days, that the emperor brought his camp nigh unto the city, and six of the battering-rams. And they found there a well of water¶, and the people went thither to drink, but the officers would not let them, lest peradventure mischief should befall them**. And Hayradin, who is Barbarossa, went out against them with much people, and with a strong hand††. And he warred against them with

* Galeta, Ægimurus, Galite, Golleta.

† Ezekiel xv. 4.

‡ Josh. viii. 19.

§ Job. iii. 4.

|| Comp. Is. xiii. 10; Joel ii. 10; iii. 15.

¶ Gen. xxvi. 19.

** Gen. xlii. 4. 38; xlii. 29.

†† Num. xx. 20.

battering-rams of brass, and with arrows, and with the bow, so that the one came not near the other all that day*. And the men of Barbarossa could not withstand the many guns, and they turned the neck, and drew back, and the city of Tunis was perplexed†; and three of the rams they left there in their haste, and the uncircumcised took them, and the horsemen slew with the edge of the sword those Turks who remained there.

894. And the emperor tarried there all night because the sun was set‡, and he pursued not after them, for they were fatigued, because the way humbled their strength§; their soul loathed|| because of thirst, and had not Barbarossa fought with them, there would not have been left any who remained or escaped¶, for the uncircumcised had no strength to stand upon their feet; the greater part became weary of their life**, for all this was of the Lord†† to bring upon Tunis the time of her visitation, for by Him actions are weighed‡‡.

895. Then Barbarossa's thoughts troubled him, and his knees smote one against another§§; and

* Exod xiv. 20.

† Esth. iii. 15.

‡ Gen. xxviii. 11.

§ Ps. cii. 23.

|| Numb. xxi. 5.

¶ Is. i. 9.

** Gen. xxvii. 46.

†† Gen. xxiv. 50.

‡‡ 1 Sam. ii. 3.

§§ Dan. v. 6.

it came to pass when the morning appeared* that he went out to see the men of the city and the host, and that which was in their heart to do. And him who was over his house†, he commanded, saying, “ Stand fast and make ready my garments‡, and my vessels upon the camels, for I know not what the day may bring forth§.” And it came to pass, that he was yet scarce gone out||, when the Lord put a faintness into the hearts of the keepers of the fort¶, saying, “ He has fled**! And what will become of us††, when we shall be left and fall into the hand of our enemies, and be for a scorn and a derision‡‡ in the countries of those uncircumcised who seek our destruction?” and they also went out and did not stay, and left the fortress as it was, because they feared for their lives. They were yet between the walls, and the Lord raised evil§§ against Barbarossa from the midst of his own house. And one of his servants who was a Nazarene, who had changed his law|||, went into the prison-house, the place where the uncircumcised prisoners of his master were

* Exod. xiv. 27.

† i. e. Steward; Comp. Gen. xli. 1.

‡ Comp. Jer. xlvi. 14.

§ Prov. xxvii. 1.

|| Gen. xxvii. 30.

¶ Lev. xxvi. 36.

** Gen. xxxi. 20.

†† Comp. Exod. xvi. 7.

‡‡ Ps. xlv. 13.

§§ Comp. 1 Kings xiv. 10; xxi. 21.

||| i. e. Who had become a renegade.

bound*, and brake the bars of iron in sunder†, and said unto the prisoners, “Come ye out; gird yourselves with weapons of war; why will ye tarry, when your brethren, the men of the emperor, have set themselves in array at the gate‡;” and the watchmen fled, and became as though they were not.” And he brought them out from the prison-house, and they warred against the Turks, who had not hearkened unto the voice of their brethren, with pieces of wood and with stones; for there was not found among them a shield or a spear§, and they caused them to flee before them; and they shut the gates of the fortress.

896. And they climbed up the walls, and gave the signal, and called, “God save the emperor||!” and raised a banner on the wall. And Barbarossa ran when he heard this evil report, and spake unto their hearts, but they would not hearken. And they mocked him from the wall, and cast stones upon *Barbarossa*¶. When he saw that they warred from heaven against him, and that the war was against him from within and from without, then he laid hold on his own beard**, and cried with a loud and exceeding bitter cry††. And he went

* Gen. xxxix. 20.

† Ps. cvii. 16.

‡ Is. xxii. 7.

§ Judges v. 8.

|| 1 Sam. x. 24; 1 Kings i. 25.

¶ Lam. iii. 53.

** 2 Sam. xx. 9.

†† Esth. iv. 1.

out from the midst of the city with his whole army, and the emperor knew not that he had fled*. And he went on his journeys into the city of Bona; and thence he went to his metropolis, Algiers, unto his fifteen ships which he had there. And the ships of the emperor pursued him, but found him not; and also in the city there was not found any who pisseth against the wall†, for the fear of the uncircumcised fell upon them, and they escaped unto the mountains‡. [קב]

897. And the emperor sent up his men into the fortress, and the captives went out with great substance§. And the rest of the men of the host he placed until noon at the entrance of the gate of the city until he should see what would become of it||. And many of the inhabitants of the city fled by the way of the desert, when they saw that evil was determined against them. And many died of thirst; and many were slain with the sword by those who pursued them, who pitied neither man nor woman. And the emperor gave the city of Tunis to be plundered upon that bitter day, which is the twenty-first day of the month of July. And they divided the spoil in the midst

* Gen. xxxi. 20.

† 1 Sam. xxv. 22. 34; 1 Kings xiv. 10; xvi. 11; xxi. 21;
2 Kings ix. 8.

‡ Gen. xix. 19.

§ Gen. xv. 14.

|| Esther ii. 11.

thereof*, and the women were lain with, and one half of the city went into captivity. And in their prayer-houses, the Germans slew and destroyed there about six thousand souls of men and children and women†: their eye had no compassion upon them, for they are cruel, and their sword devoured flesh, and their arrows were drunken with blood‡.

898. 'Also of the Jews who were there in multitude, some of them fled into the desert, and some of them were slain in the day of the Lord's anger with the edge of the sword, and some of them went captive before the enemy§, and they were sold for bond-men and bond-women|| into the four corners of the earth, and in Naples and in Genoa, the congregations ransomed about one hundred and fifty souls; may the Lord, my God, remember unto them this for good¶!

899. And the decree was given at Tunis** by command of the emperor on the twenty-third of the same month, that all the soldiers should march out; and they did so. And the emperor made Muley Hassan king as at the first; and he was unto him a servant unto tribute all the days. Goletta

* Zech. xiv. 1.

† Deut. xxxii. 42.

|| Esth. vii. 4.

** Esth. iii. 15.

† Esth. ix. 6.

§ Lam. i. 5.

¶ Neh. v. 19; xiii. 31.

alone was given into the hand of the emperor, and he put into it a garrison of about two thousand Spaniards, who held swords, being expert in war*; and they abode there.

900. On that day the uncircumcised captives, who were there in multitudes, went out with a high hand. And of the inhabitants of the city, some went captive before the enemy hither and thither, beside the many who fell slain within and without; and the cry of the city went up toward heaven, and the king commanded, and they cleansed the city, for it stopped the passages with the blood of the slain and the captives†. And also of the men of the emperor there died a great many in that battle. For many the sword devoured, and many the time destroyed by famine and thirst, and by sickness which could not be healed‡.

901. And the emperor removed thence with his ships, and came to Messina on the thirtieth day of the month of October, and the great of the city went out to meet him, and honored him much. And the royal priests went out to meet him, and they brought him into the city; and the earth trembled at the voice of the battering-rams.

* Cant. iii. 8.

† i. e. The carcases obstructed the passages by putrefaction. Comp. Ezek. xxxix. 11; Deut. xxxii. 42.

‡ Deut. xxviii. 27. 35.

And he was content to send Andrea Doria again to Africa, to the metropolis of Barbary, to give it back unto the king of Tunis, for it was his border, and accounted his country. And the man went, but he could do nothing, because of the raging and the noise of the sea; and he returned back. And he sent him unto Utica which is in the Syrtis*, for this alone was left unto Barbarossa of all the districts of that kingdom, and also the sons of the king of Tunis went against it with much people, and with a strong hand. And when the Turks saw that there was no power in their hand to save it, they delivered it into the hand of the king's son; for they chose him, rather than that they should give themselves up into the hand of those uncircumcised in the flesh: and the Nazarenes returned unto their own country.

902. And Barbarossa avenged his vengeance†, when he returned unto Algiers; and executed his judgments. And he went against the isle of Minorca, unto a quiet and secure people‡, with subtlety. And while they who were therein abode securely, he took it and cut off from the city all the men§; and the fairest of the women and the children they took captive; and they plundered after their souls' desire, and the rest they slew with

* סירטה, Syrtis. † Comp. Numb. xxxi. 2; Ezek. xxv. 15.

‡ Judges xviii. 27. § Deut. ii. 34; iii. 6.

the edge of the sword ; and these had no deliverer. And they took the captives and the prey*, and went their way unto Algiers, and abode there. The posts went out hastening unto the emperor†, saying, “ According to this thing hath Barbarossa done ;” and he was very wroth. Also on the soldiers who had returned unto Italy, was the hand of the Lord to confound and to destroy them. And there died of them many in the ships, of the sicknesses which the Lord caused to be among them, lacking every thing. And seven hundred Germans and two hundred Italians sank as lead in mighty waters‡, for the Lord drave the sea with a strong east wind§, and he caused them to reel to and fro like a drunken man, and to be at their wit’s end|| ; and the ship was broken, and only thirty men were saved of them. And the best rams which they took at Goletta were in that ship, and they sank into the bottom as a stone¶, in the eighth month, which is the month Marchesvan two hundred and ninety-six, after the small date.

903. At the end of that month, Francesco Sforza duke of Milan, fell sick of the sickness whereof he died**, and he was gathered unto his

* Numb. xxxi. 12.

† Esth. viii. 14.

‡ Exod. xv. 10.

§ Exod. x. 13 ; xiv. 21.

|| Ps. cvii. 27.

¶ Exod. xv. 5.

** 2 Kings xiii. 14.

people. And with him, ceased and were at an end the Sforze; there remained not one heir of the government*; and he left the dukedom unto the emperor at that time.

904. And the emperor removed from Messina and came with his ships unto Naples on the thirtieth day of the month of November. And the nobles of the city went out to meet him; and they honored him, and brought him into the city; and the sea and the land trembled at the sound of the battering-rams, of the tabrets, and of the high-sounding trumpets†. And he came into the castle, and all the people of the land rejoiced, and cried with a loud voice, “ May the emperor live for ever!‡”

905. And the men who were driven away from Florence went unto the emperor while he was yet at Naples, in the tenth month; and behold they were about two hundred men. And they cried before him, “ Aha!§” concerning that which Alessandro, the duke, had done unto them, for he had made himself altogether a prince over them||, which was not according to the law¶; their blood he spilled like water; and he builded himself a fort, and exalted himself in his heart, saying, “ Who

* Judges xviii. 7.

† Dan. iii. 9.

|| Num. xvi. 13.

† Num. xxxi. 6.

§ Alas.

¶ Esth. iv. 16.

shall bring me down to the ground*?" And they asked of him, to restore the counsellors of Florence as at the first, and its judges as at the beginning†, as he had vowed to do; and Alessandro, the duke, went also thither, and the men between whom was the controversy, stood before the emperor‡ who spake to their hearts at that time, saying, that he would restore every man to his possession, only that the duke should be head over them; but they hearkened not unto his voice. And they said, "Is it to know with what we should serve the duke, we are come hither, that thou speakest unto us such words?§" And when they saw that there was nothing in the mouth of the emperor according to their desire, they went out from him, and went their way.

906. And the Duke Alessandro dei Medici went daily to bow before the daughter of the emperor; and they rejoiced there. This is the woman whom the emperor vowed unto the Pope Clement to give to Alessandro to wife.

907. And the emperor gave her to him to wife in those days; and he lay with her, and he made a great feast. And it came to pass, after some days, that Alessandro journeyed thence, and returned unto his country with gladness.

* Obadiah, iii.

† Isa. i. 26.

‡ Deut. xix. 17; 2 Sam. xv. 2.

§ Exod. x. 26.

908. And there was peace between Francis, the king of France, and between Barbarossa, and both of them made a covenant*. And he sent messengers unto Francis, and his ships remained [יך] at Marseilles until they returned, and went unto their country. From Algiers, Haradin journeyed to Turkey; and Solyman received him with gladness, and made him chief of his host.

909. And Solyman promoted Ibrahim Pasha, the Grecian, the oppressor of the Jews, and advanced him above all the princes that were with him†. And he exalted himself in his heart, saying, “I will be king;” and he had dealings with the emperor, and secretly practised mischief against his master‡. And the thing was known§, and they told it unto the king after his return from the slaughter|| of the host of the Sofi; and when inquisition was made of the matter, it was found out¶. And the king was very wroth, and his anger burned within him**. And the king commanded on the fifteenth day of the month v’Adar two hundred and ninety-six, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-six, and they brought him down to the grave in blood. Then had the Jews light

* Gen. xxi. 27.

† Esth. iii. 1.

‡ 1 Sam. xxiii. 9.

§ Esth. ii. 22.

|| Gen. xiv. 17.

¶ Esth. ii. 23.

** Esth. i. 12.

and gladness*, for he was an oppressor from the womb, and sought to root out all of them, if it had not been the Lord who was on our side†. And they fought from heaven against him‡, so that he fell to the ground. The Lord is righteous§.

910. And Genoa rebelled against the duke of Savoy, and against the law of the pope. They turned also after Lutheranism, according as the men of Ivernah|| had done at that time, and they cast down the sanctuaries, where the priest burned incense, for their soul loathed that service¶, and the duke sent men against it to war. And they also gathered together soldiers; and the nobles of Ivernah and the king helped them; and they discomfited the men of the duke with the edge of the sword** ; and they that remained returned into Italy with shame; and the king and the nobles of Ivernah took all the cities of the duke, which he had on the other side of the mountain in those days.

911. And the king gathered again a great host of horsemen and footmen; and he sent them into Italy in the month Abib. And his fear fell upon all the nations; all the inhabitants of the land melted away before him. And Monseigneur Danibo††,

* Esth. viii. 16.

† Judges v. 20.

|| איבירנה, perhaps *Bern*.

** Exod. xvii. 12.

† Ps. cxxiv. 2.

§ Lam. i. 18.

¶ Num. xxi. 5.

†† דאניבו.

and Montaigne*, were the captains of his hosts at that time ; and they took all the cities of Savoy from the hand of the duke, as one taketh the tip of the ear. And they took also Turin, his metropolis, and fortified it ; and it belonged to the French until this day. And Antonio Leyva, the chief of the imperial host, went out to meet him, and encamped on the river Dora†, and his men were but few in number‡ in those days. And it came to pass, after some days, that they sent unto him about eight thousand Germans to help him ; and his host increased much.

912. From Turin the French went unto Vercelli§ ; and they drew back, for the pope sought to make peace by the hand of the cardinal Lorena|| ; but they tarried, and did nothing. And the generals of the imperial host went after them, and encamped near Turin. They went not far off *from the city*, and the river was *between* ; and they remained there many days.

913. And when the emperor heard the report of Francis, the king, he journeyed also from Naples in the month Abib, and there gathered themselves unto him many nobles and honorable men¶ ; and they came unto the gates of Rome, and encamped

* מונטייאן.

† Gen. xxxiv. 30.

‡ לוריינה, Lorraine.

† דורה.

§ ורצילי.

¶ Num. xxii. 15.

there. And it happened on the fifth day of the month of April, that they entered the city, and the earth was rent at the voice of the battering-rams. And they came into the street of the city*, and the pope Paul sat upon his throne on the pillar of the temple of their God. And the pope came down to meet him, and the emperor bowed before him, and was content to kiss his foot. And Paul bowed himself also unto the ground, and embraced him. And both of them came into the cathedral, and worshipped their God. And they came out, and went to the castle, and bowed one before the other, and retired to the chamber. And the emperor remained there several days. And it came to pass, one day, that the emperor spake a word unto the pope and his cardinals, saying†, “Ye have seen that which I have done in Tunis, for I was envious at the foolish‡. And that the king has hindered me from still continuing in war against the enemies of our law, as it was in my heart. May the Lord judge between me and him this day§; and may the Lord give to every one according to his ways, and according to the fruit of his doings||. And now I will go and see what will become of his dreams¶,

* Esth. iv. 6; vi. 9. 11.

† Comp. Sleidanus, Sandoval, Robertson and Raumer, to the year 1536.

‡ Ps. lxxiii. 3.

§ Gen. xvi. 5.

|| Jer. xvii. 10; xxxii. 19.

¶ Gen. xxxvii. 20.

and let God do what seemeth good in his sight.” And Paul and his cardinals honored him, and blessed him; and he went out from them in peace.

914. And he went on his journeys to Sienna, and entered the city on the twenty-third day of the second month, which is the month of April. And the nobles of the city honored him much; but he stayed not many days there*, but departed thence and went to Florence, on the twenty-eighth day of the same month; and the duke and the inhabitants of the city honored him much; and the earth shook at the voice of the battering-rams and of the high-sounding trumpets. And he journeyed thence, and went to Lucca; and the principal *men* of the city went out to meet him, and brought him into the city with gladness 'on the eighth day of the month of May; and all the people were very glad.

915. And Henry, the king of England, divorced his consort, Catharine of Aragon, and took Anna Boleyn to himself to wife. And it came to pass, when they were at Greenwich†, in the month of May, joyful and with glad hearts‡, that a spirit of jealousy came upon him§, and he hated her. And he went away from her unto London, his metro-

* Gen. xxvi. 8.

† גרמאני.

‡ Esth. v. 9.

§ Num. v. 14.

polis, and commanded, and they put her brother and his friend into prison; and he sent to Greenwich also, saying, "Put the queen Anna in prison:" and they did so. And all the people trembled much. And it came to pass, after some days, that they brought her to London, and put her in the Tower, and set a watch over her. And it came to pass, one day, that they smote off their heads from them, so that all three died in one day; then was the king's wrath pacified*.

916. And when the chief of the king's host heard that the emperor was come, he rode on a horse, and went to speak unto the king; and he found him at Lyons, and communed with them there†. And the king departed thence and went unto Avignon, and sojourned there many days.

917. And the emperor journeyed from Lucca on the tenth day of the month of May, and went on his journeys to Asti, a city on the uttermost part of Piedmont, and abode there. And he gathered both a host and horsemen, Spaniards, Germans, and Italians, and his host increased much, and they went out into the field; and the French gathered themselves unto the fenced cities, for they could not stand before them‡, for they were a great multitude. And the men of the emperor besieged

* Esth. vii. 10. † Gen. xxiv. 8. ‡ Comp. Judges xi. 14.

Turin, and also the walls of Fossano* they battered many days. At Asti, the emperor and his nobles held council together, and they made a covenant against the king of France, to war against him by sea and by land, and his ships went out to the coast of Provence: now the time was the time of the first ripe grapes†.

918. And many of the men of Tunis were wroth against their king, and they sent to inform the Turks that they would bring them into the city. And the men came; and with them were about two thousand Arabians, able to draw the sword. And behold it happened when they came, that about four hundred Arabians dwelling in tents were spread abroad on the surface of the field‡ at the eventide§, with their wives and their children, and all their substance with them, dwelling carelessly||. And they shouted with a loud voice, and fell upon them suddenly, and the Arabians fled unto the mountain, and left the women, the children, and the tents as they were; and they became captives before the enemy, and their cry went up toward heaven. [קד] And it came to pass, in the

* פִּוֶּסְאֵן, Fossanum, a fortified town in Piedmont, on the river Stara, south of Turin.

† Num. xiii. 20.

‡ 1 Sam. xxx. 16.

§ Gen. xiv. 63.

|| Judges xviii. 7.

middle watch*, that they said one unto another, “ And whither shall we cause our shame to go†, and how shall we lift up our face before the eyes of the children of our people to-morrow. And now let not our hearts faint, let us choose death rather than life, and let us fall upon this camp. If God will keep us alive, we shall live ; and if He will let us die, we shall die‡, for the battle is God’s§.” And they all arose as one man||, and went unto the uttermost part of the camp, and behold, they were rejoicing, and dwelled carelessly. And they smote them and discomfited them¶, and defeated them with the edge of the sword, and took all their spoil from their hand. And the heads of those who died in that slaughter, they brought into the city, upon camels, with gladness. Then they builded at Tunis a tower, and they had their heads for stone**, and *turned* their faces outward for a token against the children of rebellion††, until this day. And the men who were among the conspirators, the king caused to die, and their houses he cast to the ground. And he sent unto the emperor one of his servants, when he was at Asti, and asked of him soldiers, for he feared for his life ; but he

* Jud. vii. 19. † 2 Sam. xiii. 13. ‡ 2 Kings vii. 4.

§ 1 Sam. xvii. 47. || Judges xx. 8. ¶ Num. xiv. 45.

** Gen. xi. 3. †† Num. xvii. 10 (25).

hearkened not unto his voice, because of the wars in Italy; and the servant returned unto his country.

919. And Francis, marquess of Saluzzi*, turned his heart again†, and held fast to the emperor. And the heart of the French melted, and became like water. And the French said, “ Let us make a captain‡, for this oppressor has sold us, so that our life will become a spoil. And they delivered Fossano unto the emperor, and they made a covenant with them. And they departed, but the best of the horses they left there; for so they had agreed between themselves.

921. And the emperor thought scorn to lay hands on Turin alone§, and he set his face toward the wilderness||, and passed to Provence with much people and a strong hand. And also in Turin he stationed some of the men of his hosts, and the marquess of Marignano the chief of his host; and the war was fierce in Piedmont in that year.

921. And the hosts of the emperor went into the borders of Provence, and warred against Antibes¶, and there fell of them about one hundred and fifty men slain to the ground; beside the

* שאלוצי.

† Num. xiv. 4.

|| Num. xxiv. 1.

† 1 Kings xviii. 37.

§ Esth. iii. 6.

¶ אנטיבו.

wounded, who were a great multitude. Also some of the men of the ships which joined them in their way on the sea, died in that slaughter, for the men of the city filled their hands* and cast stones upon them†; their eye had no compassion upon them. And it came to pass, after some days, that they delivered it up to the men of the emperor, for evil was determined against them‡, and their life was unto them a prey.

922. And some of the men of the host who were at Turin, went out unto a small city which was nigh unto them, on the thirteenth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month, and they found there two hundred Greeks who rode upon swift beasts§, so they took them suddenly as one man, and they drove them out naked from the city, and they were not ashamed||.

923. And King Francis made the Count Guido Rangon¶ chief captain over his host in Italy in those days. And the Count Galeotto Pico**, and Monseigneur D'Este†† commanded in Mirandola, in the name of the king, at that time. And the Count Juan Tomaso‡‡ the son of Francesco Pico,

* Exod. xxxii. 29.

† i. e. They fired upon them. Lam. iii. 53.

‡ Esth. vii. 7.

§ Esth. viii. 10, 14; Micah i. 13.

|| Gen. ii. 25.

¶ גוידו ראנגון.

** גאליאוטו פיקו.

†† דימיס.

‡‡ יואן טומאסו.

went in the name of the emperor unto the borders of Mirandola, and seven thousand five hundred Germans and five hundred Italians with him; and they burned up both the stacks and also the standing corn, with the vineyards and olives*, and they abode there a few days. And they journeyed thence and went to Turin, where the marquess of Marignano was encamped; and his camp increased much.

924. And Marquess Antonio di Cossano †went, by command of the viceroy, unto Saviliano‡, for they heard that the brazen battering-rams were there which they left at Fossano§, and one thousand five hundred men with him; and they warred against it, but could not prevail against it; and they saw, and behold there was a house full of spears and weapons of war, and they gave it up to burning, and fuel of fire||. And the marquess sent from Marignano two thousand men, and they set liers-in-wait for them¶, and they knew nothing of it; and it came to pass, when they returned unto Turin, that they fell suddenly upon them, and joined battle with them**. And the men of the marquess of Marignano fell before

* Judges xv. 5.

† שאביליאן.

|| Is. ix. 5 (4).

** Gen. xiv. 8.

† קושאן.

§ פושאן.

¶ Judges ix. 25

the men of the king slain to the ground ; and also Marco, the chief of the host fell down destroyed* in that slaughter. And the men of the king took five banners on that day ; and they returned to Turin, but not with gladness, for the chief captain of their host had fallen to the ground.

925. And the emperor went on his journeys unto Aix†, a city, and the mother of Provence‡, and the soul of the people was much discouraged because of the way§ ; and there died of his men by thousands of hunger and of thirst, and of sicknesses and want of every thing|| : the slain of the sword were few. And there was not one city too strong for *the emperor*¶, for his fear fell upon them, and they made the cities void, and fled before the *imperialists* came ; there was nothing left except the desolate cities, for so it was commanded them by desire of the king.

926. And King Francis went out to meet him with much people and with a strong hand. And they pitched their tents on the other side of the river Rhone, and they abode in Avignon and its borders about a month of days.

927. And the first-born son of the king became sick, for one of his servants had given him to

* Judges v. 27 ; 2 Sam. xx. 19.

† Metropolis of Provence.

|| Deut. xxviii. 48.

† שׁוֹנִין.

§ Num. xxi. 4.

¶ Deut. ii. 36.

drink of the cup of fury*. And he died, and was gathered unto his people; and his father wept for him†, and the grief became very great, and his soul refused to be comforted‡. And his second brother§ reigned in the dauphinate in his stead. And the son of Belial, whose heart had filled him to do so||, they brought down into the grave in blood.

928. Antonio Leyva also, the chief of the imperial host closed his day when they were at Aix; and the emperor grieved much. For as the words of a man of God, was his counsel in war in those days.

929. And the Count di Arco¶, and the Count di Lincasto, were wroth against their king, the king of England; and they gathered soldiers and horsemen and marched against him. And the king also went out into the field with a strong hand. And they joined in battle in the month of August, which is the sixth month. And the men of the king were defeated, and fell slain to the ground. And the king fled away on his feet**,

* Is. xli. 19. † Gen. xxxvii. 35. ‡ Jer. xxxi. 15.

§ i. e. Henry, the second son of the king. || Est. vii. 5.

¶ לִינקאַשטו די אַרקו ווהקונטי די. These names are manifestly corrupted, and perhaps intended for York and Lancaster.

** Judges iv. 17.

and returned to London, his metropolis, with shame.

930. And the men of the emperor besieged Marseilles whilst he was at Aix, and they spent their days in vain*. In those days came to Mirandola, the Count Guido Rangon, and one of the nobles of France, and they found there the Lord Canigno† Gonzaga, and Cesare Fragoso. And they gathered together soldiers in multitude to come to help the king; and they paid them their hire‡: and the men removed thence, and came unto the gates of Genoa, as swift as the eagle would fly§; and with them were about ten thousand men, beside the horsemen. And they warred against it on the twenty-ninth day of the month of August, in the night of the fifth day||, and they could not prevail against it, and their hope was in vain¶, for they shut its gates, and fortified its walls; and in the midst of it were about three thousand German and Italian footmen, and they delivered it from the hand of *the French* at that time.

931. And the hosts of the emperor pursued

* Isa. xlix. 4. Comp. Jer. xx. 18. † קאניני.

‡ Jonah i. 3. § Deut. xxviii. 49; Jer. xlviii. 40; xlix. 22.

|| i. e. Wednesday night, since the Jews commence their day at sunset.

¶ Job xli. 9 (1).

them in order to help Genoa, but their hearts melted away; [קה] and they made a head*, and they retired from it, and drew back. And they went on their journeys to Turin, and passed the river Tanaro† on the fourth of the month of September; and the hand of the men of the king waxed strong in Piedmont in those days. And it came to pass on the morrow, that they went unto Carignano‡, and the Count Guido commanded, and they warred against it, and cast banks against it§. And they saw that there was no power in their hand to deliver it, so they went out to them for peace, and they made a covenant with them and went their way. And they found there about three thousand measures of meal, and sent it unto Turin; and all the people of the land were glad, for they were hungry. And they journeyed thence and went unto Carmagnola|| and took it, and abode therein.

932. And the Count Guido gave unto the men of the host their hire, and went unto Finarola¶ And he sent some of his men unto Chieri**, and they came into the city in peace, for the fear of

* i. e. They chose a commander.

† טאנארו.

‡ קארניאן.

§ 2 Kings xix. 32; Is. xxxvii. 33; 2 Sam. vii. 15.

|| קראמיניולה. In Latin, *Carmaniola*, a town in Piedmont.

¶ פינארולה.

** קיר. Cherium, Quiers, a town in Piedmont.

him fell upon them. And he sent the Lord Cesare Fragoso unto Raconis*, and one thousand footmen and two hundred horsemen with him. And in the midst of it were six banners of Italians at that time. And they warred against it in the morning watch†, and took it with a strong hand, and many fell by the edge of the sword; and the chief captains of the host were taken alive, and he sent also unto Saviliano and took it, and put a garrison in the midst thereof, and the men of the emperor went not out against them, for they were but few in number; and they gathered themselves together into the fenced cities, and were quiet there‡.

933. Then went the servants of the king with twelve of his ships unto Algiers, and they joined themselves unto six ships of Barbarossa, for there was peace between them. And they went unto Ivica§, the island of salt, which belonged to the emperor, and they plundered the open cities, and they burned them with fire, and the *chief* city was delivered from their hand, for it was fortified. And they journeyed thence and went unto Majorca, and burned there also a small city; and all their goods and their substance they plundered, and there was none to deliver them. The men went also to the coast of Barcelona, and burned there a small city, and took the spoil thereof.

* ראקוניס.

† Ez. xiv. 24.

‡ Jer. viii. 14.

And two ships of Spain they took in their destruction ; and the one was given to the Turks, for they had like portions to eat*.

934. And the emperor and his nobles returned from Provence without success, for the stars of his heavens drew back. And it came to pass, as they were journeying†, behold, there was a high tower on the open way‡, and in the midst thereof were about twelve men of the people of the land who mocked the emperor and his men, and threw stones upon them. And the wrath of the emperor was kindled, so he commanded, and they encompassed them with the battering-rams and took them, and hung them on a tree, for a token against the children of rebellion§.

935. And the emperor came to Genoa on the eleventh day of the month of October two hundred and ninety-seven, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-six, and abode there about a month of days||. And the residue of his hosts which had escaped, and remained from the famine and the thirst, and the evil diseases which the Lord had sent upon them, passed the mountains, and went the road of Arbinga¶ on the borders of Piedmont,

* Deut. xviii. 8.

† Is. xxviii. 19.

‡ Gen. xxxviii. 14.

§ Num. xvii. 10.

|| Gen. xxix. 14.

¶ ארבינגה, probably Albenga, Albienga, Albigaunum.

unto the places where the hosts of the king were encamped. And the war was strong between them at that time. When the emperor abode at Genoa, his hosts went against Chieri, and battered its walls; and part of it they cast to the ground, and their voice was heard afar off. But their heart did not fill them to go to war against the city*; so they returned back with shame.

936. And the pope sent the cardinal Trivulcio† into France, to make peace between them; but the king did not hearken unto his voice, for his soul was embittered‡ against the emperor, and he set not his heart unto his words§; and *Trivulcio* returned to his master in the ninth month.

937. And the war was strong in Picardy by command of the emperor. And the king chose every strong man and every son of valor, and sent them thither to help. And he also hastened to go, for the men of Flanders had set themselves in array in his borders||; and he helped *his people*.

938. And for all this, his anger was not turned away, but his hand was still stretched out¶ in Italy, and he sent both chariots and horsemen, who abode in Turin and its borders until the month Abib.

941. And there was peace between King

* i. e. They had not courage enough to assault it.

† טריאולצ'יאו. ‡ 1 Sam. xxx. 6. § Exod. vii. 23.

|| Is. xxii. 7. ¶ Is. v. 25; ix. 12, 17, 21; x. 4.

Francis and between Solyman the Turk ; and both made a covenant and sent presents to each other.

939. And the emperor went down to the sea in ships on the fifteenth day of the month of November, on the fourth day*, and went unto his country : and three of the large ships sank as lead† ; and there died much people upon them, beside the horses and the mules which the emperor and his nobles had upon them.

940. And the emperor gave Montferrat unto the duke of Mantua, for his wife Margaret had the right of the inheritance‡. And he journeyed from Genoa by command of the emperor, on the seventeenth day of the ninth month, which is the sixth day§, to go unto Casale, for this is the capital of Montferrat ; and he went on his journeys unto San Salvator||, and he lodged there in that night¶. And he sent men before him to direct him to Casale** ; and they encamped there. And Giovanni Guilielmo Viandro††, the man of Belial, went out and called Monseigneur de Bori‡‡, the chief captain of the king's host, and brought him unto Casale in the darkness of the night, on the twenty-second of the same month ; and all the city was moved concerning them, and they gave up the

* i. e. Wednesday. † Exod. xv. 10. ‡ Jer. xxxii. 8.

§ Friday. || שאן סאלבאטור. ¶ Comp. Gen. xxviii. 11.

** Gen. xlv. 28. †† ביאנדרו. ‡‡ בורי.

Jews to be plundered, and the men of the duke were taken captive. In a moment their tents were spoiled*.

941. And the Marquess del Guasto, the chief captain of the emperor's host heard of it, and his wrath was much kindled; and he stood in Asti at that time. And he gathered his host, and hastened to march to Casale, and came into the fortress. And when the French heard it, they built forts against it round about†, and fortified themselves there. And the Spaniards went out from the fortress, and warred against them in the midst of the city, and the French fell before them by the edge of the sword; and the city of Casale was perplexed‡, and God delivered it into their hand; and they gave it up to be plundered, and the men and the women were taken captives. Their *things* were searched out, their hidden *things* were sought up§, and things which ought not to be done||, they did in the midst thereof; neither was there any that could deliver out of their hand¶ on the day of the Lord's anger**. The Jews also were plundered a second time, and some of them went into captivity†† and

* Jer. iv. 20.

† 2 Kings xxv; 1 Jer. lii. 4.

‡ Esther iii. 15.

§ Obad. 6.

|| Gen. xxxiv. 7; 2 Sam. xiii. 12.

¶ Deut. xxxii. 39.

** Lam. ii. 22.

†† Lam. i. 5.

gave ransom for their souls*; what was left by the French, the Spaniards devoured†. Behold, O Lord, and consider, to whom hast thou done this! ‡ And Monseigneur de Bori§ fled before them; and they pursued after him, and took him alive. And the rest went their way; they looked not behind them||, lest some evil should take them¶. And the duke came into the city, and was their shepherd**, as a provocation of their anger and their fury until this day††.

942. And Lorenzo dei Medici was zealous for his land‡‡, and devised every day mischief against Alessandro the duke§§, who hated him not|||, neither sought his harm¶¶. And they went both of them together*† daily; and they solaced themselves with loves††; and the duke confided in him and loved him much. In those days, the soul of the duke longed for one of the women of the city‡§, and they went both of them together in the darkness of the night, and walked in the streets of Florence all that night; and Lorenzo dei Medici

* Exod. xxi. 30.

† Joel i. 4.

‡ Lam. ii. 20.

§ בורי.

|| Gen. xix. 17, 21.

¶ Gen. xix. 19.

** Ezek. xxxiv. 23.

†† Jer. xxxii. 31: i. e. The Florentines were displeased with his government.

‡‡ Comp. Joel ii. 18. §§ 1 Sam. xxxiii. 9.

||| Deut. iv. 42. ¶¶ Num. xxxv. 23; Deut. xix. 4.

*† Gen. xxii. 8. ‡† Prov. vii. 18. ‡§ Comp. Gen. xxxiv. 8.

brought him to his house, and Alessandro removed to the chamber securely, and stripped off his coat of mail*, and lay down on the bed. And Lorenzo sent out his servant, and entered into the chamber† and sat down on the bed‡. And the duke said, [קו] “ Art thou my very brother Lorenzo ?” and he said, “ I am§;” and drew nigh thither, and removed the covering of the bed and pierced him with a sword. And the bitter duke|| laid hold on the finger of Lorenzo between his teeth, but fainted and died¶. And Lorenzo hid him**, and went out into the street and shut the door after him††, and went and proclaimed in the gates of the nobles of the city, saying, “ I have taken off the yoke of Alessandro from you;” but they did not hearken unto him, for a deep sleep had fallen upon them‡‡. And when he saw that there was no man to help§§, he feared for his life; and mounted a horse, and went out by the way of the city-gate, and went his way unto Venice; for the duke had commanded him who was over his house||| before he died¶¶, saying, “ According to all that Lorenzo will say unto you, ye shall do*†,

* 1 Sam. xxxi. 9.

† Gen. xxvii. 24.

‡ Gen. xl. iii. 30.

§ Gen. xlviii. 2.

|| Hab. i. 6.

¶ Jud. iii. 21.

** Exod. ii. 12.

†† Gen. xix. 6.

‡‡ Gen. xv. 12; 1 Sam. xxvi. 12.

§§ Ex. ii. 12; Is. lxiii. 3-5..

||| i. c. His steward.

¶¶ Gen. l. 16.

*† Gen. xli. 53.

for he is my brother." And it came to pass, when the men of the duke saw that he was long in coming*, they went into the palace, to see whether he was returned unto his house by another way; and when they found him not, their courage failed them, and they returned to the house of Lorenzo in haste, and called, but there was none to answer†. And they brake its doors down to the ground, and came within; and behold there was no man nor human voice. And they went into the chamber, and found the duke on the bed fallen down dead‡. And they brought him out, and all the city was moved§.

943. And Lorenzo dei Medici spake with Filippo Strozzi at Venice, concerning the duke whom he had killed; and Filippo was glad, and honored him much. And Filippo hastened and armed his trained servants||, and went to Bologna, and gathered about two thousand men, besides the men who were driven away from Florence. And his son Roberto became head over them. And also the cardinals of Florence journeyed from Rome, and gathered soldiers and came to Cortona¶, for there was Filippo; and they encamped there. And the men of Florence

* Exod. xxxii. 1; Jud. v. 28.

† Is. i. 2.

‡ Jud. iii. 25. § Ruth i. 19. || Gen. xiv. 14. ¶ קורטונה.

feared, and wrote unto the cardinal, saying, “ All that ye shall tell us we will do ; only let not these bitter-hearted men come into the city, lest they shed innocent blood in the midst thereof.” And the thing was pleasing in their sight; and they said unto Roberto Strozzi, and to such as joined themselves unto him*. “ Abide ye here† until we come into the city.” And they did so; and the cardinals went into the city, and honored them much, and spake unto them with subtlety‡. And Alessandro Vitelloſ, the chief captain of the host of the deceased duke, came into the city; and some of his friends gathered themselves together, and chose Cosimo dei Medici to be their shepherd. And to the cardinals they spake, saying, “ According to all that is pleasing in your sight we will do; only let not these bitter-hearted men come into the city: why should they shed innocent blood?”

944. And it came to pass, after other two days||, on the eighth day of the month of January in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-seven, that Andrea Doria returned from Spain, and about two thousand Spaniards with him.

* Esther ix. 27.

† Gen. xxii. 5.

‡ Comp. Gen. xxxiv. 13; Jos. ix. 4.

וויטילו §

|| Comp. Gen. vii. 4.

And when he heard what was done at Florence*, he sent them thither to watch the city in the name of the emperor. And they made Cosimo dei Medici, the son of Joanino†, duke over them; and the land had rest‡. And when the cardinals saw that the Florentines had deceived them§, they returned to Rome with shame. And Filippo Strozzi, and his son, and those bitter-hearted men who were with them, went hither and thither as fugitives and vagabonds||.

945. And Alessandro Vitello went unto the fort, and spake unto the commander thereof with subtlety, saying, “ In the name of Cosimo, the duke, and *in the name of* the emperor, I am sent hither.” So he took it from his hand on that day, but gave it not unto the duke.

946. And Count Guido Rangon¶, the chief captain of the king’s host, which was in Piedmont, sent Antonio Torisano** against the fortress of Caraio††, and about two thousand men with him. And the Marquess del Guasto sent also the Marquess Saluzzi and his men, and they went both of them into the city. And they joined battle there; and also the men of the fort fought with them. And the battle was against the French

* Esther iv. 1.

† יואנין.

‡ Jud. iii. 30.

§ Jer ix. 5 (4).

|| Comp. Gen. iv. 14.

¶ גוידו ראנגון.

** טוריסאנו.

†† קאריו.

before and behind them*. And the men of Antonio Torisano fell slain to the ground, for they fought against them from within and from without, and they turned their back†, for the Lord did drive them‡.

947. And Antonio Torisano again gathered soldiers together, and returned unto Caraio. And in the midst thereof were at that time about one hundred Spaniards, men of war. And his men drew nigh unto the city and took it, and slew all the men of war with the edge of the sword. Antonio took away his reproach§.

948. And the fortress of Carmagnola belonged unto the French at that time. And there went against it Francesco, the marquess of Saluzzi, and Cesare di Napoli, and they besieged it several days. And they drew nigh to the fortress to set up the brazen battering-rams; and the shooters shot|| and brought down the Marquess Saluzzi into the grave in blood. And it grieved the besiegers much; and they set up the battering-rams and battered its walls, until they came down¶; and they warred against it and took it, and hanged the chief captain of the host who was in

* Comp. 2 Sam. x. 9; and 2 Chr. xiii. 14.

† 2 Chron. xxix. 6.

‡ Jer. xlvi. 15.

§ Gen. xxx. 23; i. e. Antonio regained his reputation for valor.

|| 2 Sam. xi. 24.

¶ Deut. xxviii. 52.

the midst thereof, on the gallows* ; and the rest of the men were sent into the ships as slaves on the sea.

949. And the Count Guido Rangon, sent against Bricherasco† about one thousand five hundred men, and two of the battering-rams. And they went thither, and proclaimed peace unto them, and made a covenant with them, and came into the city in the month Abib. The count sent Guido Rangon also against Barges‡, and they took it and put a garrison in the midst of it.

950. And the war was strong also in the borders of Flanders, and of Picardy, in those days. And the king sent thither his hosts, and Monseigneur St. Pol was head over them. And they took Contis§ and Iliris||, and put a garrison in the midst of them ; and the Lord gave Hesdin¶ also into the hand of the king in the month of April, and it was strongly fortified ; and they made a covenant with them. And the king had there one thousand horsemen and seven thousand Germans, and eight thousand men of other tongues of the nations** ; all these were men of war††.

951. And the men of the emperor took after-

* Esther viii. 7. † בריקראשקו, near Pinerolo.

‡ בארניס (?) Barge. § קונטיס (?) Condé.

|| איליריס (?) Lillers.

¶ הידין. *Hesdinum*, near the modern *Hesdin*.

** Zech. viii. 23 ; Is. xxviii. 11 ; lxvi. 18 ; 1 Cor. xiv. 21.

†† 1 Chr. xii. 38.

wards the city of St. Pol from his hand, which is on the borders. And the war ceased, for they made peace between themselves*.

952. And Solyman gathered together those that go down to the sea in ships, and men of war in multitudes, and he was content to pass unto Italy in those days; and the dread of him fell upon all nations, and the heart of the men of Genoa melted away, and they fortified its walls round about. The men of Venice also chose unto themselves soldiers, and they sent them in galleys to Corfu, and Gerolamo di Pesaro was head over them. And unto Cattaro† they sent soldiers and galleys, and chose Giovanni Vittore‡, and made him captain over them.

953. And Solyman sent his ships to Avlona§, and they passed on before the ships of Venice, and proclaimed peace unto them, and went their way. And he came there also in his journeys, with much people and with a mighty hand, and sent his men into the land of Chimera||, and joined battle there, and many of his men fell there slain to the ground; for the men of Chimera are Albanian dwellers on mountains, warlike men, and their land is full of caves; so *the Turks* could not

* Josh. x. 1, 4.

† קאטרו.

‡ ויטורי.

§ דיילונה.

|| צימירה, sometimes written Khimera.

prevail against them, and returned unto Avlona with shame.

954. And Andrea Doria made banners and garments like unto those of the Turks, and of the French, to steal the hearts* of those who should see him; and he went to Messina in the fourth month two hundred and ninety-seven; and he journeyed from Messina with the ships of the pope, and of Malta, on the seventh of the month of July, and on the eleventh of the same, the ships of the Turk came unto Avlona, and behold they were about three hundred and fifty, and went their way; and he pursued them in the night and passed over unto Cephalonia, and on the fourteenth day found ten ships of those that were feeble behind them†, of the fifth month, and in them was corn and bread, and garments, and spices, and about three hundred Arabians. And the Turks were but few in number, and they warred not against him, for the fear of him fell upon them; and he took them, and brought them unto his ships; and their ships he burned with fire near Corfu, and went his way. And he turned and passed over, and behold, there were fifty galleys of the Turks; and they did not say anything unto him, for they knew not this matter, nor was it told unto them.

* Comp. 2 Sam. xv. 6.

† Deut. xxv. 18.

955. Solyman sent also soldiers to Hungary; and the chief captain of the host of Ferdinand came out to meet them with a strong hand, and the Turks drew back; and Katzianer*, the chief of the host, pursued them about forty miles, and passed over the river with the battering-rams; and the Turks said, “This is the time to laugh†, for God has given them into our hands.” And they made head, and returned back, and the uncircumcised fled from before them and left the battering-rams, and turned their neck and not their face; they drank the dregs of the cup of the fury of the Lord‡, for the time of their visitation was come§; and they fell before their enemies by the sword.

956. And Francis, the king of France, gathered again soldiers, and sent them to Italy into the borders of Asti in the fifth month; and the Marquess del Guasto went out against them; and they remained on their post in the camp several days, so that the one came not near the other in those days||.

957. And a part of the Spaniards murmured when they were at Poirin¶, against the Marquess del Guasto, saying, “What shall we eat?*** Money was not given unto thy servants††, and we have

* קאציאנער.

† Comp. Eccl. jii. 4.

‡ Is. li. 21.

§ Hos. ix. 7.

|| Exod. xiv. 20.

¶ פוירין.

** Lev. xxv. 20.

†† Comp. Exod. v. 16.

nothing at all but our bodies* ; it was well with them who were slain by the sword† ; why should we die in thy presence of hunger?‡” And they revolted against him, and set a head over themselves, and went out from the camp. And behold, they were about two thousand men, all valiant men§ ; and they went unto Valenza||, and abode there about a month of days. And he sent to speak kindly unto them, rising up early and sending¶. And he gave them their hire** ; and they returned into the camp on the fifth day of the month of August ; and the French drew back.

958. And Cesare di Napoli, the chief captain of the emperor's host, went to Turin in the darkness of the night in those days, when deep sleep falleth on men†† ; he went to Turin, and about one thousand five hundred men with him. And they climbed up the outer wall, like robbers by night‡‡, and slew the watchmen ; but into the city they came not, for their voice was heard. And the watchmen of the city arose, and discharged guns upon them, and drave them away§§, and they returned back with shame.

* Gen. xlvii. 18 ; Num. xi. 6.

† Gen. xlvii. 15, 19.

|| וואלינצה.

** Jonah i. 3.

‡‡ Obad. 5.

† Lam. iv. 9.

§ Comp. Num. xiii. 3.

¶ Jer. xxv. 4.

†† Job. iv. 13.

§§ Exod. ii. 17.

959. And there came fifteen galleys bearing* Turks from the east country, in the same month, which is the fifth month. And it was told unto Andrea Doria, and he pursued them in the night with thirty-eight galleys, and they saw him not, for they had removed the lights. And he overtook them in the seas of Corfu. And he commanded his men to remain in their place until their spirit should come again unto them†; for they fainted. And they arose from thence, and behold the Turks came against them, and Andrea Doria knew them; but they knew not him‡, for they walked in darkness§. And it came to pass, at the end of the third watch, that they sounded the trumpets, and gave the signal for war. And they called with a loud voice, and put fire to the rams; and their smoke went up unto heaven. And the Turks said, “Let us die with them||; and the Lord will do what is good in his sight¶, for the battle is the Lord’s**,” and they joined battle there; and most of them fell by the edge of the sword, for they were a people that jeopardied their life unto death††. Also of the uncircumcised, there fell a great multitude by the edge of the sword in that slaughter. And Andrea Doria took the best of the ships, and

* Gen. xxxvii. 25.

† 1 Sam. xx. 12.

‡ Gen. xlii. 8.

§ Ecces. ii. 14.

|| Judges xvi. 30.

¶ 2 Sam. x. 12; 1 Ch. xix. 13.

** 1 Sam. xvii. 47; 1 Chron. v, 22.

†† Jud. v. 18.

those which were not meet for *any* work* he cast into the bottom as a stone†. And he turned aside and passed over, and returned unto Messina to heal the wounded, for they were many in that war.

960. In those days when the Marquess del Guasto, the chief captain of the emperor's host, was at Asti, the French went unto Bosco‡, and besieged it, and in the midst thereof were about fifty men, men of war. And they warred against it, but they could not prevail against it, and many fell to the ground, and they returned back with shame. And when the chief of the king's host heard it, he turned himself, and passed over, and went unto Alba§, a city in the uttermost part of Montferrat; and he took it, and put a garrison in the midst thereof.

961. And Filippo Strozzi, and his men, whom they had expelled from Florence, who were with him, gathered themselves in Mirandola, about three thousand men, because they longed for their country; and at Bologna there gathered themselves unto them about one thousand men, all of them fit to draw the sword. And the men of Mirandola lingered to go, for the Lord rained upon

* Ezek. xv. 4.

† Exod. xv. 5.

‡ בושקה, a small town of Piedmont.

§ אלבה.

them* all that day and all that night†; the way had shut them in‡. And Filippo hastened to go with them who were found with him at Bologna before they came, for he longed after his house§. And about two hundred men of them went up unto Montemurlo||, unto the field of the possession of Bartolomeo Valori¶, one of the captains who were with him; for Bartolomeo was great in the sight of the men of the country. And there came many of the men of Florence to search for him among those who were present in the field of their possession, and also some of the people of that land joined themselves to them** ; and the inhabitants of Florence feared much. And when the Duke Cosimo heard that they were but few in number, he said, “ Let us go against them, and we shall see what will become of their dreams††.” And he commanded, and Alessandro Vitello went out, and the horses which followed him‡‡ against them, and four thousand Spaniards and Italians with him. And when Peter, the son of Filippo Strozzi heard it, he also came against Montemurlo, and eight hundred footmen and forty horsemen with him; and they encamped there. And when

* Gen. xix. 24.

† Num. xi. 32.

‡ Ex. xiv. 3.

§ Gen. xxxi. 30.

|| מונטי מירלו.

¶ וואלורי.

** Esther ix. 27.

†† Gen. xxxvii. 20.

‡‡ Exod. xi. 8.

Alessandro Vitello drew nigh*, he fell upon them suddenly; but he was smitten before the men of Strozzi, and returned back. And it came to pass, on the morrow, which was the first day of the month of August, that Alessandro Vitello returned, and divided the people into three bands†. And he fell upon them suddenly, and the men of Strozzi were smitten before them, and they fled in seven ways‡, every one turned to his own way§, for the Lord did drive|| them. And many were gathered unto Montemurlo; and they fortified themselves in the fort, for Montemurlo is an open city; and they trembled much. And Alessandro approached the fort, and burned its gates with fire; and he took it with a mighty hand; and when Filippo Strozzi saw that evil was determined against him, and that they who came to help him went off from him, that he surrendered into the hand of Alessandro Vitello, who swore unto him to save his life from destruction; [קח] and he brought him into Florence, and also the rest of the men who were there with him. And it came to pass, that suddenly the men came, who were gathered at Mirandola, and Roberto,

* Exod. xiv 10.

† Gen. xxxii. 7.

‡ Deut. xxviii. 25.

§ Is. liii. 6.

|| Jer. xlv. 15.

the son of Filippo Strozzi, at their head ; and he went up the mountain. And when they heard that Filippo and his men were taken, and that they were sent into the city, they returned back, and went their way.

962. And it came to pass, after some days, that the Duke Cosimo took the watchman at the fort of the gate of judgment, as he found a sin worthy of death* in him ; and they brought him down to the grave in blood. And they put the prisoners into the prison-house, and chastised them, and they confessed their iniquities† ; and they brought down Bartolomeo Valori and his son, and the son of his uncle, and eleven men, and the men who followed them, into the grave in blood, on the twenty-first day of the month of August ; and the wrath of the duke was pacified‡.

963. And Filippo was left in the hand of Alessandro in the fortress ; and he accepted his person, and sware unto him to deliver him, when he should give the ransom for his life§. And Filippo gave presents unto him daily in those days. And there was born a son unto Alessandro, when Filippo was bound in the fort, and Filippo became his confederate on the day of the gladness

* Deut. xxi. 22.

† Lev. xxvi. 40.

‡ Esther vii. 10.

§ Exod. xxi. 36.

of his heart*. And eleven thousand ducats gave Filippo unto him as a ransom for his life.

964. And it came to pass, after some days, that Alessandro delivered the fortress into the hand of the emperor; and it grieved the duke Cosimo, much. And Filippo was left there, and Alessandro remembered his covenant; and the emperor gave unto Alessandro, in the kingdom of Naples, cities to dwell in. And the children of Filippo sought to bring him out of the hands of the emperor, but they could not, for they wrote daily against him accusations from Florence, unto the emperor. And when Filippo saw that he had been many days in the prison-house, he said, “It is better for me to die than to live†.” And it came to pass, one day, that he sent out his two lads, and took the knife‡ and thrust it into his own throat, and died.

965. And Monseigneur de Dumeris§, the chief captain of the king's host, sent on the twentieth day of the month of August, Cesare Fragoso, against Cherasco||, and took it; and in the midst thereof were about fifty men of war. And the

* Cant. iii. 11.

† Jonah iv. 8.

‡ Gen. xxii. 10.

§ דימירש.

|| קיאשקו, a town and fortress in Piedmont.

chief captain of the host journeyed from Alba and went thither; and he turned and passed over, and went unto Bosco, and encamped against it; and they cast up banks against it. And they cast its walls down to the ground, and arrayed a battle against it. They were yet fighting, and behold, there came a man, and spake unto the chief of the host, saying, "Stand fast and prepare thee*, for twelve thousand Germans have reached the camp of the emperor, and his camp is increased much; and behold, they journey against thee." And the man trembled, and went off from the city and went unto Pinerolo†, and abode there.

966. And it came to pass, when the Germans reached the camp of the marquess, as he was at Asti‡, that his heart was much lifted up. And he journeyed thence, and went unto Chieri§, and encamped against it; and he cast up a bank against it on the first day of the week, on the twenty-fifth day of the month of August, and its walls fell down to the ground. And they warred against it, and the city was broken up||, and every one that was found *therein* was pierced with the sword, and the women were lain with; and there died that

* Jer. xlv. 14.

† אשׁי.

‡ פינארול.

§ קיר. See p. 282.

|| Jer. lii. 7.

day much people. And many went down by the way of the walls, and the Lord gave them into the hand of those cruel Germans; and their eye had no compassion upon men or women on the day of the Lord's anger*. And they journeyed thence; and the marquess and his men went against Cherasco; and in the midst thereof were about two thousand men; and they cast up a bank against it; and there fell of the men of the emperor multitudes slain to the ground in that battle. And it came to pass, after some days, that the men of King Francis delivered it into their hand, and made a covenant with them, and returned into their own country. And the *imperialists* went also unto Alba, and the *garrison* did as they had done at Cherasco, and delivered it into their hands, and made a covenant with them; so they went their way. And the *marquess* turned his face towards Turin and Pinerolo; and they took the tower which was on the other side of the river Po. And the men who were in the midst thereof, they sent bound in fetters† unto the sea; and Turin was straitly shut up, none went out, and none came in. Against Montcalier‡ also, the Spaniards went, by command of the Marquess del Guasto, on the

* Lam. ii. 22.

† Job. xxxvi. 8.

‡ מונקאליר.

second day of the month of September; and they battered its walls, and took it by force, and gave up the city to be plundered, and took much spoil*; thus there was war in Piedmont many days.

967. And the wrath of Solyman was kindled, because of that which Andrea Doria did. And Solyman sent Barbarossa after him with eight galleys, but they found him not†. And Barbarossa returned from chasing after him, and went unto the land of Otranto, and brought out on shore, about eight thousand Turks riding on swift horses, and footmen in multitudes; and the heart of the inhabitants of that country melted, and became like water. And a mixed multitude went up also with them‡ from the men of those cities, which the land spewed out§; and they went unto Castro, and besieged it, and cast up banks against it. And the horsemen went to run to and fro in the land, and slew many with the edge of the sword, and took much spoil. And the men of Castro went out against them and made a covenant with them. And the Turks came into the city, but remembered not their covenant, and broke what went forth from their lips||; and gave it up to be plundered at that time. And the Pope Paul was content to

* 2 Chron. xxv. 13.

† 1 Sam. xvii. 53.

‡ Exod. xii. 38.

§ Levit. xviii. 28.

|| Comp. Ps. xxxix. 34; Deut. xxiii. 23.

make peace with the uncircumcised at that time, fearing lest the Turks should come unto Rome; and he called unto his son Pietro Luigi*, and made him chief captain of his host. For this pope had children by his wife, who died before he was made priest. And Pietro Luigi came into the city with a mighty hand. And they fortified the city round about, for the fear of Barbarossa fell upon them. The viceroy of the emperor also, who was at Naples, hired soldiers, and put a garrison into the midst of his *city*.

968. And Barbarossa returned unto Avlona†, and made the savor of the men of Venice to be abhorred‡; and brought their evil report unto Solyman§, whose wrath was kindled against them. And he put it into his heart to make war against Corfu, and brought over his hosts which were in the land of Otranto; and they came unto him, and when he heard what they had done in Castro, which was not according to the law of the covenant||, his wrath was much kindled against them. And he sent the captives away free; but the men who had violated the covenant he brought down to the grave in blood.

969. And Solyman, and all the people who

* פִּדְרוֹ לֹאֲזִי.

† הַיִּלֹּנָה.

‡ Exod. v. 21.

§ Gen. xxxvii. 2.

|| Comp. Esth. iv. 16.

were with him, went and passed over the river Viosa*; and he went unto Bastia, which is over against Corfu, with only the sea between; and he pitched his tent there; and also Barbarossa came by the way of the sea unto Corfu, on the twenty-seventh day of the month of August; and they went on shore and burned the houses and destroyed the best part thereof. And the rest of the ships came; and the houses which were in Sorpha and Potamo† they burned with fire, and their smoke went up toward heaven.

970. And Solyman passed over his army unto Corfu with about twenty-five thousand men in ships; and they encamped there. And Solyman *himself* passed not over thither, but sent Ayas Pasha‡, his vezir, day by day; [קט] and they besieged Corfu round about. And they shot upon them great stones, and destroyed much people. And in the midst of the city were two nobles of Venice, and six captains of the host; and they stood on their ward, and filled their hand in those days.

971. And when the Turks saw that they had no power in their hand to take it, they pulled down their tents on the fourteenth day of the seventh

* ואיוסה. † שירפה ופוטאמו. Sorfa is perhaps S. Onofrio.

‡ איאש. Comp. v. Hanmer's Gesch. d. Osmanischen Reiches III. 186—188.

month, and went away from it and passed over to the coast of Bastia, and returned unto their own country. And Solyman went unto Constantinople, the city of his kingdom, and abode there many days; and the ships also went their way.

972. And Gerolamo di Pesaro, the chief captain of the Venetian host, fled from the face of Barbarossa, before he came and spake with Juan Vittore*, the chief captain of the host in Mortara†, and they assembled there. And Gerolamo went to war against Scardona‡, which is about ten miles from the sea; and they besieged it, and cast up banks against it from morning until noon; and they took it with a strong hand. And in the midst thereof was an Ethiopian, a mighty man of valor, who could shoot with a gun at a hair's breadth, and not miss§; and he did great things on that day. And many they slew with the edge of the sword when they came into the city; and they slew the Ethiopian, beside the rest of them that were slain; and the cry of the city went up toward heaven||, and there was none to deliver; and they gave it to be plundered: and Gerolamo commanded, and they cast down its houses to the ground, and it became a heap for ever until this day¶. And Juan Vittore

* ויטורי.

† סקארדונה.

|| Num. xxxi. 8.

† מורטארה.

§ Jud. xx. 16.

¶ Josh. xxviii. 28.

went unto Zara*, and found there Gabriel, the chief captain of the host, and they made an appointment there†; and he sent three of the captains of the marines with Gabriel. And they went to war against Abruzzo‡ on the twenty-ninth day of the seventh month. And they besieged it, and cast up banks against it; and they burned the suburbs of the city and its houses round about. And many of the uncircumcised fell slain to the ground; and they went off from it with shame, for the famine was sore. And it came to pass, when they returned unto Zara, that the Turks went out against them in the way, and discomfited them with the edge of the sword; and they that remained were taken alive: and Gabriel fled away on his feet§, and he escaped with the few men who were with him. And the wrath of Gerolamo di Pesaro was kindled against him; and they took him at Zara, and he beheaded him||, and brought him down to the grave in blood. And of the three generals of the host who went with him, no man knoweth of their sepulchre until this day¶.

973. Then the emperor, and the pope, and the men of Venice, heartily agreed to make war against Solyman. And they chose Francesco Maria, the

* זארה.

† Job. ii. 11.

‡ אברוצו.

§ Jud. iv. 17.

|| 2 Sam. iv. 7.

¶ Deut. xxxiv. 6.

duke of Urbino, and Andrea Doria to be the chief captains of the host, by land and by sea at that time.

974. And the famine was sore in Turin and Pinerolo*, and they ate the horses and the mules for want of all things†; because of the fury of the oppressor‡. And when King Francis heard it, it displeased him, and they passed over into Italy, he and his son, with much people, and with a strong hand§, in the eighth month two hundred and ninety-eight, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-seven; and the grand-master passed over before them, and sent soldiers unto Pinerolo with corn, and bread, and meat||, and four battering-rams. And Cesare di Napoli, who was sent to watch the passage of the mountains, fled before them, and his men were slain by the edge of the sword. The marquess also, and the soldiers, fled at the cry of them¶, and passed over the river Po in haste, near Montcalier**, and they fortified themselves there. And the horsemen of the king pursued after them, and smote among the

* Pinerolo, on the river Cluson, in the valley of Perouse in Piedmont, remained in the possession of the French from 1536 to 1574.

† Deut. xxvii. 57.

‡ Is. li. 14.

§ Num. xx. 20.

|| Gen. xlv. 23.

¶ Num. xvi. 34.

** מונקאליר. Moncaglieri.

Spaniards with the stroke of the sword*; and there fell of them many slain unto the ground on that day.

975. And the men of the emperor journeyed thence, and gathered themselves together into the fenced cities†; are they not Chieri‡ and Asti, Vercelli, Casale, and Alessandria? and they were quiet there§. And the French besieged Chieri in the middle of the month of November, but could not do anything, and returned back with shame.

976. And there murmured again a part of the Spaniards against the marquess, saying, “ Give us our money; why should we die of hunger?” And he spake unto their hearts; but they hearkened not unto him for anguish of spirit||; so he gave them their money, and they returned unto the camp.

977. And Eleonora, the queen of France, and the queen of Hungary, the widow, said one unto the other, “ How long shall the sword devour¶?” and they spake to the heart of the emperor and the king; and Paul the pope fulfilled their words** ; and these two kings hearkened unto their voice,

* Esth. ix. 5.

† Num. xxxii. 17; Jos. x. 20.

‡ 𐤒𐤓. Quiers, a town of Piedmont.

§ Jos. viii. 14.

|| Ex. vi. 9.

¶ 2 Sam. ii. 26.

** 1 Kings ii. 27: 2 Chr. xxxvi 21.

and made an armistice for three months, in the ninth month. Then went the Marquess del Guasto to bow before the king at Montcalier. And the king and his nobles honored him much. And he bowed before the king unto the ground, and went from him in peace. And the king and his son returned unto France, but the marquess returned unto his place*.

978. Then Giovanni Battista, the captain of the Venetian host journeyed from Zarat†, and three hundred footmen and one hundred and fifty horsemen with him. And they went unto Ostrovizza‡ about the morning watch; and they climbed suddenly upon its walls, and called with a loud voice, and set the houses on fire, whose smoke went up toward heaven. And the Turks awoke from their sleep, and went out abroad, and the uncircumcised slew them with the edge of the sword; and there died of them by the sword and by the great fire about seven hundred men at that time; but of the uncircumcised there died only three who were slain by the stones§ of those in the fort; and they took the prey, and returned unto Zara with gladness. And the booty which the men of war had caught, was three thousand sheep and beeves||,

* Gen. xviii. 33.

† זארה, a town of Dalmatia.

‡ אוסטרוויצה.

§ אבנים, balls of stone.

|| Num. xxxi. 32.

and their heart was lifted up very much*. And I went down to Genoa to dwell there, even I and mine household in those days.

979. And the emperor and the king prolonged the covenant of peace in the month of January, one thousand five hundred and thirty-eight, for three months, by the word of the pope and those compassionate queens; and they fortified the cities on the borders, and the land had rest†.

980. And the earth opened her mouth‡ as a burning oven§ at Pozzuolo||, which is nigh unto Naples, in those days. And the people feared much; and the inhabitants of Pozzuolo fled before the great flaming fire, and before the stones, which were constantly cast up towards heaven. And the heat and the darkness, and the ashes of the furnace waxed greater and greater far abroad¶, and their hearts melted, and became as water**, for the nations were dismayed at it, and many drew nigh unto the thick darkness to behold it††; but the great fire consumed them‡‡, and the rest fled at their cry§§, for they feared lest some evil should overtake them|||. The sea also saw it and fled¶¶,

* 2 Chr. xvii. 6.

† Num. xvi. 32.

|| פּוֹצְצוּלוֹ.

** Josh. vii. 5.

‡‡ Deut. v. 25.

||| Gen. xix. 19.

† Jud. iii. 30.

§ Mal. iv. 1. (iii. 19).

¶ 2 Chr. xxvi. 15; Esth. iii. 18.

†† Comp. Exod. iii. 3. 4.

‡‡ Num. xvi. 34.

¶¶ Ps. cxiv. 3.

and the reeds decayed and dried up* for three miles, because of the multitude of stones which came out daily. That heap is a witness, and the pillar is a witness, until this day† that it was the finger of God‡.

981. Nadin§, which is upon the mountains of Dalmatia, is a fenced city, and the men of Venice had a garrison in the midst thereof; and it happened when the Turks came, that the Venetians gave the signal unto Zara, lest the Turks should come suddenly upon them. And it came to pass, one day, that the governor betrayed it into the hands of the Turks on the seventeenth day of the second month, which is the month of April. But they drave him away from them; and he fell into the hand of the Venetians, who smote off his head. [ק] So are the ways of every one that is greedy of gain||.

982. And Paul, the pope, was content to make peace between the king and the emperor in those days; and he sent messengers unto them, saying, “Come, I pray you, let us look one another in the face¶ at Nizza**, which is in Provence, that we may make a covenant between us;” and the thing was very pleasing in their sight. And Andrea Doria went unto Barcelona, and the emperor went

* Job xiv. 11; Is. xix. 5. † Gen. xxxi. 52. ‡ Exod. viii. 19.

§ נַאֲדִין, a castle near Zara. See v. Hammer III. 213, 214.

|| Prov. i. 19. ¶ 2 Kings xiv. 8; 2 Chr. xxv. 16. ** נִיצָה.

to sea, after their own passover; and they went on their journeys. And it happened when they came, that they removed from the isles of Pomizzi* on the first day, the fifth day of the month of May, and went their way. And they lifted up their eyes, and behold†, the ships of King Francis came from Turkey against them. And the imperialists pursued, and overtook, and captured four of them; and gave them up to be plundered at that time. And they let the Spaniards and the men of Genoa, who were therein, go free; and they went their way. And the emperor commanded, and they brought the ships back unto the king, who gave them four thousand pieces of gold; behold, this was unto them a covering of the eyes‡, for the prey which the men of the ships had caught every one to himself. And the emperor and his nobles came to Villa Franca, and abode there about a month of days, until the king and his nobles came, for they delayed to come. And the pope drew nigh to the coast of Nizza, for he sorely longed to make peace between these kings.

983. And the counsel of the king of Muscovy, which is situated before Tartary, came unto Genoa in the third month, and in his hand

* פּוֹמִיִּצִי, perhaps the group of Ponza, in the gulf of Gaeta, as Pontia has been formed of Pometia.

† Gen. xxxvii. 25.

‡ Gen. xx. 16.

was a present, because his master had sent him unto the emperor to bow before him, and to beg of him to go to war against the Turks, for they vexed them* ; and he went to sea, and the Lord gave him into the hand of the Ishmaelites on the seventh day of the month ; and they led him unto Marseille, for there was peace between them. And they ransomed him there, so he returned unto the emperor, and went unto his own country.

984. And when the emperor heard that Paul drew nigh unto Savona, he sent thither some of his own ships to bring him unto him. And it came to pass, when he came to Villa Franca, that the rest of the ships went out to meet him, and they honored him ; and the sea and the land trembled at the noise of the battering-rams, and at the high-sounding trumpets. And on the third month Paul went on shore, and removed to the high place of St. Francis, which is out of Nizza. And it came to pass, after yet other three days, that the emperor went unto him, and did obeisance and kissed his foot, and embraced him, and they asked each other of their welfare†, and communed together, and no stranger passed between them‡ ; and they bowed one unto his brother ; and the emperor went from him in peace.

* Num. xxv. 18.

† Exod. xviii. 7.

‡ Job. xv. 10.

985. And the king, and his wife, and his sons, came unto the borders of Provence with much people, and with a strong hand. And he sent the Cardinal Lorenzo, and the Grand-master, to speak unto the emperor; and also the emperor sent messengers unto him; and they communed with them, and returned unto their master. And the king came to Nizza on the second day of the month of June. And Paul sent to meet him, so he came unto him. And he bowed, and kissed his foot, and Paul also bowed before him, and honored him much. And the king said unto him, “ Let it not be grievous in the sight of my Lord, that my occurrences and my wars have brought thee hither, which is not according to the law. For this thing did not happen according to my heart.” And Paul spake also words of peace and truth* unto his heart; and they removed to the chamber, and communed together until sunset, and bowed one to another, and separated themselves one from the other†.

986. And there came the queen Eleanora also, and her princesses and her maidens, clothed with broidered garments, and pleasant to look upon and fat-fleshed‡, and making a tinkling with their feet§.

* Esther ix. 30.

† Gen. xiii. 11.

‡ Gen. xli. 2.

§ Is. iii. 16.

And she went with twelve galleys unto Villa Franca, on the eleventh day of the fourth month. And they made a great bridge in the sea* ; and she came with her maidens on the bridge, and her brother, the emperor, also came to meet her, and embraced her, and fell on her neck and kissed her ; and they rejoiced together†. And those who came on the bridge after them were many, and the bridge brake under them, and they fell both of them into the water and the nobles with them ; but the men of the ships brought them up unto the shore, and there lacked not one of them. And she communed with her brother, the emperor, for about three hours, and bowed herself to the ground, and went out from him in peace, and returned unto Villa Nuova ; for the king and his nobles resided there in those days.

987. And it came to pass, after some days, that these two kings spake one to another, and Paul also spake to their hearts at that time, and said unto them, “ Turn ye from your evil ways‡, nation shall not lift up sword against nation, for the eyes of the rest of the uncircumcised§ are upon you. Know ye not yet, that our faith is

* A kind of pier.

† Gen. xxxiii. 4.

‡ 2 Kings xvii. 13 ; Ezek. xxxiii. 11.

§ Is. ii. 4 ; Micah iv. 3.

destroyed?*" The men of Martin Luther have bereaved me of my children†; also the king of England has joined them, and they thrust away many that follow me‡ unto this day, and no man layeth it to heart§. Also the Turk warreth against Venice this day; and of the kings of the uncircumcised there is not one with the *Venetians*; for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth||, all these things are against me¶." And they hardened their neck**, and refused to hear††, but said they would not war against Piedmont and the rest of their royal cities for ten years, and every one should go to his place in peace‡‡. And they made a covenant between themselves on the eighteenth day of the fourth month, in the high place of Francis§§, in the presence of Paul and the nobles who were with them; and all the people were very glad; and the commandment was given publicly unto all people||| in all the cities of their kingdoms in those days.

988. And they journeyed thence, and the emperor and the pope came unto Genoa on the

* Exod. x. 7.

† Gen. xiii. 36.

‡ Deut. xiii. 10.

§ Is. lvii. 1.

|| 2 Kings xix. 3; Is. xxxvii. 3.

¶ Gen. xlii. 36.

** Neh. ix. 16, 17.

†† Jer. xi. 10.

‡‡ Exod. xviii. 23.

§§ i. e. The church of St. Francis.

||| Esther iii. 14; viii. 13.

sabbath-day, on the twenty-second day of the fourth month; and the elders of the city and its judges and its priests, and all the people of the land, went out to meet them; and the earth was rent at the voice of the rams, and their smoke went up toward heaven. And the city of Genoa rejoiced and was glad*, and both of them came into the city with gladness. And King Francis returned unto his own place.

989. In those days the rest of the king's ships returned from Turkey; and Italy had rest for some days.

990. And the Turks besieged Napoli di Romania, and Malvasia, which belongeth unto the lords of Venice, in the Morea, many days; and they came in siege†, and the lords of Venice sent soldiers thither, and put a garrison in the midst of them. And Barbarossa went out from the seas of Constantinople, and one hundred and fifty galleys with him, and one gallant ship‡. And they took spoil in the isles of the sea, which belonged unto the Venetians in the Archipelago§, whose *inhabitants* were Greeks; and he drave them into another land as it is this day||. And the emperor

* Est. ix. 15.

† 2 Kings xxiv. 10.

‡ Is. xxxiii. 21.

§ ארציפילאנו.

|| Deut. xxix. 28.

remembered his covenant which he had made with Paul and the lords of Venice to war against Solyman; and they made ready at Genoa great ships, and put soldiers into them, who went with the rest of the ships along the coast of Sicily, by command of the emperor, at that time.

991. And the emperor journeyed from Genoa, and went away with his ships by the way of his own country, and the messengers of the king met him, and said unto him, “ Thus saith thy brother Francis*, Come, I pray thee, unto Aigues [קיא] Mortes†, for I long to see thy face as to see the face of God, and thou shalt be pleased with me‡. And when thou comest past Marseille, avoid not to enter the city, for it is given unto thee.” And the emperor returned unto them under shoutings, of ‘ Grace! Grace!§’ and he accepted their persons at that time. And he passed Marseille; but into the city he did not come, for he made haste to get away||. And there went out twenty ships of the king to meet him; which honored him, and the sea trembled at the voice of the battering-rams, and they went with him unto the islands of Pomegue¶, and encamped there. And many went unto Marseille and bought

* Gen. xxxii. 4.

† Aquæ Mortuæ, אקווי מורטי.

‡ Gen. xxxiii. 10.

§ Zech. iv. 7.

|| 1 Sam. xxiii. 26. ¶ פומיצי. Pomponiana, opposite Marseille.

themselves provision, and returned unto the camp*. And they journeyed thence, and went on toward Aigues Mortes but a little way†, and abode there; and the high constable went out to meet him, and they drew nigh unto the city; and the earth was rent at the voice of the battering-rams. And the king and the nobles who were with him went out in a small ship to the emperor, and he went to meet him, and they bowed one before the other at the head of the ship until sunset; and the king took off his ring and gave it into the hand of the emperor; and the emperor put a golden chain round his neck‡, and spake unto the heart of the king, and they rejoiced together on that day, and the king returned unto the city.

992. And the emperor and the nobles who were with him went unto the house of the king in the city on the fifteenth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month, and the king and the queen went out to meet him, and brought him into the palace which he had prepared for him§, and the king slew sheep and oxen and fatted calves in abundance||, and they ate and drank and were merry¶ with him there. And the king inquired of Andrea Doria, and he came as a deaf

* i. e. Squadron. † Gen. xlviii. 7. ‡ Gen. xli. 42.

§ Esther vi. 4. || 1 Kings i. 19, 25.

¶ 1 Kings iv. 20.

adder*, and bowed before the king to the ground. And the king said unto him, “ Be a son of valor†, but do not unto my friend, the emperor, as thou hast done unto me, when there was no injustice in my hands‡; the lord look upon you and judge§.” To the ships also the king gave presents, five casks of wine to each, and two kine and twelve sheep; and unto the emperor he said, “ Behold, my land is before thee||; pass by the way of my land, for no man shall lift up his foot;” but he would not hearken¶. And the king and the queen entreated him, so he tarried there all that night, and they rejoiced together; and it came to pass, on the morrow, that the emperor kissed his sister, the queen, and the king and his children, and they bowed one before the other, and separated themselves the one from the other**. And the emperor returned unto his ships, and went his way into his own land††.

* i. e. He was on his guard against the flatteries of Francis. Ps. lviii. 4 (Heb. 5). Ibi Cæsar, Andreæ Aureæ, classis prefectum, principem Melphitanum, qui ante annum decimum a rege defecerat per Granvellanum accersit, salutandi causa regis, ubi venit, rex, quia Cæsar inquit, es familiaris et administer, Andrea princeps, eique visum est ut Te conveniam, gratificari sane ipsi volui, quem fratris loco habeo. *Sleid. lib. xii.*

† 1 Sam. xviii. 16. ‡ Job. xvi. 17. § Exod. v. 25.

|| Gen. xx. 15. ¶ Is. xxviii. 12. ** Gen. xiii. 11.

†† Exod. xviii. 27.

993. And the pope returned to Rome, and came into the city on the twenty-fourth day of the fifth month ; but his garments and the rest of his men which he had sent by way of the sea*, the Lord gave into the hands of the Ishmaelites, who carried them into their own country.

994. And Marco Grimani†, the chief captain of his host, went unto Corfu‡ on the eleventh day of the month of August, and his ships were thirty-six ; and he went to war against Prevesa§, which is on the seas of Arta||. And they went on shore, and brought down from the ships two of the battering-rams. And the Turks who ride upon swift horses fell upon them, and slew many with the edge of the sword ; and the uncircumcised were smitten before them, and fled for their lives, and left the battering-rams, and returned unto Corfu with shame.

995. And Andrea Doria did not tarry, but journeyed from Genoa with fifty galleys on the twelfth day of August, which is the sixth month. And he went unto Messina, and found the ships which the emperor had sent and the men of the host ; and they became one in his hand¶. And he journeyed

* Is. ix. 1 ; (viii. 23.) † מארקו גרימאני.

‡ קורפו. § פריביזה, a town in Albania.

|| לארטה, Larta or l'Arta, a town in Albania.

¶ i. e. They were united in one fleet under his command.
Comp. Ezek. xxxvii. 17.

from thence and went into the seas of Corfu on the fifth day of the month of September, which is the seventh month. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that the chief captain of the pope's host, and the chief captain of the host of the lords of Venice went out to meet him, and they honored him much; and they returned unto Corfu together, and they journeyed all from Corfu as one man, on the ninth of the month, and went about thirty miles, and tarried there. And the large ships of Andrea Doria came on the twenty-second of the month, and they took provision unto themselves, and set captains at the head of the people; and Don Ferrand Gonzaga* to be head over all who went out on shore at that time. And when they heard that Barbarossa was come into the seas of Arta, the large ships they drew behind them, and went against him. And Andrea Doria sent fifteen galleys before him to espy; but Barbarossa sent after them twenty-five galleys, who pursued them; and the uncircumcised fled, and brought back word to Doria†.

996. And they thought to make war against Barbarossa, on the twenty-seventh of the month; and sent thither two of the galleys to espy, which brought them back word. And Barba-

* פיראנט נגזאנה, the viceroy of Naples. Sleidanus (Lib. x.) writes *Ferrandus*; others write *Ferdinand*. See Von Hammer III. p. 216.

† Num. xiii. 26.

rossa went out from Prevesa with a strong hand. And Andrea Doria and two of the captains of the host went out to meet him nigh unto the shore, to bring him out unto the place where the large ships were. And there came the large ships of the lords of Venice, and two of *the ships* of Andrea Doria, and gave the signal for battle; and they put fire into the rams, and their smoke went up toward heaven. And the Lord led the sea to go back by a strong north wind*, and they were at their wit's end, and reeled to and fro like a drunken man†; and the wind abated; so that the large ships upon which their soul trusted, could not move.

997. And Barbarossa said, "This is the time to laugh‡;" and he drew nigh, and discharged guns against them all that day; and also the men in the ships filled their hand at that time. And the Lord put faintness into the heart§ of the viceroy of the emperor, and into the heart of Andrea Doria, and of the captains of the host, so that they did not come to help them; but turned their neck, and returned unto Corfu with shame. And against the large ships which remained there, Barbarossa made war; some of them he took, and two of them he burned with fire; and those who escaped from the burning were taken alive. And also some of

* Exod. x. 13; xiv. 21.

† Ps. cvii. 27.

‡ Ecc. iii. 4.

§ Lev. xxvi. 36.

them returned back; for the Turks could not prevail against them by reason of the multitude of the rams; and the soldiers who were upon them could withstand one against a hundred, and one hundred against a thousand. And also some of the galleys, which were feeble behind them, he took, and pursued after them until sunset, and it was a reproach unto the uncircumcised.

998. Yet the men of Ragusa did not remember their covenant with the Turk, but forgot it*, and said, “Come on; let us deal wisely, lest the men of the confederates lick up all that are round about us†; and we all become servants unto tribute for ever.” And they chose men, and sent a present by their hands. And they put a word in their mouth‡, saying, “Thus shall ye speak unto the viceroy, and unto the officers of the host. Behold, this city belongeth unto the Turk, Castel Nuovo§, which is on our side of the *Adriatic*, her merchants are princes, and also silver and gold she has multiplied, and many garments||, beside the fifty loads of money which belong to those who do the king’s work, which bear rule over the people¶. Make haste** to come thither, and ye shall eat its prey††. Neither

* Gen. xl. 23.

† Num. xxiii. 5.

|| Hos. ii. 10.

** Joel. iv. 2.

† Num. xxii. 4.

§ קאסטיל נובו, in Dalmatia.

¶ 1 Kings v. 30; xi. 23.

†† Deut. xx. 14.

shall there be any that can deliver it out of your hands*. And unto the chief captain of the host which the Turk had therein, they sent with subtlety, rising up betimes and sending†, saying, “ Behold, a people cometh out of Corfu; and behold, it covereth the face of the sea‡, and they come against you: consider what ye shall do§.” And now we advertise thee|| to march out into the field¶, thou and the horsemen who follow thee, lest thou be consumed [קִיב] in the city**, and suffer them not to go on shore, and thou shalt save the city. And he hearkened unto their voice; for he knew not that they did it with *subtlety*. And he went out, and the money he sent out before him; and there were no more left in the city than four hundred Turks, who drew the sword††.

999. And Andrea Doria, and the viceroy‡‡, and the officers who followed them, journeyed from Corfu in the month of October, and went unto the seas of Cattaro§§, and remained in the

* Deut. xxxii. 39.

† 2 Chr. xxxvi. 15. i. e. continually and carefully.

‡ Num. xxii. 5.

§ Comp. Gen. xxxi. 28.

|| Num. xxiv. 14.

¶ Gen. xxvii. 3.

** Gen. xix. 15, 17.

†† Comp. Jud. xx. 25, effective men.

‡‡ Gonzaga.

§§ קאטאר, a town of Dalmatia.

galleys over against Castel Nuovo until morning, and went on shore. And the captain of the horsemen could not withstand them, and escaped unto the mountain. And they encompassed the city round about, and cast up banks against it, and took the suburbs of the city on that day*; and they set up five rams on the sabbath-day, and battered its walls until they were come down†. And on the first day of the week, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, they came into the city with a mighty hand, and besieged the fort which was nigh unto the sea; and the Turks delivered it into their hand, and made a covenant with them. And the fort, which was above the city, was delivered unto Don Ferrand Gonzaga on the next day, and he made a covenant with them also. By reason of the multitude of the whoredoms of the men of Ragusa, they delivered the forts, for they sent letters unto them from the part of the captain of horsemen, saying, “Go ye out to them for peace, and ye will deliver your lives from death‡.” But he knew nothing of it, and this never came into his heart§. The men of Ragusa also, who were in the city,

* Comp. Num. xxxv. 4, 5; Neh. ix. 25.

† Deut. xxviii. 52.

‡ Jos. ii. 13.

§ Jer. vii. 31; xix. 5; xxxii. 35.

made a conspiracy* with one of those who were placed by the rams† which were in the midst thereof to destroy them. And when inquisition was made of the matter, it was found out‡, and they burned both him and them with fire, so they went down into the pit§. And the officers of the uncircumcised put into the midst of the city about four thousand Spaniards and weapons of war, and greatly strengthened themselves. But they remembered not their covenant, and that which came forth from their lips they violated, and took the men and the goods on the third day of the month Tebeth two hundred and ninety-nine, and drave them away captive unto their own country, and sold them for bondmen and bondwomen in the four corners of the earth||. And of the fairest of the women; Andrea Doria sent unto the emperor a present; and he clothed them in silk and they remained there until this day. Also a Jew who was there, was taken in their destruction; and they brought him into Italy, and he was ransomed there after the ransom of the captives. Also the uncircumcised of the inhabitants of the city they afflicted much, and made their lives bitter¶.

* 1 Kings xvi. 20; 2 Kings xi. 14; 2 Chr. xxv. 27.

† i. e. With an artillerist.

‡ Esth. ii. 23.

§ Num. xvi. 36.

|| Is. xi. 12.

¶ Exod. i. 14.

And they killed many by tortures to bring out their hidden treasures. And their cry went up toward heaven.

1000. And the captain of the emperor's hosts returned to Italy, and there died of them much people of sore diseases*. The hand of the Lord† was also upon the Spaniards who returned, and the ship was broken under them in the seas of Calabria; they sank as lead‡, not even one of them remained§. Some of those also who came unto Sicily the inhabitants of Messina slew; and most of them perished, for they had set their hearts upon entering into the city with a strong hand. And there was the plague in the ships of Andrea Doria; they also drank the cup of trembling||; so let all thine enemies perish, O Lord¶.

1001. And on the first day of the month of January, in the year one thousand five hundred and thirty-nine, came Morato**, the chief captain of the horsemen of Solyman against Castel Nuovo, and three captains of the host with him; and they brought with them six battering-rams, and drew nigh unto the city. And the Spaniards went out

* 2 Chr. xxi. 18.

† Deut. ii. 15.

‡ Exod. xv. 10.

§ Exod. viii. 31.

|| Is. x; li. 22.

¶ Jud. v. 31.

** מוראטו. Von Hammer III. p. 316.

against them when they came, and fell upon them suddenly, and slew many with the edge of the sword. And the Turks fled from before them, and left there the rams; and as for the rest, their life was a prey unto them. And the uncircumcised took the rams, and returned unto the city with gladness.

1002. In those days, Solyman went with a mighty hand against Hungary; and the *Turks* utterly destroyed wherever their foot trod. And the choicest of their women and of their children they took to themselves, and returned with gladness to their own country.

1003. In that year, Henry removed the graven images, and overthrew the consecrated altars, and hewed down their groves*. And the priests who were in his kingdom, in England he commanded,† that they should take wives unto themselves; and unto the sisters‡, that they should belong unto husbands at that time. And on those who rebelled against his word he executed judgments, and many fled away, or were driven from his country, for he turned after Luther, and was an enemy unto the priests all the days.

1004. And the wife of the emperor died when she had hard labor in travail‡, on the first day of

* Comp. Deut. vii. 5; xii. 3.

† i. e. Nuns.

‡ Gen. xxxv. 16, 17.

the month of May ; and they buried her in the sepulchres of the kings, and honored her much. And it was told unto the emperor, that his mother also died, for she was old. And he lifted up his voice, and wept very sore, for the sorrow was great*. And he and his nobles clothed themselves with mourning ; and their faces gathered blackness†.

1005. And the ships of the emperor went unto Castel-Nuovo, laden with corn, and bread, and meat‡, and men of valor, to place them instead of those men, whose soul was weary of sitting in the fort ; and they returned unto their own country.

1006. And Barbarossa, which is Chaireddin§, went out from the seas of Constantinople with much people and with a strong hand. And his galleys were two hundred ; and he came unto Castel Nuovo on the seventeenth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month, and also a mixed multitude went out with him, and at their head were Dragut and Ziput||, who went to make spoil in the countries of their enemies ; this was their manner all the while¶. And the Spaniards warred against them daily, and set up the rams round about, and battered its walls. And

* Comp. Gen. xxvii. 38.

† i. e. Expressed sadness. Is. iv. 3 ; Joel ii. 6.

‡ Gen. xlv. 23.

§ Sometimes spelled Haradin.

|| אַדראַגוט וציפוט.

¶ 1 Sam. xxvii. 11.

they cast into it about thirteen thousand cannon-balls, and the sea and the land trembled. And they cast down her fortified walls, and warred against the city daily. And the Lord caused it to rain upon Castel-Nuovo in the night of the seventh day of the month of August; and the windows of heaven were opened*. And the Turks said, “This is the time to laugh;” and they approached the city before one could know another†, and climbed up the walls. And the Spaniards arose, and went out against them, and could not put fire into the battering-rams, nor into the guns, for the Lord caused it to rain at that time; and they fought with swords and with spears; and they could not stand before them, for the Turks were many. And of them died but few in number; and they drew back and fought in the markets, and in the streets, and were smitten before the Turks, and fell before them slain by the sword. And there died about three thousand men in that slaughter, and eight hundred souls of men, children, and women, were taken alive. And Chaireddin came into the city and fortified it, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And they found there the rams which Andrea

* Gen. vii. 11.

† Ruth iii. 14.

Doria had left there. And it was a shame unto the uncircumcised.

1008. And Barbarossa sent unto the governor of the men of Venice who were at Cattaro, saying, “ Deliver unto me the fort of Resano*, which is upon the mountain;” and he said, “ I cannot do this thing of my own mind†.” And Barbarossa spake to the hearts of the men of the city, and persuaded them by the sweetness of his tongue. And they delivered it into his hand on the eleventh day of the month, and it was reckoned unto them for a shame. [קיג] And the governor of Cattaro sent unto him a present; but Barbarossa had no respect unto his offering‡, and demanded Cattaro, saying, “ War and peace are in my hand.”

1009. And on the fifteenth day of the same month, Chaireddin went with all the ships unto Cattaro, and his men went on shore, and went about to see the nakedness of the land§; and they cast up trenches against them, and the Turks drew back, for their fear fell upon them. And it came to pass, at eventide||, that Chaireddin sent unto the city, saying, “ Solyman hath sent a letter unto me, saying, ‘ Let them alone¶; for the men

* ריסאנו.

† Gen. iv. 5.

|| Gen. xxiv. 11.

† Num. xvi. 28; xxiv. 23.

§ Gen. xlii. 12.

¶ Deut. ix. 14.

of Venice are peaceable with us*, I have made a covenant with them;’ and now let there be peace with you, fear ye not, only send one of you to speak unto me, and I will go my way.” And they said, “ Send away this army; then according to what thou shalt say unto us, we will do.” And it came to pass on the morrow, that all of them went abroad†, and passed over unto Castel-Nuovo, and the inhabitants of Cattaro rejoiced much, and sent Gerolamo with a present in his hand. And Chaireddin took it from his hand, and he also gave gifts unto Gerolamo; so he went out from him in peace. And he demanded of the governor of Venice the city of Sopha‡; and its inhabitants were about seven hundred men, men of war. And he said, “ Why dost thou speak thus unto thy servant, I cannot do from my own mind either a great or a small matter§.” And he journeyed from thence on the twentieth of the month, and went his way.

1010. And the Lord called for a famine|| in all the provinces of Italy in that year; and the emperor hardened his heart, and would not grant corn from Sicily, except they should give three scudi for every salma¶, which is a camel’s load; there

* Gen. xxxiv. 21.

† Gen. xv. 9.

‡ זופה.

§ Num. xxii. 18.

|| 2 Kings viii. 1.

¶ סאלמה.

was not such a thing from the time it became a nation*, and the famine was sore in Venice. And the people cried for bread†, and said, “It is better for us to serve Solyman, than that we should die of hunger‡.” And they sent messengers unto Solyman, and surrendered unto him Napoli di Romania and Malvasia, which were left unto them in the Morea and many talents of gold; and he made a covenant with them; and they went unto his country, and brought corn and bread; and it grieved the emperor much.

1011. And in the year three hundred of the fifth thousand, which is the year one thousand five hundred and forty, the emperor Charles went by the way of France unto Flanders and Germany; and the king and his nobles honored him much. And the king made great buildings, overlaid with gold§, in the cities of his kingdom to receive him; there was not such made in France from the time she became a nation; and he abode with the king a number of days, and they rejoiced together; and he went out from him in peace. And Ghent|| is a city and a mother in the districts of Flanders, the perfection of beauty¶, which was never wrought with, and which never bore a yoke

* Exod. ix. 24; Deut. iv. 32.

† Gen. xli. 35.

‡ Comp. Exod. xiv. 12.

§ i. e. Triumphant arches.

|| יאנטי.

¶ Lam. ii. 15.

from ancient days*, and her government was between themselves until that day†; and they sought to give their hand unto the king, but he hearkened not unto their voice. And the king revealed their secret unto the emperor, when his heart was merry with wine‡; and the emperor was very wroth, and marked the thing, and went thither, and made his yoke heavy upon them, and chastised them with whips and with scorpions§, and slew the fattest of them, and smote down their chosen men||, and his eye did not spare them¶. And he builded a tower in the midst thereof**, and made them servants unto tribute; and they became weary of their lives, and their cry went up toward heaven; and his heart became much lifted up. And he mocked also the king, and did not fulfil the thing which he spake unto him, and it grieved the king much††.

1012. And Andrea Doria went with his ships unto Messina in the month of May, which is the third month. And the ships of the Turks went into the seas of Spain, and took of the large ships as many as their soul desired‡‡, neither was there any that could deliver out of their hand§§; they came

* Deut. xxi. 3.

† i. e. They were Republicans.

‡ Esth. i. 10; 2 Sam. xiii. 28. § 1 Kings xii. 11—14.

|| Ps. lxxviii. 31. ¶ Deut. vii. 16; Ez. ix. 5. ** Is. v. 2.

†† Sleidanus, Thuanus, Robertson, Denina, Raumer.

‡‡ 1 Sam. ii. 16.

§§ Deut. xxxii. 39.

also into the seas of Genoa, and took a large ship bearing wheat on the thirtieth day of the month, and sent her into their own country. And Capraja* was a small city on one of the isles of the sea near Corsica, and was reckoned to be the country thereof†. And they went thither and besieged it, and cast up trenches against it, and conquered it on the fifth day of the month of June, and took the persons and the goods. And these men went unto Corsica also. And Dragut Reist‡ was the chief of their host, and there were eleven galleys; and they took there also as much as their soul desired, and made much spoil§.

1013. And Andrea Doria heard the report of Dragut, and his wrath was kindled; and he divided his ships into two bands||, and twenty-one of his ships came into the seas of Corsica, as swift as the eagle flieth¶. And Dragut heard nothing thereof, for the Lord had made heavy his ears**. And it came to pass, when their heart was merry, as they divided the prey upon the coast of the sea, to every man a damsel or two††, that they fell suddenly upon them; and gave the signal for battle. And the Turks hastened to return unto the ships, but could not, for evil was

* קאפראַיָה seems to be compounded with Caprera.

† Comp. 2 Sam. iv. 2.

‡ אַדְרִנוֹט רֵאִיז.

§ 2 Chron. xxv. 13.

|| Gen. xxxii. 7.

¶ Deut. xxviii. 49.

** Comp. Is. vi. 10.

†† Jud. v. 30.

determined against them*. And they left the ships as they were, and fled on shore, and their lives were unto them for a prey†. And two of the ships which were outside fled away; and they pursued after them‡; and the Turks cast into the sea the women and the children who were with them, when they hastened to make themselves lighter; and so they saved their lives. There was none taken in the destruction wrought by the uncircumcised, except the nine who were left. And Dragut, the chief of the host, was taken alive; and they put irons on his foot, like unto one of the base. And of those who remained in the ships, who went not on shore, were taken about one hundred men at that time. And they came unto Genoa, the city wherein I was, with all the prey, on the twentieth day of the month of June, which is the fourth month. And the nine ships they towed after them and their faces were backward§, and their banner they dragged in the sea with cords of vanity||; and they exposed them unto mockery. And the earth was rent at the voice of the rams, and all the people of the land were glad; and the city of Genoa rejoiced and was glad¶.

1014. And the duke of Mantua died in the

* Esther vii. 7.

† Jer. xxi. 9; xxxviii. 9; xxxix. 18.

‡ Exod. xiv. 9.

§ i. e. Their prows were turned backward. Gen. ix. 23.

|| Is. v. 18.

¶ Esther vii. 15.

same month; and they chose his firstborn son in his stead; but he was a lad, and all the people were ruled according to the word of his uncle the cardinal, and his mother Margaret*.

1015. As for that month, let darkness seize upon it†; for in the same, my first-born son Joshua (blessed be his memory!) was visited on the ninth of the month, on the third day of the month Tammuth, which is the fourth month, in the river Reno‡, which is near the Piave§, when he went to bathe; his hands were not bound, and his feet met not in fetters||, but as lead they sank in the proud waters, and there was none to save him. Therefore I said, “Let there be no dew upon Piave, and no rain in the border of Ferrara, nor fields of offerings¶; there is fallen the most pleasant of youths. Would to God I had died for thee, O my son, my son!** Woe is me, my mother, that thou hast borne me!†† Cursed be the day wherein I was born‡‡ to see labor and sorrow! My days are consumed with mourning§§; why died I not from the womb?||| or that my mother might have been my grave, and her womb always great with

* Gen. xli. 10.

† Job. iii. 6.

‡ קינו. § פיארי, a river which runs into the gulph of Venice.

|| 2 Sam. iii. 34.

¶ 2 Sam. i. 21.

** 2 Sam. iii. 33; xix. 41.

†† Jer. xv. 10.

‡‡ Jer. xx. 14.

§§ Jer. xx. 18.

||| Job. iii. 11.

me*! Woe unto me, for I have sinned†." My breach is great like the sea; who will heal me?‡ for fourteen days after this evil report had reached me, there died also his brother, who was sucking the breasts of his mother? Blessed be the true Judge! The conclusion of the matter is, whether I turn to the right or to the left, the Lord my God I will fear, and his commandments I will keep§; though he slay me, yet will I trust in him|| till my change come¶. This is my comfort**, for he maketh sore and bindeth up††; and their souls shall be bound in the bundle of life‡‡. [ק"י]

1016. Then the king of Tunis hired Andrea Doria to sail for making war against the cities which Barbarossa had enticed, so that they would not bear the king's yoke as at first. They refused to obey, and he went unto Monasterio§§ with fifty galleys and fifteen large ships, and about seven thousand Spaniards and Italians with him. And the men of the city feared much, and fled with the women and the children, and all their stuff. And they sent unto him three men, saying, "Let us alone, and whatsoever thou shalt say unto us we will do; only our king we will not

* Jer. xx. 17.

† Lam. v. 16.

‡ Lam. ii. 13.

§ Eccles. xi. 13.

|| Job. iii. 15.

¶ Job. xiv. 14.

** Ps. cxix. 50.

†† Job. v. 18.

‡‡ 1 Sam. xxv. 29.

§§ On the coast of Northern Africa.

serve, for he is a Belial ;” and he sent them unto the viceroy of the emperor who was with him, and he rebuked them, and would not hearken unto them, and said unto them, “ Serve your king, that ye may live, for so the emperor hath appointed ; and if not, evil is determined against you.” And the messengers said unto the viceroy of Sicily, “ Give us time, that we may take back an answer unto them that sent us ;” and the viceroy gave into their hand an hour-bottle*, which is a measure of sand, which runs out in one hour ; and said unto them, “ Take and go†,” and it shall come to pass when the bottle shall be finished, I will come upon them like a bear robbed of her whelps‡, and will smite the mother with the children§. And the men went into the city, and told unto them the words of the viceroy ; and the men of the city feared much, and went out of the city, and fled for their lives ; and there was not left even one||. And it came to pass, when the bottle was completed, that the uncircumcised went into the city, and found not one that pisseth against the wall¶ ; there were no more left there than four old women, who could

* i. e. Hour-glass.

† Gen. xxiv. 51.

‡ 2 Sam. xvii. 8 ; Hos. xiii. 8.

§ Gen. xxxii.

|| Comp. Exod. viii. 20 ; x. 19.

* 1 Sam. xxv. 22 ; 1 Kings xiv. 10 ; xvi. 11 ; xxi. 21. 2 Kings ix. 8. The same expression is used by the Syrians. *Asseman, Bibl. Orient.* II. ii. p. 260.

not walk, for they were heavy of age*. And they took the wheat and the barley, and the oil and the flax, which the men of the city had left there; and they left no gleanings in it at that time†. And there went out Ishmaelites, who rode upon horses against them, and slew many of the uncircumcised with the edge of the sword. And of the Ishmaelites there died only a small number, for their horses are swifter than the weaver's shuttle‡: even when they would have pursued them, they could not overtake them.

1017. And when the men of Susa§ heard it, they fled also with their young and old; and they sent thither to spy out, and they found not one that pisseth against the wall; and they brought back word unto Andrea, and he went not thither||. And the men of Africa, which is Mahadi¶, bent their shoulder to bear**, for the fear of the uncircumcised fell upon them. And they delivered the city into the hand of the king, and made a covenant with them. And Africa was a fenced city with gates of iron; and from ancient time they would not let any man come into it who was not of their covenant. Until the time of its visitation came††, no stranger came into it; but it

* Gen. xlviii. 10.

† Is. xvii. 6.

‡ Job vii. 6.

§ סוסה, a city near Monasterio.

|| Num. xiii. 26.

¶ מדהדי.

** Gen. xlix. 15.

†† Jer. xlvi. 21; l. 27. Micah vii. 4.

became a servant unto tribute at that time. And the king put a garrison into the midst thereof. And the king of Tunis also came into these cities on the way by land with a strong hand. And he came before the viceroy and Andrea Doria, and bowed to the ground, and they honored him much. And he gave them presents and precious things; and they returned unto their own country; and his throne was firmly established.

1018. And they left there about three thousand Spaniards to be a help to the king, and to bring back unto the king the rebellious cities; for so the emperor had commanded. And Kairwan* was a city and a mother in Barbary; and in the midst thereof was the Ishmaelitish high priest, and they would not allow Jews to live there until this day. And the king of Tunis desired† to make war against it. And he gathered his army, and took the Spaniards also with him; and they went thither. And the Ishmaelites went out against him with a strong hand. And some of the Ishmaelites also who were under the command of his son, turned to be his enemies† at that time. And when the king saw that evil was determined against him, he drew back without success, and the war ceased.

* קירואן.

† Is. lxiii. 10.

1019. And the Turks went out in ships from Algier in those days to spoil the countries of their enemies, and they went unto Gibraltar, and the Lord gave it into their hand; and they took all its spoil, and returned unto Algier with gladness. And when the Turks heard that the ships of the Spaniards had no strength to withstand against them, they said, "This is the time to laugh; God hath delivered them into our hand*." And they appointed a captain†, and returned to Spain with fifteen galleys, and knew not that the time of their visitation was come, and the Lord had them in derision‡. And the report was heard in Spain; and they also put soldiers and weapons of war in galleys, and went out against them.

1020. And it came to pass, on the second day of the month of October, in the year three hundred and one, after the smaller date, that the Turks drew nigh and set the battle in array, fifteen ships against sixteen. And it came to pass, as they were warring, that four of the Turkish ships fled, and turned their neck§, and the rest were slain with the edge of the sword. And there fell of them one thousand men in that slaughter. And of the uncircumcised were about three hundred slain by the edge of the sword, besides the wounded,

* 1 Sam. xiv. 10.

† Ps. xi. 4.

‡ Num. xiv. 4.

§ 2 Chr. xxix. 6.

who were a great multitude. And the rest took the ships of Algier and the spoil, and returned to their own country, and gave thanks unto their God.

1021. In that year the Lord stirred up the spirit of Solyman*, the king of Greece and Persia, and he thought to set up the walls of Jerusalem, the holy city, which is in the land of Judah. And he sent officers†, and they builded her walls, and they set up her gates as at the first, and her towers as at the beginning‡. And his fame went out over the whole world, for he did great things§. And also the upper pool|| they conducted through the city, lest the people should happen to thirst for water. May God remember it unto him for good.

1022. In those days, when the emperor abode at Ratisbon, he thrust out altogether¶ the Jews from the kingdom of Naples, and remembered not his covenant. And they sent to Ratisbon to beseech him, and to request their life from before him, but he had no compassion upon them. And our brethren, the house of Israel, went as exiles hither and thither, as sheep which have no shepherd**. O that the Lord would behold it, and have compassion for his great name's sake! Some of them

* Ezra li. 5; 2 Chr. xxxvi. 22. † Gen. xli. 34; Esth. ii. 3.

‡ Comp. Is. i. 26.

§ Joel. ii. 20; Ps. cxxvi. 2, 3.

|| Is. vii. 3; xxxvi. 2.

¶ Exod. xi. 1. ** Num. xxvii. 7.

went to Turkey, and some of them were drowned in the sea, and some of them were taken captive by Ragosiano*, the captain of the navy, who led them unto Marseille. And it was told unto the king of France, who had compassion upon them, and took them out of the hand of the enemy that oppresseth†, free, without ransom‡. And he sent them unto the east, for the Lord had granted them compassion before his sight; yea, and he shall be blessed§. And the noble Don Samuel Abarbanel and his house, came unto Ferrara, and abode there; and this came to pass in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-one.

1023. And the ships of the emperor went to the land of Ishmael, to bring the Spaniards whom they had left there in the month of May, which is the third month. And they went on shore at Pakos||, a city of Barbary, to draw water¶. But the Arabs fell upon them suddenly, and slew of them two hundred men with the edge of the sword; and the rest fled before them, and swam on the surface of the water unto the ships, and their life was unto them for a prey. And they journeyed thence by command of the king of Tunis,

* דראגוסיאנו.

† Comp. Exod. xxi. 2.

|| פאקוס.

† Numb. x. 9.

§ Gen. xxvii. 33.

¶ Gen. xxiv. 13.

and went unto Kalibiah*, which is a small city, whose walls are fortified. And they cast up a trench against it, and battered its walls, and took it. And all its males they slew with the edge of the sword, and took all its prey, the women and the children. And the Spaniards returned to their own country. And the city they delivered into the hand of the king of Tunis; but there was not left in the midst thereof one that pisseth against the wall. [קטו]

1024. And Martin Luther was wise; yea, he gave good heed, and sought out and set in order many works and words† for their faith and their doctrines; and he made the laws of the pope to stink among the inhabitants of Germany, and they did not set up any more molten images, and gave no more praise unto the saints as before; and the hearts of some were confounded, for one said, “I am the pope’s;” and another called himself by the name of Luther, and by his name he was surnamed‡. And the priests were the cause, for they were turned aside after lucre§, and went after the imagination of their own hearts||, and had corrupted their way upon the earth¶.

1025. And it came to pass, when the emperor

* קאליביאה

† Is. xlv. 5.

|| Jer. iii. 16.

† Eccl. xii. 9.

§ 1 Sam. viii. 3.

¶ Gen. vi. 12.

was at Ratisbon, that there gathered themselves unto him most of the nobles of Germany, and spake unto him, saying, "How long shall we halt between two opinions; if the pope be God, let us follow him; and if Martin, let us follow him*." And now let us reason together†, that we may know what to do, and that there may be no guilt upon us." And he swarc unto them, saying, "After three years' time, I will bring hither the pope and his cardinals and his wise men, and we shall see what will become of their dreams." And the thing was pleasing in their sight, and they believed him, and went out from him in peace.

1027. And the woywode who had made a covenant with Solyman, died, and his wife was left behind him with her little son; and Ferdinand the brother of the emperor went against them in that year with a strong hand; and against Buda also, Ferdinand, the emperor's brother, made war. And they sent unto Solyman, saying, "The hewer is come upon us‡ with a high hand; and we and our land also are servants unto thee continually§; the right of the kingdom is thine||. And when Solyman heard it, he armed his trained servants¶, and went out against him, and the

* 1 Kings xviii. 21. † Is. i. 18. ‡ Comp. Is. xiv. 8.

§ Gen. xlvii. 19.

|| Comp. Deut. xxi. 17.

¶ Gen. xiv. 14.

uncircumcised drew back with shame. And it came to pass, after some days, that the two armies drew nigh one unto the other, at the distance of a bow-shot*. And they arrayed there a battle, and in that slaughter, there fell of the uncircumcised about twenty thousand men slain to the ground. And the rest drew back, and returned unto their own country with shame. And the Turk placed some of his men in Buda; and the war ceased. And Transylvania was ruled by the word† of the wife of John, the woywode, and by the word of his brother George the priest, till the child be grown‡; and they were unto Solyman servants, who offered unto him an offering§.

1028. And the emperor was exceedingly grieved||, and feared much. And he journeyed from Germany and came to Milan, and abode there several days. And he came unto Genoa in the month Elul on the sabbath-day, on the third day of the month of September, which is the seventh month. And he made his yoke heavy, and put a tax upon the wheat which came out of Sicily; and the stink of his savour went up toward heaven¶, and the stone cried out of the wall**.

* Comp. Gen. xxi. 16.

† Gen. xli. 40.

‡ Gen. xxxviii. 11.

§ Malachi ii. 12; iii. 3.

|| Esth. iv. 4.

¶ Joel ii. 20.

** Hab. ii. 11. i. e. The emperor became unpopular.

1029. And when all the land of Genoa was famished*, had it not been for the king of France, who gave them corn, they would have eaten their own children in that year.

1030. And it came to pass, after eight days, that the emperor went unto Lucca† to commune with Paul the pope, who came also thither. And the King Francis sent thither messengers, concerning the Lord Cesare Fregoso, and Antonio Rincone‡, his servants, who had been slain, being as a broken vessel§ in the borders of Pavia; and it is not known what became of them until this day||. And the emperor would not speak unto them, for the cause was of him and of his servants¶, to consume them and to destroy them**. And therefore the king was very wroth, and his anger burned within him††.

1031. And the emperor was content to make war against Algier; and he gathered soldiers and gallant ships in multitudes‡‡, and went down to the sea in the same month, which is the seventh month. And the king of Portugal also filled his hand§§; for Algier was as thorns in their eyes|||.

* Gen. xli. 55. † לוקה. ‡ רינקוני. § Ps. xxxi. 12.

|| See Robertson's Charles V. Sandoval. Thuanus to the year 1541.

¶ 1 Kings xii. 15; 2 Ch. x. 15. ** Esth. ix. 24.

†† Esth. i. 12. ‡‡ Is. xxxiii. 21.

§§ Exod. xxxii. 29. Hebrew text. ||| Josh. xxiii. 13.

And they said, “ Let us cut them off from being a nation, that their name may be no more in remembrance*.” And the ships were about four hundred, and the emperor was the head over them. And also Andrea Doria, the chief captain of his host went with him in that war; and on the twenty-seventh day of the month of September, in the month Tishri, three hundred and two, a part of the ships sailed from Genoa. And a wind passed and cleared them out†; and they went one hither and one thither‡, and reeled to and fro like a drunken man§. And they saw not one another for about three days||, every one turned to his own way¶. And they went to Corsica on the second day of the month of October at eventide**, and remained there. And the emperor went unto Porto Vecchio††, and from thence unto Bonifacio‡‡; and they remained there two days, and went their way. And they sailed from the island Majorca§§, by Spain, on the eighteenth of the same *month*. And on the twenty-second day of the same *month*; they came unto Algier on the

* Ps. lxxxiii. 4 (5).

† Job xxxvii. 21.

‡ Comp. 2 Kings ii. 8. 14; iv. 34.

§ Ps. cvii. 27.

|| Exod. x. 23.

¶ Is. liii. 6.

** Gen. xxiv. 11.

†† פורטו וויקיו.

‡‡ בוניפאציו.

§§ מאיוריקה.

sabbath-day. And they lifted up their eyes*, and saw three little galleys going unto Algier, and pursued after them†. And the first ship went in its haste against one of the small, and the ship and her men sank into the sea of reeds‡. And the second also was wrecked in their haste on one of the rocks, and the third went its way unto Algier, and their lives were unto them a prey; and it was told in Algier what had come upon them by the way§.

1032. And the men of the emperor went the next morning on shore, and the Arabians who ride on swift beasts|| came and warred against them all that day. And the Spanish ships came at eventide; and in them was a great army, beside the soldiers, whom the emperor led on, and weapons of war, and they brought with them corn and bread and meat¶, and horses in great multitudes, and cannon balls. And they were ready to go up unto the hill** which is by Algier, and took it, and ran to the walls, and encamped against the city round about, and cast up trenches, and the city was besieged††; and it was straitly shut up, none went out and none came in‡‡. And

*.Exod. xiv. 10.

† Exod. xiv. 9.

‡ ים־סוּף, for sea in general. See Exod. xv. 4.

§ Exod. xviii. 8.

|| Est. viii. 10. 14; Micah i. 13.

¶ Gen. xlv. 23.

** Deut. i. 41.

†† 2 Kings xxv. 2.

‡‡ Jos. vi. 1.

the Jews who were in the midst thereof were sore afraid, and they cried, and their cry came up unto God*, who would not destroy them†.

1033. On that night, the king, the Lord of hosts, did not slumber; and it was found written‡, “And yet for all that, when they be in the land of their enemies, I will not cast them away§.” And again, it is said, “Surely they are my people, children that will not lie, and I will be a saviour unto them||;” and he remembered for them his covenant, and repented according to the multitude of his mercies¶. And the Lord descended in a cloud**, and fought against those nations as when he fights in the day of battle††. And they did not understand one another’s speech, because the Lord had confounded their thoughts, and they left off to war against the city‡‡. And the Lord caused the sea to go *back* by a strong east wind all that night§§. And he rebuked the sea|||, whose waves roared; and they were shaken, because he was wroth; and there went up a smoke out of his nostrils¶¶ toward the morning, and the men

* Exod. ii. 23.

† Deut. x. 10.

‡ Comp. Esth. vi. 1, 2.

§ Lev. xxvii. 44.

|| Is. lxiii. 8.

¶ Ps. cvi. 45.

** Exod. xxxiv. 5.

†† Zech. xiv. 3.

‡‡ Gen. ix. 7—9.

§§ Exod. xiv. 21.

||| Ps. cvi. 9.

¶¶ 2 Sam. xxii. 8, 9; Ps. xviii. 7, 8.

of the emperor's ships reeled to and fro like a drunken man, and were at their wits' end. And fifteen of the galleys were broken and two of the great ships, and of the middle-sized ships without number. Also on them which were left, the hand of the Lord was mighty; and their masts were broken, and there fled from them about one thousand men unto the ships which were nigh unto them. And those who fled on shore they slew with the edge of the sword, for they were far off from the men of the host, and they helped them not*. And upon the men of valor also who were on shore was the rebuke, and the knees smote together, and there was much pain in all loins†, because of the wind and the rain which the Lord caused to rain. And they could not stand upon their feet‡, because of the cold, and of hunger, and want of all things§ at that time, and there was a great cry|| upon [קיר] the sea and upon the land on that day, whose like had not been since Algier became a nation¶. And the soldiers drew back, to save the men of the ships from the hand of those cruel Arabs; and many of them died.

1034. And there was a great earthquake in Genoa and its environs, and in the borders of Milan in

* 2 Chr. xxviii. 21.

† Nahum ii. 10.

‡ Ez. ii. 1.

§ Deut. xxviii. 48.

|| Exod. xii. 30.

¶ Exod. ix. 24.

that night in the beginning of the first watch*. There was nothing like unto that storm in the land of my sojourning, from the time I became a man until this day. And the walls shook and opened their mouth without measure†, and the steep places fell, and the hearts of the people melted away, and became like water; and they said it is the finger of God‡.

1035. And there was another great ship broken at Algier, which came from Sicily, bearing battering rams, and she went down wonderfully§; on the twenty-seventh of the same month she sank as lead||, and the sailors went out on shore, and saved their lives. And also a ship of Spain sank to the bottom as a stone¶ at that time, for the sea wrought and was tempestuous against them**. And upon her were many nobles and honorable men, and horses, and jewels of silver and jewels of gold, and raiment††; not even one of them was saved. Then the Arabians burned the ship which the waves had cast out upon the shore. And they took the spoil of their enemies as their soul desired; there was none who could deliver out of their hand‡‡ in the day of the Lord's anger§§. For

* Comp. Jud. vii. 19.

† Is. v. 14.

‡ Exod. viii. 19.

§ Lam. i. 9.

|| Exod. xv. 10.

¶ Exod. xv. 5.

** Jonah i. 13.

†† Exod. iii. 22.

‡‡ Is. xliii. 13; Deut. xxxii. 39.

§§ Lam. ii. 22.

they fought from heaven against the men of the emperor both by sea and by land, and they had no power to stand on that day*. And the men of the emperor who were on shore, ate the horses which were with them for want of every thing in the countries of their enemies at that time, for the men of the ships which were left could not give provision; for the sea wrought and was tempestuous, and they were like to be brokent. And the ships went unto Capo Matafust, to be saved from the raging of the sea and its roaring, and tarried there some days.

1036. And the Ishmaelites fought daily against the men of the emperor who were on shore, and gave them no rest§. And when the emperor saw that they fought from heaven||, and that the remainder of *his men* had no strength to stand upon their feet, for the famine was sore, he was greatly distressed¶; and said in his heart, “How long shall this city be a snare unto us**, I will go unto my own country for such a time as this††, and will return again.” And he com-

* Lev. xxvi. 37.

† Jonah i. 4.

‡ מַטַּפּוּס **מַטַּפּוּס**, this undoubtedly is the Cape, a few miles east of Algier, which on modern maps is called Cape Temedfus or Matifeo.

§ Lam. ii. 18.

|| i. e. The emperor observed, that heavenly powers were adverse to his expedition. Judges v. 20.

¶ Gen. xxxii. 7.

** Exod. x. 7.

†† Esth. iv. 14.

manded, and the soldiers went unto the place where the ships were, to see if God would think upon them*. And the sea became calm and ceased from raging, and they took provision from them, for the famine was sore, and the Lord rained upon them a shower of curses†, and He led them heavily‡, and they became weary of their lives§ for anguish of spirit and for hard labour||. And on the sea also there was a tempest mightier than the first, so that the ships were like to be broken that time also¶.

1037. And on the thirtieth day of the month of October three hundred and two, the whole residue of those ships which had escaped**, came to that place. And the emperor commanded to slay the horses which were left upon the ships, according as he had commanded before, lest the people should thirst for water††; and they did so. On that day a large ship of Naples was also drowned; she sank as lead‡‡, but no man thereof was missed.

1038. And on the first day of the month of November the soldiers went down to the sea in ships§§ to return unto the land of Spain. Then arrived Don Bernardin Mendoz||| from Spain, with eleven galleys and eight ships bearing provision;

* Jonah i. 6. † Comp. Ezek. xxxiv. 26. ‡ Exod. xiv. 25.

§ Gen. xxvii. 46. || Exod. vi. 9. ¶ Jonah i. 4.

** Exod. x. 5. †† Exod. xvii. 3. ‡‡ Exod. xv. 10.

§§ Ps. cvii. 23. ||| בִּרְנָאֲרִין מִיְּנִדוּץ.

and they relieved their soul*. And on the morrow there came two other ships, and one went near Algier, and they discharged guns against her, so she returned back.

1039. Of them who died on the sea and on shore there was no number, for the hand of the Lord was against them to consume them, and to destroy them†. And He rained upon them continually waters that caused the curse‡ when they went to war against the city, and when they drew back. And there fell of them much people by the sword, and by the famine, and by the dreadful cold§. Then sang the inhabitants of Algier, saying, “ I will sing unto the Lord, for he hath triumphed gloriously ; the horse and his rider he hath thrown into the sea|| ; for the Lord is a God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed¶.”

1040. And they sailed thence on the third day, and the ships went every one its way, whither the spirit was to go**. And one of them was broken near Algier. And the Arabs went out to swallow them up, and fought against them with a mighty hand ; and the Turks went out from the city, and delivered them out of their hands ; and

* Lam. i. 19.

† Deut. ix. 15 ; Esth. ix. 24.

‡ Num. v. 18—27.

§ Jer. xiv. 12 ; xxi. 9.

|| Exod. xv. 1, 2.

¶ 1 Sam. ii. 3.

** They went off in haste in whatsoever direction the wind was favorable. Comp. Ez. i. 12.

they became their bondmen until this day. And the Arabs and the Turks took all the spoil and the jewels of silver and gold which were left there, and the battering-rams. And they returned unto the city with gladness, and gave thanks to God for all that he had done unto the men of the emperor before their eyes at that time.

1041. And the emperor went unto Bugia*, and a large ship of the men of Genoa was broken there; but there lacked not one man of her†. And he sailed thence, and went with the galleys unto the land of Spain. And the large ships came unto the coast of Italy with the soldiers. And the sea was moved‡ and its waves roared against them§; and the men feared exceedingly||. And the ships went every one her way, and they reeled to and fro and staggered like a drunken man¶; and also some of them were drowned in the sea, and went alive down into the grave**.

1042. And nothing was known in Italy for many days†† about the emperor's ships, for they ceased who passed on the paths of the sea‡‡. And I saw in my dream§§, and behold a galley

* בוגיא, a city on the coast, east from Algier, sometimes written Bujiah. † Num. xxxi. 49.

‡ Jer. xl. 7. § Jer. xxxi. 35. || Jonah i. 16.

¶ Ps. lvii. 27. ** Num. xvi. 30-33. †† Exod. ii. 23.

‡‡ The commercial intercourse was interrupted by the war. Comp. Jud. v. 6; Ps. viii. 8.

§§ Gen. xl. 9; xl. 17.

covered with gold and very beautiful came ashore. And at her head was an image of gold*, and the voice of high-sounding trumpets was in the midst of her, and many ran unto me that they also might see and hear whatever they would tell†. And it came to pass, when she arrived, that there was no voice‡; only that of a sick person, like a seething pot§, who was laid upon her. And one man guided her; and I awoke, and behold it was a dream||; and there was none that could interpret it unto me¶. Then said I, “Do not interpretations belong to God?***” What God is about to do in the uttermost part of the earth he revealeth unto his servant††. And I spake unto my lovers‡‡ at that time, saying, “This is nothing but a sign§§, that the emperor will return without success, and his ships will become manless, as his sword hath made women childless|||. And the rest of his men will come hither again¶¶, burned with hunger and devoured with burning heat*†. And ye are my witnesses*‡, that the Lord hath spoken it; I testify against you this day*§;” and it was so.

* Dan. ii. 32.

† Num. xxiii. 3.

‡ Comp. Deut. iv. 12; 1 Kings xviii. 26—29. § Jer. i. 13.

|| Gen. xli. 7.

¶ Gen. xli. 8.

** Gen. xl. 8.

†† Gen. xli. 28. Comp. Amos iii. 7.

‡‡ Lam. i. 19.

§§ Gen. xxviii. 17. |||| 1 Sam. xv. 33. ¶¶ Gen. xv. 13.

*† Deut. xxxii. 24.

*‡ Is. xliii. 10.

*§ Deut. viii. 19; Jer. xli. 19.

1043. And the residue of the ships which had escaped* came unto Genoa in the tenth month, and the soldiers who were upon them burned with hunger†; their visage was marred more than any man, and their form more than the sons of men‡. And they went in the streets of the city§, seeking bread||, naked, and were not ashamed¶, and had no covering in the cold**. And even after they came into an inhabited land††, the hand of the Lord was against them to destroy them‡‡, and much people of them died§§.

1044. And when the men of Genoa saw that the stars of the emperor had drawn back, and that time had worn his ornaments from him|||, they sent messengers unto the king of France to bow before him, and to speak unto him words of peace and truth¶¶, for all the goodness which he had done*† in giving corn unto them, and that he had suffered them to [rp] travel in his country*‡; and he accepted their persons*§, and spake to their heart saying, "When ye are free, I also will re-

* Exod. x. 5.

† Deut. xxxii. 24.

‡ Is. lii. 14.

§ Lam. ii. 11.

|| Lam. i. 11.

¶ Gen. ii. 25.

** Job. xxiv. 7.

†† Exod. xvi. 35.

‡‡ Deut. ii. 15.

§§ Num. xxi. 6.

||| Exod. xxxiii. 5.

¶¶ Esth. ix. 30.

*† Exod. xviii. 9.

*‡ Comp. Num. xx. 21; xxi. 23.

*§ 1 Sam. xxv. 35.

joice in your good, ye may trade in my land*, only ye shall not help the emperor. And if ye will do so, I will be unto you a shield and buckler†, and for a place of refuge and for a covert‡ all the days."

1045. And it grieved Andrea Doria. And it came to pass, when he returned, that he abode several days in his house, which was without the city. And he would not speak unto them until his fierce wrath had turned§; then he came into the city.

1046. And Granvella||, the counsellor of the emperor came to Genoa, and abode in the house of Andrea Doria many days. And also the marquess del Guasto; the viceroy, came to speak unto them, and abode there several days. And they were wroth about the messengers the Genoese had sent unto France, and spake judgment¶ with them about this matter. The Jews also who were in the dukedom of Milan came unto him, and he made with them a new covenant in the name of the emperor for eight years, and they gave a present unto him, and returned unto their own country.

1047. And he went to sea with two galleys, and

* Gen. xxxiv. 21.

† Ps. xxxv. 2.

‡ Is. iv. 6.

§ Gen. xxvii. 45: Exod. xxxii. 12.

|| נראן ויילה.

¶ 2 Kings xxv. 6, *in margin*.

the ships of the king pursued after them, but overtook them not. And he returned and abode in Genoa, until they had prepared six galleys; then he went his way to the land of Spain.

1048. In the year one thousand five hundred and forty-two, which is the year three hundred and two, Solyman sent his hosts unto the borders of Buda* to help his men. And Ferdinand and the cities of Germany also filled their hands, and went out against them with a strong hand. And they sent unto Ferdinand from Italy, mariners, that go down to the sea, to fight with them in ships upon the river Danube, lest provision should be given unto the Turks who were in Buda; but they could not do anything, for the men of the Turk came into the city before their arrival, and put into it corn and bread and meat in abundance; and seven thousand Turks and camels according as their soul desired†, and it grieved the uncircumcised much. And the Germans could not do anything in that year, but returned back with shame, for the Turks were marvellously helped‡ and fortified its walls, and their fame was noised throughout all the country§.

1049. And the king of France gathered together soldiers and weapons of war, and came into the

* בודואה.

† Deut. xii. 20; Job. xxiii. 13; Ps. x. 3; Ps. xxi. 2.

‡ 2 Chr. xxvi. 15.

§ Josh. vi. 27.

borders of Italy in the beginning of the barley harvest*. And the whole dukedom of Milan trembled much; and the heart of the people melted away and became as water†. And he sent three galleys to the east unto Solyman, saying, “Come thou also out, I pray thee, that we may fight against the emperor, and we will see what will become of his dreams.” But *Solyman* would not hearken unto him‡, for he feared lest peradventure mischief should befall him§; and they returned to their own country, even into France.

1051. In that year there were burned in Germany, many cities, both large and small, and their smoke went up toward heaven; and it was not known who had kindled the fire||. And they wrongfully accused the Jews and the shepherds, saying, “Ye have done this wicked thing;” and they chastised them, and afflicted their souls, so that *the Jews* confessed what never came into their hearts; and they burned them with fire.

1052. Then Bohemia rebelled against her king and her God, because of the wrath of the Lutherans; and in those days they drove out the Jews from the provinces of Bohemia and from Prague, the capital; and they removed from thence in waggons in the month Adar three hundred and two, after

* Ruth i. 22. † Josh. vii. 5. ‡ 2 Sam. xiii. 14—16.

§ Gen. xlii. 4. || Exod. xxii. 6.

the smaller date, and went into Poland and abode there. And many died on the road, and many were slain by the edge of the sword. And the Jews had dwelled in Prague from the day they were led captive from their own country until that day*. But the *Bohemians* turned to be their enemies†, saying, “They were among those that troubled us‡ in the wars of the Turks, and joined our enemies; and now let them get up out of the land§, and we shall see what will become of their dreams||.”

1053. And God took away their reproach¶, and Lienz was burned after they went out. And it was a great city, the perfection of beauty, the joy of the whole earth**, and only twenty houses were left in the midst thereof; and it was a lasting heap for many days††.

1054. And it came to pass, after some days, that King Ferdinand returned unto his former throne‡‡, and spake kindly concerning the Jews§§, to bring them back; and many returned to their country, and unto their kindred||| as at the first¶¶.

* Comp. Deut. xxix. 28. † Is. lxiii. 10. ‡ Jud. xi. 39.

§ Exod. i. 10. || Gen. xxvii. 20. ¶ Comp. Gen. xxx. 23.

** Lam. ii. 15. †† Deut. xiii. 16; Josh. viii. 28.

‡‡ וישׁוב על כסאו הראשׁון, *ad solium suum primum rediit*; i. e. He recovered his former power. Comp. Ps. xlv. 7; lxxxix. 4 (5); Chr. xvii. 14.

§§ 2 Kings xxv. 28; Comp. 1 King xxii. 13.

||| Gen. xii. 1.

¶¶ Is. i. 26.

1055. And there was a great earthquake in the borders of Florence on the twelfth day of the month of June, which is the fourth month. And all the people of the country feared much, and many fled from before the earthquake, according as they did in the days of Uzziah, king of Judah*. And great and mighty buildings and towers it cast to the ground†, and much people died. And in Scarparia‡, which is a little city, nigh unto Florence, about twenty houses only were left; but the rest of the city the earthquake cast down, and the pit swallowed them up alive§. This was the finger of God||; there was not such an earthquake in the borders of Florence since it became a nation¶.

1056. In Milan also was the hand of God in the month of July, which is the fifth month. And they kindled a fire in the gunpowder at the gate of Como, and there fell about twenty houses to the ground, and they that died in that slaughter were but few in number; and they carried them in their coats**, and all the city was moved. And they bewailed the burning which the Lord had kindled††.

* Zech. xiv. 5.

‡ סקארפאריה.

|| Exod. viii. 19.

** Lev. x. 5.

† Comp. Ezek. xxxviii. 19, 20.

§ Comp. Numb. xvi. 30, 32, 34.

¶ Exod. ix. 24.

†† Lev. x. 6.

1057. From the uttermost parts of the earth we have heard songs*, that in Anatolia also was a great earthquake; and it cast the city of Tiro† to the ground, and there was only a small number of all its inhabitants left; and the son of the Turk was not there, for he went out to war against the Sophi, king of Persia, and the Lord delivered him from that great earthquake.

1058. And the king of France did not hasten to go into Italy‡, but turned his face toward Perpignan, and the *French* besieged it many days, and they cast up trenches against it, but could not do anything, for the Spaniards had fortified themselves much; and the *French* returned unto their country with shame. And war was also in the border of Flanders at that time, for the duke of Cleves gathered together about twenty thousand men, and went to war against Antwerp; but could not fight against it, so he drew back. And there met him§ about four thousand men who were sent to their help; and they discomfited them with the edge of the sword||, and he returned unto his own country. And also in Navarra¶ they fought with the emperor in that year, but could not prevail against him, and returned unto their own country with shame.

* i. e. Vague reports. Comp. Is. xxiv. 16. † מיר.

‡ Jos. i. 13. § Gen. xxxii. 1. || Exod. xvii. 13.

¶ נאבארה.

1059. And the French, who were in Piedmont, went unto Cherasco in the darkness of the night, and took it on the twenty-fifth day of the month of August, which is the sixth month. And the soldiers they sent away free, but took the spoil of their horses, and of their money, and of all their substance*. And they went also unto Verruat†, and in the midst thereof were the Stradioti‡, who ride on swift beasts; and they took it, and took all their substance, but sent them out free. And they went also unto Ardison and Sillon§ in that night, and did unto the soldiers as they had done in Verrua; and it was unto the Spaniards for shame. And also unto Alba|| the men went, and about fifty men climbed up its walls. And when the watchmen of the walls heard it, they cried with a loud voice, and the soldiers and the inhabitants of the city awoke from their sleep. And they all arose [קית] as one man¶, and fell upon them, and the French could not stand before them and drew back; and those rash men who climbed upon its walls were slain by the edge of the sword; there remained not so much as one of them**.

* Num. xxxi. 9.

† וירואה.

‡ סטראדיוטי.

§ ארדיסון וזיליאן.

|| אלבה.

¶ Ezra iii. 1; Neh. viii. 1.

** Exod. xiv. 28.

1060. And the war was strong in Piedmont at that time, and the Marquess del Guasto gathered soldiers and went with the Spaniards against Villa Nuova d'Asti* ; and they besieged it, and cast up a trench against it, and battered its walls, and entered the city, and did therein according to their hearts' desire, and there was none to save from their hand. And the Spaniard went also unto the rest of the small cities† which belonged unto the French, and they gave them up to be plundered at that time. And the French, whom the king had in Piedmont, gathered themselves unto the fenced cities, and were quiet there, for so the king had commanded, until his return in peace to his house from the war of Perpignan. And they sent about three thousand Germans unto Spain in ships, for help at that time. But one of the ships was broken off Sardinia ; and the men came out on shore and went their way.

1061. And there came up very grievous locusts in Italy in that year, and covered the face of the whole country, so that the land was darkened‡, and the sun withdrew his shining§ ; and they went on their journey and reached Montferrat, and rested in Moncalvo|| on the sixth day¶ at eventide, on the

* ויילה נובה ראסטי.

† Esther ix. 12.

‡ Exod. x. 14, 15.

§ Comp. Joel ii. 10 ; iii. 15 (iv. 15).

|| מונקאלבו.

¶ i. e. Friday.

first day of the month of September three hundred and three, which is the seventh month, and tarried there all night because the sun was set*; and it came to pass, on the morrow, that they went on their high-way† on the coast of Piedmont like a strong people, set in battle array‡. On the road to Genoa also, great multitudes of them went, and tarried not on the road, except to dine at noon§, and went their way. And it came to pass, when they were in Piedmont, that they joined there a battle among themselves, and most of them fell slain to the ground in that battle, and the rest died in the winter days, and not one was left, and their stink went up toward heaven||. Tell ye your children of it¶, for no such thing hath been in Italy since it became a nation** ; nations were dismayed at them††.

1062. And about five hundred Italians who belonged unto the king, went to Monbarozzo‡‡ in those days, and they fortified themselves therein. And the Marquess del Guasto went thither with the Germans, and the Spaniards who were with him ; and they besieged it, and cast up a trench against

* Gen. xxviii. 11.

† 1 Sam. vi. 12.

‡ Joel ii. 5.

§ Gen. xliii. 16.

|| Joel. ii. 20.

¶ Joel i. 3.

** Exod. ix. 24.

†† Jer. x. 2.

it. And the city was broken up* on the sixteenth day of the month of November, which is the ninth month. And they came into the city, and discomfited them with the edge of the sword; there escaped only a small number from the sword of the Germans. And Frascaraf, the captain of their host, the marquess led unto Alessandria, and brought him down into the grave with blood‡.

1063. And the prince of Anguillara became hostile to the emperor, and went with his four galleys unto the king of France, who made him chief captain of his armament. And he went into the seas of Sardinia to take the spoil§. And he found ships of the men of Genoa, and took the Spaniards who were in them, and put their feet in the stocks. But unto the men of the ships he did not anything; they ate their portion which the king gave them||, for there was peace between them; and they went their way. And the ships of the emperor pursued after him, but could not reach him, so they returned unto their place.

1064. And the king sent again horsemen and footmen unto Italy, after he returned from Perpignan¶. And they went into Piedmont and took Castiglione**, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And they went unto Chieri, and besieged it, and

* 2 Kings xxv. 4. † פראשקארה. ‡ 1 Kings ii. 9.

§ Is. x. 6; Ezek. xxxviii. 12. || Gen. xlvii. 22.

¶ פירפיניאן.

** קאסטיליון.

cast up a trench against it in the month of December in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-two, which is the tenth month. And in the midst of it were about one thousand Spaniards, who were not dismayed at their faces*, for they were men wondered at†, and fortified its walls, and delivered it from their hand. Then the high-ways became unoccupied, and travellers in the way ceased in Montferrat‡, because of the fury of the oppressor at that time§. For the French hunted their steps, that they could not go||, and every one that was found was taken in their pits¶, and there was none to deliver from their hand**.

1065. And the Marquess del Guasto came unto Casale, for he feared, lest it should be taken in the net which they had laid privily; and he put a garrison in the midst thereof. And he abode there several days, until the wrath of the French was turned away from them; and he returned into the camp.

1066. And the war was strong between the king of England and the king of Scotland in that year. And it came to pass, one day, that they arrayed a battle, and there fell about fifty thousand men slain to the ground in that battle. And the slain in the camp of the king of England were many; and not-

* Jer. i. 17.

† Zach. iii. 8.

‡ Judges v. 6.

§ Is. li. 13.

|| Lam. iv. 18.

¶ Lam. iv. 20.

** Deut. xxxii. 39.

withstanding this, his wrath was not turned away; and he hardened his heart, and the Scotch were smitten, so that the king of England did great things.

1067. In those days the host of Ferdinand besieged Pesth, which is by Buda, on the other side of the river, and in the midst thereof were Turks. And they cast lots, saying, "Who shall go first to fight against them." And the lot fell upon the Germans, and upon the Hungarians, who fought against it with a strong hand, but could not do anything; and the rest returned with shame into the camp. For the Turks had fortified themselves, and fought against them with arrows and bows, and much people of them died. And the Italians also drew nigh unto the city, and climbed up their walls and fought in the midst of the city, and opened its gates. And the Turks fell upon them, and fought them with rams, and with arrows, and with swords, and with clubs, and with spears, and smote them, and discomfited them unto destruction*. And the rest fled out, for the Lord drave them, and gave them no strength to stand

* Num. xiv. 45. "Then the Amalekites came down, and the Canaanites which dwelt in that hill, and smote them, and discomfited them, even unto Hormah." חֲרָמָה (*devotio, locus desolatus*) *nomen proprium urbis regie Canaanitarum*. Num. xiv. 45; xxi. 3. Deut. i. 41. Jos. xii. 14; xix. 4, olim צִפֹּת Jud. i. 17. See *Gesenii Lexicon Manuale*, s. v. חֲרָמָה. Rabbi Joseph takes here the name חֲרָמָה in its appellative meaning, but this pun cannot be imitated in English.

before the pride of the Turks at that time. And the Germans went not to help them; and there the slain fell to the ground as the handful after the harvest-man, and none shall gather them*. And the rest returned to Italy, and their number was very few, not great†, for the hand of God had touched them‡.

1068. The soldiers also who rode on swift beasts, whom Solyman had sent, fought against the horsemen of Ferdinand on that day to ease the city of the battle§. And many fell slain to the ground at that time, and the rest returned unto their tents; for their soul became wearied because of murderers||. And the uncircumcised went away from the city and drew back with shame, and the land had rest.

1069. And the hosts of the king went out against Coni¶, which is in Piedmont, and besieged it, and cast up a bank against it. But the men of the city strengthened themselves, so they went away from it with shame, and the city had rest.

1070. And the emperor sent Granvella and his friend the second time unto Italy, who came with Andrea Doria unto Genoa in the tenth month. And Granvella went into Germany, because of the synod which the emperor had vowed unto them**.

* Jer. ix. 22 (21). † Is. xvi. 14. ‡ Job xix. 21.

§ Comp. Jonah i. 5. || Jer. iv. 31.

¶ קוניא, Caneum, a town in Piedmont at the foot of the Alps.

** Charles V. had promised to the electors a national council, to remedy ecclesiastical abuses in Germany.

And his friend went to Rome unto the pope, and communed with him there.

1071. And there was a great earthquake in Candia and round about it in those days. In Sicily also there was a great earthquake, such that there had been none like it* ; [ק"ט] and great and mighty buildings fell to the ground. And in Saragossa† and its suburbs, the earth moved exceedingly‡, and the dry land became *covered with* water, and much people died. Tell ye your children of it§.

1072. In those days the great scribe of King Francis offended against him||, and had dealings with the emperor, by the word of the queen the *emperor's* sister. And it was told unto the king, and when inquisition was made of the matter, he examined and found out¶ that he was one of them who troubled him**, and that he had discouraged also the hearts of the people from fighting against Perpignan†† when they arrived there. And he put him into prison, and the queen also he removed from him in those days.

1073. And it came to pass, in process of time‡‡, that Mohammed, the son of Abdallah, king of Tremezen, was content to lie with the wives of his

* Exod. ix. 24 ; x. 14.

† סַאֲרַאֲנֹחָה, Cæsarea Augusta, Cæsaraugusta.

‡ Is. xxiv. 19.

§ Joel. i. 3.

|| Gen. xl. 1.

¶ Esther ii. 22.

** Judges xi. 35.

‡‡ פֶּרְפִּינְיָאן.

†† Exod. ii. 23.

father. And they fled before him, and he abode in Algier several days; and Abdallah died, and Abdorrahman caused the youngest son of the king to reign, who was the son of his daughter; and set the crown royal upon his head*. And when Mohammed heard that his father was dead, he brought the Turks who were at Algier into the city. And his youngest brother fled before him unto Oran, and abode there. And Abdorrahman, his mother's father, went into the land of Spain and bowed himself before the king to the ground, and wept, and made supplication unto him†; and *Charles* accepted his person at that time. And he wrote unto the Prince Martin who was at Oran, saying, "These men are peaceable with us‡; and now go with them, and bring them back unto the cities of their inheritance, with the Spaniards who are there with thee." And Prince Martin went with them, and the Arabs went out against them, and the Spaniards were smitten and fell at Tibra§ before their enemies, slain by the sword. And the rest fled for their lives, and returned with the young king and with the father of his mother unto Oran with shame. And Prince Martin demanded of them the money which he had laid out in the journey, and they were not able to

* Esther vi. 8.

† Hos. xii. 4 (5).

‡ Gen. xxxiv. 21.

§ טיברה.

give him any thing at that time. And his wrath was kindled against the old man, and he delivered him into the hand of Mohammed, king of Tremezen, and the young king remained with him there. And King Mohammed tortured him daily, to know the hidden treasures of gold, and he died by the hands of those who sought after his soul under the scourge. Then King Mohammed made peace with the king of Spain, and promised to bring eight thousand pieces of gold annually into the treasury of the king. And Mohammed placed officers in the gates of Oran to take the tribute from the hand of the Arabs, who came into Oran to give it unto the king.

1074. And Muley Mohammed had a second brother, whose name was Achmed; and he put him in ward into the prison-house for many days. And Kayid Mansur* was zealous for the son of his sister, and wrote unto Prince Martin, who was in Oran, saying, "Come with the men who are with thee unto Tremezen, and promise also to bring the young king with thee; and the city shall be given into thy hand." And the thing was pleasing in his sight, and he gathered about twelve thousand Spaniards and went unto Tremezen;

* קאיד מאנצור. We find in Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles several names beginning with the syllable קאיד, which is probably the Arabic قَائِد explained by Golius: Gubernator præfectus, unde Hispanicum *alcayde*.

and also a mixed multitude* of Arabs went with them†, and the young king also he brought with him thither. And the citizens feared, and sent men to meet him with the keys of the city in their hands. And the Spaniards drew nigh unto the city; and the king Mohammed fled before them, and gave it up to be plundered at that time. And Mansur brake the brazen gates and brought out Achmed, his sister's son, from the prison-house, and both fled; Mansur went with the king, and Achmed went another way, and his life was unto him a prey. And the king knew not that Mansur had brought this evil upon him. And the Spaniards made the youth who was with them king, and gave him Lucian, the Genoese‡, to be leader; and they returned unto Oran.

1075. And the Jews also who were there in multitudes were given up to be plundered at that time, and they sold them as bondmen and handmaidens§, in the month Adar three hundred and three according to the smaller date, into the four corners of the earth. Some of them were set at liberty at Oran, and some at Fez, and some of them went captive before the oppressor|| into the land of Spain; and they changed their glory in the countries

* Exod. xii. 38.

† i. e. With the king's party.

‡ לוקן הגנובים.

§ Esth. vii. 4.

|| Lam. i. 5.

of their enemies*. Behold, O Lord, and consider!†

1076. And Kayid Isa† who was at Mostaghanim§ went out to meet King Mohammed, when he fled before his brother, and about two thousand men ran before him. And he bowed himself before the king to the ground, and spake unto his heart, and made him ride upon a horse, and led him unto Benirashid||, and they abode there. And the Prince Martin went to fight against Mostaghanim at that time. And Kayid Isa spoiled the city of Mozigran¶, and gathered together all its men, and brought them unto Mostaghanim at that time; and they fortified themselves therein. And the Spaniards came unto Mozigran, and behold, there was no man there, neither voice of man**, and the men marvelled much††. And Kayid Isa sent messengers unto the viceroy who was at Algier, saying, “Go out and fight against the uncircumcised, and I will deliver up unto thee the city and the fulness thereof‡‡.” And the thing was pleasing in his sight, and he sent five galleys by

* i. e. They professed the religion of their persecutors.

† Lam. ii. 20.

‡ קאיד עישה. عيسى is the Arabic name for Jesus, which name is of frequent occurrence among them.

§ מוצטינאניה. || בניראשית. ¶ מוויגראן, Masagan.

** 2 Kings vii. 10.

†† Comp. Gen. xliii. 33.

‡‡ Comp. Amos vi. 8.

Kayid Mohammed, and among the Spaniards who were in Mozigran they slew a great slaughter. And Kaid Isa also went out against them; and the war was against them both by sea and by land, and the Spaniards drew back. And Kaid Mansur, who was with the king Mohammed, went out also into the field with a strong hand, and remained between the camp of Kaid Isa and between the camp of the uncircumcised, so that the one came not near the other all the night*. And Isa was determined to fight, but Mansur would not hearken unto him, for he was a froward man†. And unto Prince Martin he sent, saying, “ Depart from us, for evil is determined against thee‡”. And the uncircumcised fled all that night, and the men of the galleys fired guns upon them, and many fell to the ground. And they left the battering-rams⁴ in their haste, they looked not behind, and returned unto Oran with shame.

1077. Then Mostaghanim was given into the hand of the Turks by the hand of Mohammed, and it belongeth unto them until this day.

1078. And Kaid Isa went and bowed himself before the king Mohammed unto the ground, and gave presents unto the Arabs; and they went unto Tremezen and took it, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And the young king fled

* Exod. xiv. 20. † Comp. Prov. xvi. 28. ‡ Esther vii. 7.

before them, and lived in Fez many days. And Lucian, the Genoese, was taken alive; and they set a watch over him.

1079. And Kaid Mansur feared for his life, and fled from his master and went to Oran. And he sent and brought Achmed, the son of his sister, the brother of the king Mohammed, unto Oran; and both abode together in Oran.

1080. And the viceroy who was in Algier went to fight against Tremezen; and they gave unto him silver and gold in abundance, and Lucian the Genoese, that he should return from thence; and he was entreated of them, and returned unto Algier.

1081. And King Francis sent again ships unto Turkey, unto Solyman the Turk, to bring Barbarossa with them to his help. And Solyman honored them very much, and gave unto them all they asked.

1082. And the Spaniards sought to come unto Turin with subtlety in the month Adar, three hundred and three, according to the smaller date, which is the year one thousand five hundred and forty-three. And they made ready six waggons [כב] covered with straw, and in the midst thereof were soldiers and weapons of war; and he sent them unto Turin as at other times, to sell straw. And they came into the city, and an ambush went behind them; and the men came forth when they were in the gate of the city, and fought against

the watchmen and slew some of them suddenly with the edge of the sword, for they trusted in the liers-in-wait*. But the liers-in-wait delayed to come; and the men of the city, even the men of Turin, compassed about the entering-in of the gate†, and all the city was moved about them‡. Then they fought with them, and shut the iron gates; but the greater part of them were left without, and fled for their lives. Some also of those who were within went out under the gate, and them who hastened not to flee, they slew with the edge of the sword at that time. And the Spaniards turned back, and tarried not, because the§ Lord drave them; only Alessandro Majo||, a man of Milan, was left in the city, and he walked in its streets as a roaring lion¶, with his sword drawn in his hand; and all the people from every quarter^ compassed him about and trod him down with ease**, and he was taken in their pits.

1083. Let this month be solitary, let it not come into the number of the months††! for on the eighth of the month, three sons of Belial came into the house of Moses the priest, my brother-in-law, at Piave, within the borders of Ferrara. While

* Jud. xx. 36. † Jud. ix. 44. ‡ Ruth i. 19.

§ Josh. xxiv. 18. || אליסאנדרו מאי.

¶ Ps. xxii. 13; Ps. xxviii. 13; Is. xxxi. 4; Est. xxxii. 25.

** Jud. xx. 43. †† Job iii. 6, 7.

he was secure at noon, when he was out, those sons of Belial came into the house; and they shut the door, and slew Anna his wife, Judith his daughter, and Samuel and Shem-Tob, his sons, with the edge of the sword; their eyes had no compassion upon them. Also Samuel, a Frenchman, the servant, they slew, beside the rest of them that were slain*; and they also put forth their hand unto the spoil: and there was none to deliver from their hands. A day of desolation and horror was that day: let them curse it that curse the day†; my heart, my heart *mourneth* over their slain! but it shall be, that whatsoever shall come to pass of God, I will praise his word‡, I will sing of mercy and judgment§; unto my God I will make supplication||. And Moses, the son of Rabbi Abraham the priest, and all the house of his father, wept over the overthrow with which the Lord had overthrown them¶. And they bore them away in their garments, and buried them at Bologna; and all the people trembled much, and lifted up their voices and wept.

1084. And it came to pass, after some days, that they put one of those men into ward. And the duke commanded, and they chastised

* Num. xxxi. 8.

† Job. iii. 8.

‡ Ps. lvi. 4.

§ Ps. ci. 1.

|| Ps. xxx. 9.

¶ Comp. Deut. xxix. 23.

him with rods in the streets of Ferrara, and took his head from off him; and the duke's wrath was pacified*.

1085. And the duke of Gueldres, that is the duke of Cleves, was confederate with the king of France all that time. And Maria, that is, Miriam†, the sister of the emperor, gathered soldiers together to war against him. And he marched out against her with a mighty hand. And they set the battle in array on the borders of Flanders, on the nineteenth day of the month Nisan†, on the sabbath-day. And the horsemen of the duke were smitten before them at the first; and many fell slain to the ground and the rest fled: they could not stand against the fierceness of the battering-rams, and against the guns which they fired upon them; and the footmen who were with him filled their hands[‡], and slew among the men of the queen a slaughter with the sword, and took the battering-rams from their hand. And there came into the camp of

* Esth. vii. 10.

† Rabbi Joseph observes that Maria is a corruption of מרים.

‡ This month was anciently called אֲבִיב, and begins, according to the rabbins, with the first new moon in March; but Michaelis has proved that אֲבִיב, according to Moses and Josephus, began with the first new moon in April. See J. D. Michaelis, *Commentatio de Mensibus Hebræorum; ejusdem Commentationes, Bremæ*, 1769, p. 16. Comp. *Calendarium Palæstinæ*, and *A Dissertation on the Hebrew Months, from the Latin of J. D. Michaelis, by W. Carpenter*, 1825.

the duke at the time that they were fighting, about one thousand horse and four thousand footmen to help ; and they were for eyes unto them. And the men of the queen were smitten before them, and turned their back ; and they pursued after them, and many fell to the ground in that battle, and the rest fled unto the mountains, and their lives were unto them a prey ; only those that were feeble behind them they took alive. And they returned from pursuing after them and spoiled their camp ; and the duke seized the battering-rams and went away unto his own country.

1086. And when the emperor heard the report of his sister, he determined to go into Italy ; and Andrea Doria went to fetch him at that time. And when the pope Paul heard of it, he desired to speak with him, and turned his face towards Lombardy and came unto Ferrara ; and the duke and his nobles honored him : and his allowance was a perpetual allowance given him of the duke all the days which they remained there, he and his cardinals ; and they went out from him in peace. And Paul abode in those cities many days.

1087. And it was told in Algier, saying, “The emperor has embarked on the sea ;” and they said, “ This is a time to laugh, for we shall take those who are feeble behind him ;” and the ships of Algier went into the sea of Spain. And the Lord

gave into their hand one large ship and four small ones, and they brought them unto Algier with gladness; and the emperor commanded, and they pursued after them, but reached them not; and the pursuers returned back.

1088. And the emperor came unto Genoa on the fifteenth day of the month of May three hundred and three, after the small date, and the earth was rent with the sound* of the battering-rams. And many of the nobles of Italy went thither to speak unto him, and he accepted their persons at that time. And he journeyed thence on the second day of the month of June, on the sabbath-day; and he went on his journey on the side of Pavia, for he hastened to go.

1089. And the king of Tunis, the Ishmaelite, would come to bow before the emperor when he came unto Genoa, and he went also to sea with ships at that time; and he came unto Palermo, which is in Sicily, and the nobles of the city and the viceroy who was there honored him much. And he hastened not to come, because of the ships of France; and he returned back unto Naples, and the nobles of that city honored him much; and he abode there many days. And he gave order, and they made for him galleys to return unto his own country.

* 1 Kings ii. 30.

1090. And when the Spaniards who were in Piedmont, heard that the king had mustered his soldiers to send them their money, they went into the field with a strong hand. And the French went out against them, and defeated them with the edge of the sword. And Cesare di Napoli fled on foot, he and the rest who were with him, and many fell into the river Dora* in their haste, for evil was determined against them. And the French returned from pursuing after them, and went unto Turin with gladness. And the emperor stood in Cremona at that time.

1091. And Nizza is a great city on the coast of the sea on the borders of Provence, and it belongeth to the duke of Savoy until this day. And the governor who was over the fortress sent unto the officers of the king's ships with subtlety, saying, "Make haste and come to me, and I will deliver the fortress into your hand: wherefore do ye tarry?" And they believed him, and sent four galleys carrying soldiers into the sea of Nizza at that time. And he sent unto Andrea Doria, saying, "Thus I have done: come, delay not, for God has delivered them into our hand." And Andrea Doria delayed not; and he went thither with twenty ships and divided them into two

bands, and commanded the first, saying, “ Go ye to the west side, then return, and we will take them alive in the midst of us;” and they did so. And it came to pass, toward the morning of the seventeenth day of the fourth month, that the French lifted up their eyes toward the coast of Marseille, and behold, there were ships coming; but they were not terrified before them, for they knew not that evil was determined against them. And the ships drew nigh, and they knew them, and cried out, “ Treason! Treason!* The enemy has sold us:” and they hastened to flee, and went into the port of Antibes and went on shore, and left the ships as they were, and pursued after them and took them, as a man taketh the tip of the ear†. And of the French, not one man was taken [קכא] in their pits, except the prince of Mataloni‡, who was wounded in his thigh, and hastened not to flee. And the half of the captives the French left in their haste, and brought them unto Genoa; and it grieved the lords of Nizza much.

1092. Then came Barbarossa, the chief captain of Solyman’s host, into the sea of Calabria, and with him one hundred and fifty galleys; and none

* 2 Kings xi. 14.

† Amos iii. 12.

‡ מאטאלון. Mataloni (in Latin, Magdelonum), a small town five leagues north east of Naples, with the title of duchy.

stumbled in his camp*. And they burned Reggio, which is situated opposite to Messina, and took the spoil thereof; and the uncircumcised were terrified before them. The posts went out in haste, and came unto Genoa on the fifteenth day of the fourth month. And they were sore afraid, and fortified the city, and soldiers came into the midst thereof, for the fear of him fell upon them. And Barbarossa drew nigh by command of King Francis, and came into the sea of Provence; and his fame went through the whole world. And they did no harm to the men of Genoa; for so the king had commanded, because there was peace between them.

1093. And Andrea Doria went unto Spain by command of the emperor; for he feared, lest the *men of Barbarossa* should go thither before it was known, to slay the mother with the children.

1094. In the same year, when Solyman went to fight against Vienna, he fought hard against Istrigonia†; and the city was besieged. And they cast up banks against it, and battered its walls, and the city was broken up; and they slew all the males that were therein with the edge of the sword; and also of the Turks many fell slain to the ground in that battle. And he turned and went unto Alba Royal‡, and fought against it

* No feeble person was in this armament.

† Gran.

‡ Stuhlweissenburg.

also, and there was none to save it; and they did there also as they had done in Istrigonia, only that of the women and the children they left some gleanings, for they had compassion upon them. And Alba Royal was a city and a mother in Hungaria in former times; and in it they set the royal crown upon the head of their king, on the day when he was anointed. And on this day it fell into the hand of the enemy, for their sin was not felt until now. The Lord is the God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed*.

1095. And Solyman sent a great ship unto Algier, and with her seven hundred Turks, who drew the sword. And the knights of Malta who first lived at Rhodes met with her, and took her, and brought her unto their own country. And many were slain by the edge of the sword in that battle.

1096. And the emperor journeyed from Cremona and went unto Boschi†; and Paul also went thither, and spoke with him. And the emperor obtained nothing of all that he asked for; and they parted the one from the other. The duke of Florence also went thither, and asked of him the fortresses; and the emperor gave them unto him.

† 1 Sam. ii. 3.

† לבושי, probably the ancient Mesia-Sylvia in the Milanese, on the river Orbc.

And the emperor journeyed thence, and went unto Trent ; he delayed not to go thither, for he had heard the report of his sister.

1097. And the duke of Cleves gathered together his soldiers the second time ; and Maria the queen went out against him with much people and with a strong hand. And it came to pass that day, that they set the battle in array there, and the men of the duke were smitten, and many of them fell to the ground ; and the rest fled, and left the battering-rams, for they hastened to flee : and the war was strong in the borders of Flanders in those days.

1098. And Andisano* was a small city in the borders of Piedmont, and its walls were fortified ; and no soldiers came in there ; and they remain upon their ward until this day. And when they saw that the emperor hastened to depart, and that he turned not to the war of Piedmont, they were sore afraid, and their heart melted and became like water ; and they said, “ Now shall the French lick up all that are round about us†, and we shall die of hunger ; how long shall this war be a stumbling-block unto us ? ” And it came to pass, in the fifth month, which is the month Abib, that they put forth their hand unto the French, and brought them into the city, for their fear fell

* אנדישאנו.

† Num. xxii. 4.

upon them ; and when the Spaniards heard of it they went thither and besieged it, and cast up trenches against it. And they were not terrified before them ; for it was a small city whose walls were fortified. And it came to pass while they were fighting, that the French gathered themselves together, and came swiftly as the eagle flieth, and fell upon them suddenly. And the Spaniards drew back before them, and many fell slain to the ground, and the rest fled for their lives ; and the French came into the city and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And it became as thorns in the sides of the men of the emperor at that time. And it came to pass after some days, that they returned and fought against it and took it ; and all the males that were therein they slew with the edge of the sword : they left no gleanings.

1099. And the ships of Solyman, and the ships of King Francis, came into the haven of Villa Franca on the fifth day of the month of August, and remained on the coast of the sea ; and the French and the Turks went on shore ; and the men of the city fled and cared not for their vessels, for they hastened to flee. And they came into the city and took all the spoil thereof, and burned the city with fire, and the smoke of it went up toward heaven. And those that were feeble behind were

destroyed of them on that day; and there was none to deliver them out of their hand. And all the soldiers journeyed thence and encamped against Nizza, and battered its walls many days, and fought against it daily; and the city was besieged, and there was none to deliver, and they became weary of their lives. And when the men of the city saw that evil was determined against them, they said, “It is better for us to serve the king, than to die by the sword or by pestilence.” And they chose Gaspar Cais*, and sent him unto the captains of the host to proclaim peace unto them. And the captains of the king accepted the person of the man and honored him, and made a covenant with him. And the city was delivered into their hand on the twenty-third day of the month of August, in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-three; and they put a garrison in the midst thereof. And the captains of the king said unto him, “Abide with us, and we will show thee kindness; for it is better for thee to serve our king than to serve the duke and his sons, who perish with hunger. For our king will speak well of a man discreet and wise† as thou art this day; and thou wilt be unto us for eyes:’ and they prevailed upon him with much entreaty;

* גאספאר קאײס.

† Gen. xli. 33. 39.

and he hearkened unto them. And he served the king from that day forward ; and it grieved the men of the duke much, and they gave him two cities which were nigh unto Nizza ; and they exalted him greatly to his own hurt. And it came to pass, when they came into the city, that the Turks and the king's servants brought the guns and the rams nigh unto the fort, and battered its walls many days.

1100. And the duke of Savoy and the marquess del Guasto, the viceroy of the emperor, gathered about ten thousand men, beside the horses, and went thither to deliver it out of their hand. In that month came Andrea Doria from Spain, and thirty galleys with him. And there came with him about one thousand five hundred Spaniards. And he also sent them thither to help the duke, as he was commanded by the emperor : let his glory be exalted !

1101. And Barbarossa heard thereof, and the nobles of the king heard thereof, and returned unto the ships on the ninth day of September, which is the eleventh day of the month Tishri, three hundred and four ; and they went away from the city, and went to the coast of Provence ; and Barbarossa remained there until the month Abib : and many of his people died there through sicknesses in those days. [קכב]

1102. And the Lord drave the sea with a strong east wind*, and four of the ships which Andrea Doria had sent were broken† near Villa Franca, on the sixteenth day of the month Tishri, and there died of them about eighty men.

1103. And the marquess and his men went unto Nizza and spake to the hearts of the men of the city; and he put soldiers therein, who fortified themselves there. And it came to pass, when he returned, that he besieged Mondovi, and cast up trenches against it. And the Lord put faintness into their hearts‡, and they went out unto them for peace. And he made a covenant with them, and set a garrison in the midst thereof.

1104. And Gaspar Cais went up against Isa, which is upon the mountain, and with him about two thousand Turks. And he spake to the hearts of the men of the city, saying, “Is it not better to deliver the city into our hand, than that ye should be for a scorn among the nations? And now, come ye out unto me, and ye shall eat the good of your land§; and if not, know ye, that evil is before you||.” And the men of the city came out unto him and gave the city into his hand, and he made a covenant with them. And he sent the Turks back; and Gaspar and twelve men with him

* Comp. Exod. x. 13; xiv. 21.

† 1 Kings xxii. 48.

‡ Lev. xxvi. 36.

§ Is. i. 19.

|| Exod. x. 10.

were left, for he trusted them. And it came to pass, after some days, that the men of the city made a conspiracy against him, and delivered him into the hand of the duke who set a watch over him. And the duke gave order, to cut off his head from him; for so shall the days of the rebellious be fulfilled*. Therefore I said, “Woe unto him that increaseth that which is not his†.”

1104. And the emperor drew nigh unto the country of Flanders, and made for himself chariots and horsemen, and about thirty thousand men to run before him‡, and his sister Maria went out to meet him, and embraced him, and fell upon his neck and kissed him§, and entreated him much. And the emperor said unto her, “Fear not||: am I not better unto thee than seven sons?¶” And she consoled herself; and they came into the house and rejoiced together at that time.

1105. And the hosts of the emperor, with the hosts of Maria, fought against the duke of Cleves and against his men. And the men of the duke gathered themselves into the fenced cities, for they were troubled at their presence**, and the hosts of

* Esther ii. 12.

† Hab. ii. 6.

‡ 2 Sam. xv. 1.

§ Gen. xxxiii. 4.

|| Gen. xxxii. 17. 1 Sam. iv. 20.

¶ 1 Sam. i. 8. Ruth iv. 15.

** Gen. xlv. 3.

the emperor encamped against Dura*, and besieged it, and cast up trenches against it, and took it on the twenty-fourth day of the month of August one thousand five hundred and forty-three; and all the males that were therein they slew with the edge of the sword. And the women were ravished, and went into captivity; and they burned the city with fire, and its smoke went up toward heaven. And the terror of God was upon all the fenced cities which were round about it; and they said, “It had been better for us to serve the emperor† than that we should become a reproach among the nations‡.” And they asked peace of the emperor, and opened the gates unto him, so he ruled over the treasures of gold; and his fame was noised throughout all the country§.

1106. And the nobles of Germany said unto the duke, “How long shall these wars be a snare? Go out unto the emperor, for he is a merciful man; knowest thou not yet, that this country is destroyed||, and that the guilt will be upon thee?” And he hearkened unto them, and went unto him, and bowed himself unto the ground and said, “I have sinned: forgive, I pray thee,

* דורא. *Düren*, a town near Jülich, taken by Charles V. 1543.

† Exod. xiv. 12.

‡ Gen. xxxv. 5.

§ Jos. vi. 27.

|| Exod. x. 7.

my transgression according unto the greatness of thy mercy*, for as the man is, so is his strength†.” And the emperor accepted the person of the duke, and spake kindly unto him, and restored him unto his former station‡, except that he took the third part of his dukedom from his hand, and the *duke* went out from him in peace.

1107. And the emperor was content to make war against the cities of King Francis; and he turned his face toward Picardy at that time. And France was exceedingly grieved§; and the king went out against him with much people, and with a strong hand.

1108. And it came to pass, when the king of Tunis was at Naples, that his son exalted himself, saying, “I will be king.” And he slew the governor who was in the fortress, whom his father had left there; and the viceroy and two of his father’s servants and his brethren fled unto Goletta, where the Spaniards were, who saved their lives. And he spake to the hearts of the men of the city, saying, “My father died for the iniquity of his covetousness|| in Italy? And I am the beginning of his strength, the right of the

* Num. xvi. 19.

† Judg. viii. 21.

‡ Comp. Gen. xl. 21.

§ Esth. iv. 4.

|| Is. lvii. 17; i. e. Morally and politically perished.

kingdom is mine*, therefore, now, be ye not grieved†, for all this is from the Lord; who will say unto him, ‘What doest thou?‡’ I will be a father unto you§, and ye shall be my sons, only in the throne will I be greater than you||; ye shall be called by my name¶ : and it shall come to pass, that when we shall have driven out the uncircumcised who are in Goletta, we will serve our God with one consent**, and every one shall go unto his place in peace††.” And his words were pleasing in their sight, and they made him king over them, and said, “Let the king live‡‡!” And the decree was given at Tunis§§ by the king’s commandment, that there should be no injury done either to man or woman|||; and the city had rest, and all the people of the country rejoiced greatly. And in the morning-watch they made void the statute, they transgressed the covenant, and fought against Goletta; so Goletta was besieged. And the governor of Goletta wrote unto the king who was at Naples, and unto the viceroy of the emperor the whole matter; and

* Deut. xxi. 17.

† Gen. xlv. 5.

‡ Job. ix. 12.

§ Jer. xxxi. 9.

|| Gen. xli. 40.

¶ Is. iv. 6.

** Zeph. iii. 9.

†† Ex. xviii. 23.

‡‡ i. e. God save the king.

§§ Est. iii. 19.

||| 2 Sam. vi. 19. 2 Chr. xv. 13.

the king trembled much, and his anger burned in him*.

1109. And he wrote unto the great men of the city, saying, “ I am yet alive ; and as my strength was when I was with you, even so is my strength now to serve my God† : as I am, so are ye this day. And now, though ye sorely longed for my son‡, yet wherefore have ye troubled me, saying, ‘ The king has changed his glory§ in the land of the uncircumcised for that which doth not profit||.’ I will make supplication unto my God, that he may cut off all flattering lips¶, and he shall reward every man according to his ways and according to the fruit of his doings**.” And they brought back word unto him††, saying, “ Let our lord, the king, come diligently unto us in peace ; and whoever he be that doth rebel against thy commandments, and will not hearken unto thy words, he shall be put to death‡‡. Only take heed that thou bring not any of the uncircumcised hither, for our soul is weary of them ; they are our enemies from the birth, from the womb, and from the conception.”

* Esther i. 12.

† Jos. xiv. 11.

‡ Gen. xxxi. 30.

§ i. e. Has changed his religion.

|| Jer. ii. 11.

¶ Ps. xii. 3.

** Jer. xvii. 10.

†† Num. xiii. 26.

‡‡ Jos. i. 18.

1110. And he hearkened not unto them, for he feared for his life, and believed them not. And he hired at Naples about three thousand footmen, and went down to the sea in ships in the month of October, three hundred and four, after the smaller date, and went unto his country. And they went on shore nigh unto Goletta with joyfulness and gladness of heart*, and he pitched his tent beyond the tower of Goletta†, and remained there. And the Arabs went out unto him, and bowed down before him unto the ground, and asked of him, “Is it well with thee?” and he answered, “It is well‡.” And he related to them all his honor in Naples, and the covenant which he had made with the viceroy of the emperor; so they rejoiced with him there. And they said unto him, “The king shall surely come into the cities tomorrow about this time; but thou shalt not bring with thee these uncircumcised, for our soul is embittered against them, because of all the evil which they have done unto us from the day we knew them.” And he lodged that night§ in Goletta with the governor of the emperor, and they ate and became drunken with him, and their heart was merry with wine||.

* Deut. xxviii. 47.

† Gen.*xxxv. 21.

‡ 2 Kings iv. 26.

§ Gen. xxx. 21 (Heb. 23).

|| Gen. xliii. 31.

1111. When the morning was light*, the king did not turn his heart unto the words of the Ishmaelites, but turned his face towards Tunis, he and the uncircumcised who were with him. He brought also in small ships some of the soldiers and some of the battering-rams, who went their way, going on still towards the south†. The king and his men and the soldiers went by land, and the small ships alongside upon the sea; and they drew nigh unto the city, and the men of the city feared greatly; fear took hold upon them, and pain as of a woman in travail‡. And they said, “We be all dead men§, for he has sold us into the hand of our enemies the second time, and the city of Tunis was perplexed||.” [קכג]

1112. And the son of the king spake to their heart the second time, saying, “Are not these the words which I spake unto you yesterday and the day before, My father, this son of Belial, will surely change his glory for that which doth not profit? And also he will take of your sons and of your daughters, and will rule over your treasures, and will subdue your young men¶, and ye shall not be able to stand before him**, for he hath sold

* Gen. xliv. 3.

† Gen. xii. 9.

‡ Ps. xlviii. 6.

§ Ex. xii. 33.

|| Est. iii. 15.

¶ Comp. 1 Sam. viii. 11—17.

** Lev. xxvi. 37.

us into the hand of our enemies; may the Lord behold and judge*. And now, is it not better to fight for our people, and for the cities of our God, against these uncircumcised, lest they mock us, and we be a reproach among the nations? Let us go out unto them into the field, and we will make war against them, and the Lord will do what is pleasing in his sight, for the battle is the Lord's†." Then fled Tunis; the inhabitants of Carthage gathered themselves together, and went out to the field and arrayed a battle there; and the earth was rent at their noise. And the Lord put faintness into the hearts‡ of the king's camp, and they fled back, and fell into the valley of Goletta; and the valley was full of water, and there was slime on all its banks. And also the king and the horsemen who were with him fled thither; and they pursued them and overtook them, for they could not flee. And they slew many with the edge of the sword, and the king, and the treasurer who was with him, and the Jew who was over the king's work, were taken alive. And the chief of the host which he brought with him they slew with the sword, and cut his head from off him, and sent it into the city. And

* Exod. v. 21.

† 1 Sam. xvii. 47.

‡ Lev. xxvi. 36.

the residue of those that escaped* went unto Goletta by sea and by land. And they that died in the slaughter were about two thousand three hundred men; but of the Ishmaelites there died only few in number.

1113. And they brought the king into the city, and all the city was moved about him, saying, “He is a son of death†.” And his son went out to meet him, and he alighted from off the horse and made him to ride, for his bowels did yearn upon him‡, and they led him into the fortress and set a watch over him. And his son would not kill him, but put out his eyes§, to take away their murmurings|| from him; and he nourished his old age there¶. And it came to pass after some days, that he said unto his son, “Thou shalt not be established, nor thy kingdom**, unless‡ thou bring out the treasurer and the Jew from the prison-house; and by their word thou shalt rule our houses, for they dealt faithfully††.” And he hearkened unto the voice of his father, and they brought them hastily out of the dungeon‡‡, and

* Ex. x. 5. † 1 Sam. xx. 31; i. e. He will surely die.

‡ Gen. xliii. 30. § 2 Kings xxv. 7. Jer. xxxix. 7.

|| Num. xvii. 10. (Heb. 25). ¶ Comp. Ruth. iv. 15.

** 1 Sam. xxi. 31.

†† 2 Kings xii. 15 (Heb. 16); xxii. 7.

‡‡ Gen. xli. 14.

every man returned unto his possession* as at first; and the land had rest. And he said, moreover, unto his son, “Thou knowest what the Turks have done unto us all my life long unto this day†. Now, therefore, my son, obey my voice:‡ thou shalt not consent nor hearken unto them§, for they are bloody and deceitful men||; and according as they have done unto me, they will do unto thee; and thou shalt have none to deliver thee from their hand. If it be so, where are now thy words with the emperor and his men, for they are wonderful men; and let thy government be firmly established.”

1114. And he hearkened unto his father in this thing also; and sent unto the governor of Gulletta, saying, “Make a covenant with us. Let thy men come into the city, and trade therein¶, so that my men may go thither securely; and we will become one people**, for my people are as thy people this day††; and I will be a servant unto the emperor, bringing presents all the days.” And he answered, saying, “Your murmurings are not against me‡‡, I will make known these things

* Lev. xxv. 10 and 13.

† Gen. xlviii. 15.

‡ Gen. xxvii. 8.

§ Deut. xiii. 8 (Heb. 9).

|| Ps. lv. 23 (Heb. 24).

¶ Gen. xxxiv. 21.

** Gen. xxxiv. 16.

†† 1 Kings xxii. 4.

‡‡ Exod. xvi. 8.

unto the emperor, and according as he shall answer me, I will do."

1115. And Andrea Doria sent his ships unto Sardinia with the Spaniards whom he had brought; and he left them there. And they took a galley as they returned, and in her were about sixty Turks, and they brought her unto Genoa with joy. And he sent again eighteen galleys unto Corsica, to see whether they could find Turks there: and they found some; but they were afraid of them and returned back, for Barbarossa filled his hand, to send also some hither and thither. He sent also unto Catalonia, and the Lord delivered into his hands Roses*; and Palamos† they burned with fire; and they found there a large galley, and took her and brought her unto their own country. And it came to pass, when they returned, that they found another large ship, and took it, and ate the spoil of their enemies‡ at that time.

1116. In those days when the emperor fought against France, Francis went with the duke of Ferrara to search out the country§, to find out the resting place|| of the host of the emperor; and the

* רוסיס. *Rhoda*, a fortified town in Catalonia, on the shore of the Mediterranean.

† פאלאמוס, a town in Catalonia, on the shore of the Mediterranean.

‡ Deut. xx. 14.

§ Josh. ii. 3.

|| Num. x. 33.

French made an ambush, and went against them in the road, and took them alive and led them unto the king; and he rejoiced in his heart and set a watch over them.

1117. And it came to pass, when the emperor was fighting against Landreci, the fenced city, which the king had on the borders, that the king went out against him with a strong hand. And the emperor was grieved and afraid, and gathered his host against him, and remained upon his ward. And Francis drew nigh, and put soldiers into the midst of it with every thing that his soul wished; and drew back. And when the emperor saw that he had no power in his hand, he departed from the city, and the land had rest; and there died of the men of the emperor in that war much people.

1118. Then the men of Genoa sent messengers unto the king of France to find favor in his sight, but they returned back without success, because they halted between two opinions*; for they were a very froward generation†.

1119. And the marquess del Guasto went, after the walls of Mondovi came down‡, and fought against Carignano, and took it, and put soldiers

* 1 Kings xviii. 21.

† Deut. xxxii. 20.

‡ Deut. xxviii. 52.

into the midst of it, who fortified themselves there. And the king sent some of the men of his host into Italy, and the men of the emperor fled from before them, and left Crescentino as it was, for they feared for their life. And the men went also against San Germano, and took it, and the rest of the cities which were round about them; Vercelli and Trino and Casale alone were left straitly shut up; and the French did wonderfully; they hunted their steps so that they could not go*. Also unto Carignano the men of the king went; and the bridge which was next the city they cast down with a high hand; and the men of the emperor strove for it†, but they could not withstand; and they returned back unto the city and shut the gates, and the city was besieged. And in the midst of it were about three thousand Germans and Spaniards, they were the heads over the thousands of the emperor. Now Carignano was very nigh unto Turin, therefore this distress came upon them‡. And they sent unto the marquess, saying, “ Behold, we die, we perish§, unless thou come to our help. For the wine bottles are burst, and our garments and our shoes are waxed old, and our soul loatheth this dry bread||

* Lam. iv. 18.

† Gen. xxvi. 20, 21.

‡ Gen. xlii. 21.

§ Num. xvii. 12 (Heb. 27).

|| Num. xxi. 5.

which is become mouldy*. And now our soul is dried away, there is nothing at all† but our bodies, why should we die of hunger‡?”

1120. And in those days there went a man of Barges§, and he came unto Fossano, and said unto the prince Piedro di Porto||, the imperial governor, “What wilt thou give me when I deliver Barges into thine hand?” And his words were pleasing in the sight of the man; and he said unto him, “What is the pledge that thou wilt give me?¶ or by what shall I know that I shall possess it**?” And the man said, “My wife and my children will I give into thy hand, them mayest thou kill if I do it not even this day.” And when the nobleman heard, he said unto him, “Be strong and of good courage; be a son of valor, and it shall be that the kindness which the emperor shall show unto us we will show unto thee.” And he went out from him in peace, and sent them [קכד] unto him. And the nobleman sent unto the city of Barges fifty men in the darkness of the night; and the man brought them in safety into the city, and said, “Set on bread‡‡.” And unto the governor who was at Pinerolo, he

* Josh. ix. 5.

† Num. xi. 6.

‡ Gen. xlvii. 18, 19.

§ בארניס. || פידרו די פורטו.

¶ Gen. xxxviii. 16—18. Comp. Gen. xv. 2.

** Gen. xv. 18.

‡‡ Gen. xliii. 31.

sent saying, "Thus have I done: come on, let us deal wisely with them*, that we may take them alive." And he also sent soldiers; and they came secretly into the city, and fell suddenly upon them. And the men who came from Fossano knew not, neither did they understand: they walked in darkness†, and in that net which they had hidden was their own foot taken‡. And they took them alive in a very little while, and put them in prison and set a watch over them. And unto the man who was at their head, on whom the governor of Fossano leaned§, he commanded at the same time, saying, "Write unto thy master, We are come, and have taken possession, according to the words of the man; and now, come thou also at this time to-morrow, and we will take Pinerolo also, for they are melted away before us." And the man did according as he was commanded, for he feared for his life. And the nobleman who was at Fossano likewise delayed not to go unto the city, according to the word of the man, and he came into the city, and they took him alive; and the rest of the men who were left without were slain with the edge of the sword at that time. For they sent the

* Exod. i. 10.

† Ps. lxxxii. 5 (Heb. 6).

‡ Ps. ix. 15 (16).

§ 2 Kings vii. 2.

second time unto Pinerolo, and laid there an ambush*; and they went out suddenly against them, and discomfited them with the edge of the sword†. And the men that died in that slaughter were about two hundred; and this was a reproach unto the Spaniards. And the man said unto the governor of Fossano, “Bring hither my wife and my children, that they may live and not die, and he wrote unto Fossano;” and they brought them unto him.

1121. And the Marquess del Guasto remembered Carignano, and what he had decreed against it‡. And he gathered soldiers, and waggons loaded with corn and bread, and weapons of war, and turned his face toward Piedmont in the month Abib; and he went on his journey unto Cerisoles, and they encamped there, he and the men who were with him.

1122. And it came to pass, on the twenty-seventh day of the month of April, in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-four, on the seventh day of our feast-day, which is the second day of Passover, that the marquess and his men went out of the city: when they were not yet far off§, they lifted up their eyes, and behold, the French

* Comp. Josh. viii. 2.

† Exod. xvii. 13.

‡ Esther ii. 1.

§ Gen. xliv. 4.

came against them* with a strong people in battle array†. And the captain of the king's host drew nigh and set the battle in array against them, the like unto which had not happened since Piedmont became a nation‡; for the Lord of hosts had a sacrifice in Cerisoles§ at that time; and there fell of the emperor's men in that battle about sixteen thousand men slain to the ground, and of the men of the king about six thousand. And the marquess and the residue of them that escaped from the sword of the French fled as before a sword, and left in their haste their horses, and their silver and their gold, and all their substance; and their lives were unto them a prey. And they left also the waggons there, and returned unto Asti with shame. And Monseigneur de Thermes, the chief captain of the horsemen, pursued after them a far off from the camp||, and they took him alive and led him to Milan, and set a watch over him; the men of the king's host had taken spoil, every man for himself. And they took the spoil and the captives and the booty, which the men of the marquess had left in their haste, and returned unto their tents and gave praise unto God. And of the Germans, who were

* Comp. Gen. xxxvii. 25. Exod. xiv. 10.

† Joel. ii. 5.

‡ Exod. xi. 24.

§ Is. xxxiv. 6.

|| Exod. xxvii. 7.

in the host of the marquess, were taken about one thousand men, and they sent them away free unto their own country; and of their brethren there died in that slaughter about fourteen thousand men; and the chief captain of their host was taken alive, and they set a watch over him, and most of the Spaniards fell by the sword, and they were about three thousand men; and about six hundred men were taken alive. But on the Italians the hand of the Lord was not at that time, for only a few were missed of them, who went upon the mountain, and fled for their lives. Then the marquess knew that the battle is the Lord's*, and it grieved him much at his heart†. And the men of the village went out and slew many of those that remained with the edge of the sword, and smote the hindmost, even all that were feeble behind them‡; they left no gleanings§.

1123. And San Damiano, which is nigh unto Asti, is a small city, and its walls are fortified, and it is reckoned as the border of Montferrat. And the French besieged it, and battered its walls, so they delivered it into their hand, and made a covenant with them, and gave unto the captain of the host about twelve thousand gold pieces; so

* Exod. xvii. 16.

† Deut. xxxv. 18.

‡ Gen. vi. 6.

§ Comp. Jeremiah. xlix. 9.

they stretched not forth their hand unto the prey*. Also unto the rest of the cities of Montferrat the French went and took them; and there was no city which was too strong for them†, except Casale and Turin, for they are fenced, and no stranger passeth among them until this day‡.

1124. And the marquess hastened unto Milan and gathered together soldiers, for the fear of the French fell upon him, and the heart of the people melted and became like water.

1125. In those days about twelve thousand men were gathered together in Mirandola in the name of the king, and Pietro Strozzi, the son of Filippo, was captain over them. And they removed from thence, and went unto Piacenza, for there was peace between the king and between Paul the pope in those days. And they came unto the east of Lombardy, and the marquess would not suffer them to pass through his borders§; so they turned from him when they saw war, and went through crooked ways||; and the soul of the people was grieved because of the way¶, for want of everything; and he hastened to pass over the mountains, for the famine was sore, and Carignano

* Esth. ix. 10. 16.

† Job. xv. 19.

|| Judges v. 6. *margin.*

† Deut. ii. 36.

§ Num. xxi. 23.

¶ Num. xxi. 4.

was straitly shut up; none went out and none came in*.

1126. Now the emperor was yet fighting on the borders of Flanders in those days. And his hosts were besieging the city of Luxemburg, which the king had taken to himself, and they battered its walls round about, and cast up trenches against it. And they went out unto them for peace; and the city was given into the hand of Don Ferrante Gonzaga, the chief of the host, on the second day of the month of June, which is the fourth month; and they left there the men of the king and the battering-rams; and they went their way and France was exceedingly grieved.

1127. The king of England also turned to be an enemy† in those days, unto the king of *France*, and fought against the king of *Scotland*, a confederate of the king, and took some of the cities of the kingdom; and they fortified themselves therein. In France also he fought hard against the king, when his soul desired to possess the dwelling-places which were not his‡.

1128. And Pietro Strozzi came into the borders of Saravalle, which is by Tortona, on the fourth day of the month of June; and behold, the marquess came against him with a numerous people,

* Joshua vi. 1.

† Isa. lxiii. 10.

‡ Habakkuk i. 6.

and with a strong hand; and he divided the people that were with him*. And the men of Strozzi passed over the river Scribia† with a high hand. And they were ready to go up‡; and the men of the marquess drew back, for they were troubled at their presences. And many of the first camp fled at their cry, and cast their weapons of war unto the ground, and their lives were unto them a prey. And the men of Strozzi turned after lucre||; and it came to pass when the second camp of the marquess drew nigh, that those who had stumbled were girded with strength¶. And they pursued after them, and the marquess's riders upon the swift horses came near, and fought against them with strength; and the men of Strozzi fled by seven ways**, for evil was determined against them. And they also cast away their weapons [קכה] of war and the coverings of their feet, according as the men of the marquess had done, and fled for their lives. Then were the horse-hoofs broken by means of the prancings of the soldiers††, and they returned from pursuing after them. And the men of the marquess took all the baggage which they left there in their haste, and gave praise unto God;

* Gen. xxxii. 7 (8).

† Deut. i. 41.

‡ 1 Sam. viii. 3.

** Comp. Deut. xxviii. 7.

† סקריביאה.

§ Gen. xlv. 3.

¶ 1 Sam. ii. 4.

†† Judges v. 22.

and the peasants also filled their hand and stripped the fugitives; thus they went their way naked, and were not ashamed; for the time of their visitation was come. And those who died among them all, were about one hundred and twenty men. And many of the officers of the host were taken alive; and they put them in prison.

1129. And Pietro enlarged his steps, so that his feet did not slip on that day*. And he fled all that day and all that night, he and the two hundred men who were with him, who rode upon horses; and he looked not behind him until he came to a land inhabited, unto the borders of Piedmont†, for he feared for his life.

1130. And Barbarossa abode in Toulon‡ many days; and they sent unto him from Algier twenty galleys, which met large ships carrying corn and bread and garments, and took them and sent them away unto their own country. Then he brought forth the Turks who were in the ships of the king from the furnace of iron§; he left no gleanings therein. And many of his men died in that country, because the water and the air were naught||, and because of the terrible frost. And

* 2 Sam. xxii. 37.

† Exod. xvi. 35.

‡ טולון.

§ 1 Kings viii. 51; i. e. The Turkish galley slaves were set at liberty.

|| 2 Kings ii. 19.

he was much grieved in his heart, and said, "I will go and return unto my own country, lest peradventure I see the evil which shall find out my people*." And unto the servants of the king he revealed not his secret; and no man knew the thoughts of his heart until that day.

1131. And it came to pass, when Barbarossa was yet scarce gone out from the sea of Provence†, that the lords of Genoa feared greatly because of him. And they fortified the city, and brought soldiers into the midst thereof, and set up the battering-rams; then fled Genoa, and the inhabitants of her villages strengthened themselves and gathered themselves together‡ into the fenced cities; and the rest fled unto the mountains, for they were troubled at his presence. And Barbarossa drew nigh, and passed the sea of Genoa in the month of May, three hundred and four, which is the third month, and they took near Savona a large ship which came from Spain; and they brought the captain down unto the grave in blood, for the soul of *Barbarossa* was embittered against them. And Andrea Doria, the chief of the emperor's host, sent unto him a present of the best fruits of the land§. And the servants of Andrea

* i. e. Come upon my people. Gen. xliv. 34. margin.

† Gen. xxvii. 30.

‡ Is. x. 31.

§ Comp. Gen. xliii. 11.

Doria brought the present which was in their hand before him, and bowed before him unto the ground. And he asked them of their welfare, and said, "Is my brother well, your old master, of whom ye spake?" And they said, "Thy servant, our master, is in good health* ; and he sent us to find favor in the sight of our Lord†. And they bowed their heads and worshipped‡. And he took the present from their hand, and commanded, and they unloaded the ship which they had taken, and he gave her unto the man who brought the present ; and he returned unto his master with gladness. And Barbarossa sent also at the same time unto Andrea Doria spices and cinnamon as a present. And some of his men came into the city of Genoa, and bought whatsoever their soul desired, and none made *them* afraid§. And they set at liberty many of the Turks who belonged unto Andrea Doria, and Dragut|| also they brought out from the prison-house ; who gave the ransom for his soul¶, and went with them ; and they returned unto their own master ; and he passed over before them unto Piombino, and remained there several days. And they did no hurt in the borders of Genoa neither

* Gen. xliii. 27.

† Gen. xxxiii. 8.

‡ Exod. iv. 31.

§ Lev. xxvi. 6.

|| אדרגוט.

¶ Exod. xxx. 12.

small nor great; for so King Francis had commanded, for there was peace between them. And he went on his journey*, going on still toward the east†, as he was commanded. And he fought against Porto Ercolo, and against Talamone, which is in the sea of Siena. And the Lord gave them into his hand in the month of June, which is the fourth month; and he burned them with fire, and took both the persons and the goods‡; he left no gleanings§, and his fame went out over the whole world. The men of Giglio|| also drank the dregs of the cup of the fury of the Lord¶; they also were delivered into the hand of those who sought their lives** at that time. And he overflowed and overran the kingdom of Naples; and Procida†† they burned with fire, and went their way.

1132. And when the men of the emperor who were at Carignano saw that there was no power in their hands, they delivered it into the hand of the captains of the king, and vowed to fight the battles of the emperor no more, until six months be fulfilled‡‡; and they went out from the midst thereof, and made a covenant with them; and they and their stuff and all their cattle went

* Gen. xiii. 3.

† Gen. xii. 9.

‡ Comp. Gen. xv. 21.

§ Comp. Jer. xlix. 9.

|| זיליו.

¶ Isa. li. 22.

** Jer. xix. 7.

†† פרוגיטה.

‡‡ Num. vi. 5.

away free unto the coast of Cremona, and abode there several days, and remembered not their covenant, for they were a froward generation, and defiled that which came forth from their lips.

1133. And the cardinal of Ferrara, the confederate of the king, had a small city on the banks of the Po, and its name was Brisilo*, and those that went out of Carignano† went in ships secretly against it on the first day of the month of June, and took its suburbs; and after another three days the city was broken up, and they gave it to be pillaged, and there was none to deliver it.

1134. And the servants of the king went in ships into the sea of Spain, and met there a large ship going unto Genoa, whose merchants were princes, whose traffickers are the honorable of the earth‡. And they warred against her all that day and all that night, and took and brought her unto their own country. And of them who were in the ship there died only four men in that battle. And their foot was laid in iron, they afflicted their soul with fetters§.

1135. Then Barbarossa went and fought against Lipoli||, a small island which is nigh unto Sicily, and it had none to deliver; and they cast up

* בריזילו.

† Comp. Gen. xxxiv. 24.

‡ Isa. xxiii. 8.

§ Ps. cv. 18.

|| ליפולי, perhaps Lipari.

banks against it, and took it; and they took the persons and the goods, and left not in the midst thereof one that pisseth against the wall. And the cry of the city went up toward heaven. And also in Calabria and in Apulia he did great things, and they took the mother with the children, and led them away into captivity. And the number of the captives was sixteen thousand.

1136. And the emperor journeyed into France, and fought against Ligny; and they delivered the city into his hand, and he made a covenant with the dwellers therein. They went also to fight against* Landreci†, and many fell slain to the ground in that battle. For the king had filled his hand, and went out against them with a strong hand, and saved the city. And also some of the soldiers who were in Italy he brought into France; and the rest of his men who were in Piedmont gathered themselves together into the fenced cities at that time. Then the men of the emperor re-took some of the small cities which the French had taken, after their hearts' desire, and took the prey thereof.

1137. And the king of England also fought against Boulogne, which the king had on the coast of the sea, and took it, and put into the

* Comp. Deut. xxii. 6. † Both editions have סאנדיס; but we suppose that the first D has been put erroneously for ל. Landericiacum, a small town on the road from Maubeuge to Paris.

midst thereof about seven thousand men, who fortified themselves there.

1138. And Strozzi again passed over unto Mirandola, and gathered together soldiers to help Paul the pope, for there was peace between them. And he turned his face unto the cities of Milan, and the men of the marquess went against him, so he turned away from them. And he brought them on by-ways* unto the road of [קכו] Taro†, and the soul of the people became weary‡ on the road for want of every thing§. And he sent unto the lords of Genoa, saying, “ Let me pass, I pray you, through your country by the king’s highway||, on the fourth day of the month of August, which is the sixth month.” And they allowed them to pass through their borders according as they had asked; and they went their way. And the villagers¶ smote the hindmost, even all that were feeble behind them**, and all that they had they plundered††. And the thing was known, and the elders of the city commanded, and the captains went out, and brought back their garments and their weapons of war, and sent them home. And seven hundred Spaniards who came in ships pursued after them, but could not do any thing, so they drew back,

* Jud. v. 9.

† Num. xxi. 4.

‡ Num. xx. 17.

** Deut. xxv. 18.

† מנא.

§ Deut. xxviii. 48.

¶ Esther ix. 19.

†† Josh. ix. 27.

And Pietro Strozzi went on his journey, by the way of the mountains, because of the riders upon the swift horses whom the marquess had sent against him in the plain, for he said, "They will come down unto us, because of hunger, and we will take them alive." And they came into the cities of Montferrat in peace, only the feeble were left behind, as the handful after the harvest* man, that none gathereth*. And he made war against Alba, and cast up trenches against it, and the city was delivered into his hand on the thirteenth day of the month of August, and his fame went through the whole world.

1139. And there came twelve ships of the Ishmaelites into the sea of Genoa at that time, and went unto San Stefano at the end of the middle watch, and took all its spoil and thirty souls of men, and went their way; and the ships of Andrea Doria pursued after them, but did not overtake them; and they returned home. By the ships which he had sent unto Corsica to deliver it from the hand of its spoilers, they took two of the ships of the Turks which were found there. And one went down into the deep; she sank as lead†, because of the multitude of the uncircumcised who went upon her. And there died of the captives about twelve men, and their brethren went out

* Jer. ix., 22.

† Exod. xv, 10.

free without ransom*. And they sent them unto their country; so in the same net which the Turks hid for them their own foot was taken†, and they remained in their place.

1140. And the emperor once more fought against Landreci‡; and the city was given into his hand on the seventeenth day of the month of August, which is the sixth month. And the soldiers were sent away free, and they went into France; and it grieved the king much.

1141. And there was no peace in Montferrat for him that went out, nor for him that came in at that time, because of the host of the French who hunted their steps, so that they could not go§, and the city was besieged. And the captains of the king made a covenant of peace with the captains of the emperor for a month of days, and the country had rest; and it was of the Lord, had it not been for that covenant, there would have been delivered into the hand of the king, Vercelli, Trino||, Chieri, and Casale, for want of every thing in those days.

1142. And the ships of the emperor went against Antibes, which is in Provence, and warred

* Exod. xxi. 2. † Psalm ix. 15; xxxi. 4 (Heb. 16).

‡ בסאנדיסי. See note on page 395.

§ Lam. iv. 18.

|| טרינו, a little town in Montferrat.

against it but could ~~not~~ prevail against it ; and there fell of the men who were upon them about fifty men slain to the ground at that time. And the king and the emperor made a covenant of truce in France also. And when Andrea Doria heard it, he brought the *ships* back unto Genoa, and the country had rest. And the law of *peace* was given at Genoa* on the twenty-first day of the month Tishri, three hundred and five ; and all the people of the country rejoiced, and gave praise unto God.

1143. And they restored all the cities which were taken in Flanders, Piedmont, and Montferrat, as they were when the pope spake unto them at Nizza on the day of the covenant ; those which belonged unto the emperor, to the emperor ; and those which belonged unto the king, to the king : And the war ceased between the emperor and the king.

1144. And the duke of Orleans, who is the third son of the king, and the cardinal of Lorraine, went to bow before the emperor, while he was at Brüssel on the twenty-second^d day of the month of October, one thousand five hundred and forty-four, which is the eighth month. And also Leonora, his sister, the queen, went with them ;

* Esth. iii. 15.

and he went out to meet them, and they bowed themselves down before him ; and they asked each other of their welfare*, and came into the city ; and his sister also bowed herself down ; and she embraced him, and said, “ Is there peace, my brother ? ” and he answered, “ Peace†.” And the emperor received them with joyfulness, and with gladness of heart‡, and spake unto their heart ; and they ate and drank, and were merry together§ during several days, and went their way.

1145. Only Henry, king of England, made no covenant with them, but still held fast by Boulogne||, and fortified it, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And the second son of the king went against it with a strong hand by sea and by land, and *the French* could not prevail against it in that winter, for it was a fenced city.

1146. And there was peace between Charles the emperor and King Francis, and both of them made a covenant¶. The copy of the covenant is**, that the daughter of Ferdinand, the brother of the emperor, should be given unto the third son of the king, and Milan and its villages, as a dowry and gift unto them and unto their seed after them ;

* Exod. xviii. 7.

† 2 Kings ix. 18.

‡ Deut. xxviii. 47.

§ Gen. xliii. 34.

|| Comp. Exod. ix. 2.

¶ Gen. xxi. 27.

** Comp. Esth. iii. 14.

only that the cities should return unto the emperor, who should be in those days, if he do not beget one to make ashamed in the land*, sitting upon his throne after him, inheriting *the power* to restraint†. And the thing was pleasing in the sight of the king; and also the cities of Savoy he promised to give back unto the duke, when his son should take that woman. But in the sight of his second son‡ who was to sit upon his throne this was evil; and the country had rest in that year.

1147. And the king hired ships and soldiers at Genoa in the month Abib, one thousand five hundred and forty-five. And also some of the soldiers whom he had in Piedmont he brought over to France, to go to war against England, for his soul was embittered against them. While they were yet at Marseille, it was told the king, The inhabitants^A of Cabrieres§ and of Merindol||, and the open cities which are in Provence, incline unto the faith of Luther¶, and it is not meet for the king to suffer them** ; and the king was wroth. And he sent against them some of the troops; but the men of Cabrieres fortified themselves, and the city was be-

* i. e. One who might put transgressors to shame.

† Judges xviii. 7.

‡ Henry II.

§ גאבריאיראס.

|| מירינדול.

¶ i. e. The inhabitants of these cities were Wa

** Esth. iii. 8.

sieged ; and they battered its walls, so that they came down*, and in the straitness of the time† the city was broken up, and the soldiers came into the city with a high hand. And its inhabitants they slew with the edge of the sword, young men as well as virgins, the suckling with the hoary head‡. And there was not one who remained, or escaped, on the day of the Lord's anger§, and the cry of the city went up toward heaven ; and about two hundred men were hid in a cave, and they kindled a fire in the mouth thereof, and all of them died therein ; there was not one left. And they led the principal men of the people of the country away with them, and made their lives bitter|| ; they burned them alive ; their eye had no compassion upon them. And *the Waldenses* said, “ Certainly, this is the day we looked for¶ ; now may our soul return unto God, and our bodies to the dust**.” And also among the rest who were not found there, the hand of the Lord was against them to destroy them†† ; and they fell into the hand of those who sought their lives, and there was but a small number of them saved. And the inhabitants of Merindol‡‡ fled away, until the indignation was overpast§§ ; they

* Deut. xxviii. 52. † Dan. ix. 25. ‡ Deut. xxxii. 25.

§ Lam. ii. 22. Comp. Jer. xlii. 17. || Exod. i. 14.

¶ Lam. ii. 16. ** Comp. Ecc. xii. 7.

†† Deut. ii. 15. ‡‡ מירידנו. §§ Comp. Is. xxvi. 20.

would not fight, and their lives were unto them for a prey*. And also of the men of the host many fell by the sword in that battle; and those that remained took the spoil of the city and all its substance, and went their way. [קכז]

1148. And the ships of the king which were at Marseille, went on their journey until they came into the waters of Britain in the month of May, three hundred and five, which is the third month, and they retained no strength before the ships of the English, for the light galleys had no power to stand in those proud waters†. And the men of the English ships took some of them, after their hearts' desire at that time. And Boulogne was straitly shut up before the French; none went out and none came in.

1149. And Dragut came with ten galleys into^a the sea of Italy in that year. And they went unto Corsica, and went on shore on Capo Corso‡ in the month Tamuz, which is the fourth month. And they took the captives and the booty, and the houses they burned with fire, and went their way; and in the waters of Genoa God caused their hands to meet a ship which came from the east, and two other ships; and they took them, and sent them unto their country; and they found another ship,

* Jer. xxxviii. 2.

† Ps. cxxiv. 5.

‡ קאפו קורסו.

and burned her in the midst of the sea while they were fighting, and their smoke went up towards heaven; and his fame was noised throughout all the country. And Dragut drew nigh, and they came in the darkness of the night of the fourth day nigh unto Monte Rosso*, and surrounded the city before their voice was heard, on the eighth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month. When the men of the city heard thereof, they took hold of each other's hand; one half took hold on spears, and one half made the women and the children to flee, and their soul was unto them a prey. And there were only left in their destruction† the feeble, who delayed to flee. And they took them, and put forth their hand unto the spoil, and left no gleanings. And they kindled a fire at one end of the city, and went their way. Also at Cornega, a small city, they did according as they had done at Monte Rosso; and they took there also clothes and vessels, and nine souls of men. Then the men of Genoa feared, and said one to another, "We are verily guilty, in that we have sent out this grinding oppressor from our hand‡. The Lord is righteous." And Dragut went on his journey, and overflowed Catalonia, and passed through§. And two open cities he gave up to be spoiled, and went

* מונטי רוֹסוֹ.

† Ps. cvii. 20.

‡ Comp. Gen. xlii. 21.

§ Is. viii. 8.

his way unto Algier. And the ships of Andrea* Doria pursued after them. And as they returned, they met in Corsica two small galleys of the Ishmaelites, and took them, and put their feet into irons. And they took another ship in the sea of Piombino and led her unto Naples, for there was his station.

1150. And the queen of Spain, the wife of Philip, the emperor's son, died after she had borne a male child in the month of July; and they mourned over her many days.

1151. And in the month Sivan, in the year three hundred and five, was Israel scattered: the Lord thought to destroy the captives of Jerusalem who were at Salonichi†, and the Lord slew among the people a very great slaughter. And they went as fugitives and vagabonds from city to city, for fear of the Lord, and for the glory of his majesty, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth‡. And there also no rest was given unto them§. And there came one that had escaped, and said, "A fire of God has overwhelmed Salonichi, and destroyed the foundations thereof." For a fire came out from the house of Abraham Catalan, the grocer, in the night of the second day, on the fourth day of the month Ab, which is the fifth month; and it destroyed about eight thousand

* אנטוניאו.

† סאלוניקי, Thessalonica.

‡ Is. ii. 19.

§ Comp. Lam. v. 5.

houses in a little moment, and about two hundred souls of man; and the cry of the city went up toward heaven. Woe unto the eyes which have seen eighteen of our prayer-houses, and our glory, and the books of our Law, and the believers of our Law become a burning, and fuel of fire*. And they had no strength in their hand to save them. The young and the old lay on the ground desolate in the streets†; they that were brought up in scarlet embraced dunghills‡ naked, but they were not ashamed on the day of the Lord's anger. And it came to pass, when it was heard in the open cities that the King, the Lord, spake terror§, that great mourning was among the Jews, many being in sackcloth and ashes||. Trembling took hold upon them¶, and horror on that bitter day, a shaking of the knees, and pain in all loins; and their faces gathered blackness. Blessed be the true Judge! And the children of Israel bewailed the burning which the Lord had kindled**. And after this also, there was a great plague among the people, until those who buried became weary, and the mourners and bewailers ceased. And the *Jews* retained no strength at that time, and Israel became very low. And the Turks put the grocer who had kindled the fire

* Is. ix. 4.

† Lam. ii. 21.

‡ Lam. iv. 5.

§ Comp. Hos. xiii. 1.

|| Esth. iv. 3.

¶ Exod. xv. 15. Ps. xlviii. 7.

** Levit. x. 6.

into prison ; and he became sick, and ended his days there.

1152. And the viceroy who was at Algier fought a second time against Mohammed, king of Tremezen. And Mohammed slept with his fathers, and the viceroy also went the way of the whole earth ; and the war ceased. And Kaid Isa returned unto the city after the death of Mohammed, and they made Mansur, the king's uncle, king ; and he sat on the throne of the kings. And when Kaid Mansur, who was at Oran, heard that the king was dead, he gathered soldiers, and went with Achmed, the son of his sister, against Tremezen, and took it. And they killed Kaid Isa and his son, and all the seed royal.

1153. And after the death of his lieutenant, Barbarossa sent his son unto Algier with twelve galleys and two thousand Turks. And the fame thereof was heard in Italy*, and Andrea Doria divided his ships into three heads†. And he sent them hither and thither ; and every one turned his own way‡ to see if they could fight against him, but they found him not§. And the Spanish ships went unto Tabarkah||, the island from which those, who go

* Gen. xlv. 16.

† Gen. xxxii. 7, 8.

‡ Is. liii. 6.

§ Gen. xxxi. 34. Cant. iii. 1.

|| טאבארקה, an island on the coast of Tunis, opposite the town of Tabarkah. This island is known for its pearls and corals.

down to the sea, take the corals*. And they removed from thence, because of the storm and the raging of the sea, on the second day of the month of July, which is the fifth month. And it came to pass on the morrow, that he passed also over unto Tabarkah, and went on his journey unto Algier, his capital, and there was none that stumbled in his camps†.

1154. And it came to pass, as he sat on the throne of his kingdom‡, that he gathered soldiers together, and he went against Tremezen and took it.. And Kaid Mansur, and King Achmed the son of his sister, and the children of the prince, and the Jews who were with them, fled to save their

* See Kimchi in ספר השרשים:—

עצי האלגומים ובמקום אחר אלמוגים ושניהם ענין אחד והוא שקורין לו בלעז קורלז ויש מי שפירש אורזו העץ שצובעין בו שנקרא בערבי אלבקם البقم שקורין לו בלעז ברויל :

1 Reg. x. 11. 12; 2 Par. ii. 7; ix. 10. 11. “Lignorum pretiosorum genus, tempore Salomonis ex Ophira una cum auro et gemmis mari advectum, templi regiaeque ornamentis, itemque musicis instrumentis adhibitum; secundum 2 Par. ii. 7. in Libano etiam nascens. Plerique rabbini coralia intelligunt, atque ita singularis אלמוג usurpatur in Talmude: sed coralia non sunt ligna עצים: licet, modo antiquus sit iste Talmudistarum usus loquendi, lignum illud pretiosum a similitudine coraliolum dictum esse possit, q. d. lignum Coraliorum, Korallenholz [i. e. Coralwood]. Probabiliora dat Kimchius, cui est Arabicum البقم quod Europæi בראזיל lignum Brasilium vocant.” *Gesen. Lex. Man.*

† Is. v. 27. Ps. cv. 37.

‡ Esth. i. 2.

lives from death. And when they passed by the way of Dibdo*, Muley Omar took them and put them into the prison†. And they abode there many days, and vowed to give one hundred thousand pieces of silver as the ransom for their souls. And they sent Mansur to fetch the silver, and with him were fifteen men. And the Arabs went out against him and took them alive, and thought to kill the men who went with him, but Mansur would not destroy them‡ at that time. And Mansur wrote unto Omar bitter things§ against their folly which he had wrought with them||. And Mansur went unto Oran, and the Arabs gathered themselves unto him; and he went unto Tremezen and took it; and the Turks he slew with the edge of the sword.

1155. And the king of Algier returned again and fought against Tremezen, and took it. And he fought against Oran also, which belonged unto the Spaniards many days; and the city was besieged. And they besieged it many days, but could not prevail against it; so they returned to their own country.

1156. In those days the French besieged

* ריברו.

† Gen. xxxix. 20.

‡ Deut. x. 10.

§ Job. xiii. 26.

|| Gen. xxxiv. 7; Josh. vii. 15; Judges xx. 6; 2 Sam. xiii.

12. Folly stands in Hebrew for wickedness, because sin is folly.

Boulogne, and the English hosts went out from Calais on the fourth day of the month of September, which is the seventh month. And they sent unto Boulogne, saying, “ Go ye out also, and we will fight against [קכח] the French before and behind them.” And they did so, and the war was strong against the French at that time. Then were the horse-hoofs broken by means of the prancings of the mighty men of France*, and the English were smitten before them, and many fell to the ground at that time. And they pursued after them and discomfited them† even unto Calais‡; and also those who came out of Boulogne they slew with the edge of the sword. And those who were left fled into the city, and they pursued after them unto the walls. And many fell to the ground on that day, and Boulogne was besieged; and the French builded a fort against it, and fortified it much. And they posted there about three thousand men; and they were as thorns in their sides§ until its walls came down||.

1157. And on the ninth day of the month of September three hundred and six, the third son of the king fell sick¶, and slept with his fathers;

* Judges v. 22.

† Exod. xiv. 9.

‡ Num. xiv. 45.

§ Num. xxxii. 55. Comp. Josh. xxiii. 13.

|| Deut. xxviii. 52.

¶ 1 Kings xiv. 1.

and his father wept for him, and mourned for his son many days* ; and Milan was left unto the emperor until this day. Then the king sent soldiers into the cities of Piedmont, who fortified themselves there.

1158. And in Germany the war was heavy upon those who took hold of Luther† at that time. And the pope sent money to give unto the soldiers, but he knew not that they fought from heaven‡ ; and the Lord had him in derision§. And they set there the battle in array ; and the Lutherans prevailed|| and delivered their country ; and the land had rest.

1159. Then the emperor redeemed Piacenza and Parma from the priests, and gave them unto Pier Luigi, the son of the pope ; and they made him duke over them. And he came into the midst thereof¶, and made new statutes and judgments ; and the hearts of the people melted and became as water**, for he made his yoke heavy upon them††. Now the man Pier Luigi was a very wise man‡‡, and his fame went out

* Gen. xxxvii. 34, 35.

† Prov. iii. 18. Is. lvi. 6 ; to take hold of Luther means *to cleave or adhere* to his doctrine.

‡ Judges v. 20.

§ Ps. ii. 4.

|| Gen. vii. 18. 24.

¶ Comp. Gen. xli. 21.

** Josh. vii. 5.

†† 1 Kings xii. 10. 14.

‡‡ Comp. Numb. xii. 3.

through all the earth*. And he began to build† the walls of the cities and the forts, and strengthened them, and his heart became much lifted up.

1160. And Dragut returned from Algier in the month of November, and ten galleys with him. And he went unto Corsica; and his fame went out through all the earth, for he did great things‡. And he took from the unwalled towns§ which were nigh unto the sea, captives and prey according as his heart desired; and there was none to deliver from his hand. And also unto those who were far off who dwelt securely, the Turks went and took whatever they found, and returned unto the ships and went their way.

1161. And there came out a fire at Castel Nuovo||, the fortress which is in Naples, and destroyed the gunpowder; and its walls shook¶ and fell to the ground, and it was not known who kindled it. And there died about fifty souls of man in that slaughter, beside the wounded; and all the city was moved; and they said, “This is the finger of God**.”

1162. And the Marquess del Guasto slept with his fathers on the second day of the second month,

* Esth. ix. 4.

† Comp. Gen. x. 20.

‡ Ps. cxxvi. 2, 3.

§ Esth. ix. 19.

|| Num. xxi. 28. Jud. ix. 15. 20.

¶ 2 Sam. xxii. 8; xviii. 7 (8).

** Exod. viii. 19 (15).

in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-six. And the emperor sent Don Ferrante Gonzaga unto Milan in his stead ; and the nobles of the city received him with gladness, and he was a shepherd unto them. And all the people of the land were glad at the destruction of the marquess*, for he made his yoke heavy upon them.

1163. In those days, Francis, the king of France, made peace with Henry, king of England, and they both made a covenant together ; and the decree was given at Paris† on the thirteenth day of the month of June, which is the fourth month. And unto Henry, the son of King Francis, there was born a daughter, and the king of England became godfather unto her‡. And he sent his deputy unto France in his stead ; and they honored him greatly ; and they rejoiced together at that time. And Boulogne was yet in the hand of England, until the king of France should fulfil what he had vowed to do on the day of the covenant§.

1164. Now Barbarossa was old and well stricken in years||, and he set his house in order¶, for he declined unto death ; and he let many

* Esther viii. 6.

† Esther iii. 15.

‡ Comp. Esther ii. 7.

§ 2 Sam. xv. 7.

|| 1 Kings i. 1.

¶ 2 Kings xx. 1.

of the slaves who were with him* go free, and they returned into their own country; and unto the treasuries of Solymán, the Turk, he brought silver and gold in abundance, which he had taken in the countries of the uncircumcised. And he slept with his fathers. And his son reigned in his stead in Algier, and all its villages; and his kingdom was established greatly†.

1165. And Ali went out from Algier to take spoil in the land of Spain; and five of the galleys were wrecked on the rocks of the island which is nigh unto Iviza; but Ali with only two galleys remained‡. And the rest of his servants became free at that time, and returned into their own country. And it came to pass as he drew back to Algier, that he met a large ship bearing corn; and he took her and brought her unto his own country.

1166. And the princes of Germany spake unto the emperor day by day§, concerning the *national* council which he had vowed to bring about for their religion; but he hearkened not unto them. And it was told unto them, “The emperor has made a confederacy|| with the pope; and those of

* Exod. xxi. 26, 27.

† 1 Kings ii. 12.

‡ Gen. vii. 23.

§ Esther ii. 11.

|| Hos. viii. 12. 2 Kings xiv. 19.

your men who insist upon the *national* council shall be brought down into the grave in blood.” And the wrath of the *Protestants* waxed hot, and their anger burned within them*. And they said, “ Let us make a captain and return from behind him†, for the imperial crown does not appertain‡ to a man like unto him ;” so they made a league between themselves.

1167. And among the confederates were the lords of Strasburg§, and the lords of Augsburg, and the lords of Ulm, and the lords of Münster||, and the archbishop of Cologne, and the king of Denmark¶, and the duke of Saxony, and the duke of Würtemberg; and they made the landgrave, and the duke of Saxony to be heads of the host over them. And they gathered a force together and horsemen also**, to war against the emperor,† and went out against him with a mighty hand. Then was the emperor exceedingly grieved††, and sent into Italy for help; and the war was strong in Germany at that time.

1168. And Paul, the pope, filled his hands on that day, and sent horses and chariots and footmen,

* Esther i. 12.

† Num. xiv. 4.

‡ Jer. x. 7.

§ ארנינינה.

|| מונסטיריאניטי.

¶ דאציאה. Rabbi Joseph writes *Dacia* for *Dania*, comp. fol. כט, page 1. lin. 28. *ed. Amst.*

** Comp. Gen. i. 9. Ezra viii. 22.

†† Esther iv. 4.

for he feared for his life. And the Count Alessandro Vitello was the captain of the pope's host at that time. And the duke of Florence also filled his hand on that day. And they hastened to pass over the Alps; and the heart of Alessandro, the captain of the host, was much lifted up; and his men arose and slew him; so he fell destroyed* like one of the vain fellows†. And the men of the host went on their journey, until they came unto the place where the emperor (his glory be exalted!) was encamped; and the soul of the people became weary on the road, for money was not given: and it was said unto them, "Make haste, come on;" and they cried aloud for bread.

1169. And Dragut came with his ships into the seas of Genoa in the darkness of the night, on the road of the west side, on the twenty-sixth of the month Ab, which is the fifth month. And he went unto Oneglia‡, which is a small city, one of the open cities, which dwell securely; and the Turks fell suddenly upon them, and took of them two hundred and thirty souls of men captive; and they took much spoil. And in San Stefano he took fourteen souls. And over San Lorenzo he drew a line, and took [קנט] there also about

* Jud. v. 27.

† 2 Sam. vi. 20.

‡ דליננאיליא.

thirty-two souls, and went his way. And on the twenty-eighth day of the month he took a large ship which came from Spain, and sent her unto his own country. And it came to pass, after a few days more, that he took a large ship full of garments and weapons, and put upon her about twenty Turks and fourteen of the choicest women whom he had taken, and sent them away unto his own country. And the merchants of Arassi*, the city which is nigh unto the destroyed Oneglia, met her, and took her, and brought her unto their home. And those women went out free for nothing† on that day; the Lord maketh poor and maketh rich‡. And Dragut went from thence, and passed through the seas of Salerno in the month Elul, which is the sixth month, and took captive from the open cities about six hundred⁴ souls of men; and the Turks took much spoil and went their way.

1170. And it came to pass, on the twenty-seventh day of the month of August, at the time appointed, on our solemn feast-day§, in the year three hundred and seven, that the landgrave, the captain of the German host, and the duke of

* Jos. iii. 16. 'ארסי, a few miles south-west of Albergo, in the Genoese territory.

† Exod. xxi. 2.

‡ 1 Sam. ii. 7.

§ Ps. lxxxix. 3.

Saxony, brought their hosts nigh unto the place where the emperor was encamped. And they remained there as a provocation of his anger and of his fury* a number of days, and cast stones upon him† without number, with the battering-rams; but the emperor stood not up nor moved before them‡, but strengthened himself and sat in his ward, and he also filled his hand; and many fell to the ground at that time. And the emperor would not fight against them, for he feared for his life. And he bowed his shoulder to bear§, until his enemies retained no strength|| to stay in the field, because of the dreadful cold; for by counsel thou shalt make war¶; and it came to pass, as he imagined, so it was**. And the men of the landgrave asked leave every one for his tents††, because there was no more courage in them to remain in the field‡‡; and his camp became greatly impoverished§§.

1171. Then the greater part of the German cities made peace with the emperor, for they were weary to endure war|||, so they bowed their shoulder

* Jer. xxxii. 31.

† Lam. iii. 53.

‡ Esth. v. 9.

§ Gen. xlix. 15.

|| 1 Ch. xxix. 14; 2 Ch. xiii. 20; xxii. 9.

¶ Prov. xx. 18; xxiv. 6.

** Comp. Gen. xli. 13.

†† 1 Sam. xx. 6. 28.

‡‡ Jos. ii. 11.

§§ Jud. vi. 6.

||| Is. i. 14.

to bear, and said, “ We have sinned ;” and he was entreated of them*. And he came into those cities securely†, and there was no feeble person in his camps, and he increased unto a multitude‡.

1172. And it came to pass, when Andrea Doria was old§, that he set Giannettino Doria over his ships, and the people greatly advanced him||; therefore his heart was lifted up, and he set in gold his hope¶; and because of his great pride, he was an abhorring unto all flesh**. And it came to

* Gen. xxv. 21.

† Gen. xxxiv. 25.

‡ Gen. xxx. 30.

§ Gen. xxvii. 1.

|| Est. iii. 1; Ps. lxxviii. 7.

¶ Job xxxi. 24.

** Is. lxvi. 24. There is so much interest awakened by historians and poets for the infernal plans of Fieschi, which have been brought to our recollection last autumn by another Fieschi, the projector of the infernal machine, that we will shew by an extract from Denina (*delle Rivoluzioni d'Italia. libro xxi. cap. x.*) the connexion of that rebellion which Rabbi Joseph witnessed, with the general state of European politics towards the middle of the sixteenth century.

“ Reggeva lo stato di Genova a guisa di principe Andrea Doria, grande ammiraglio di Carlo V., e per favor di lui padrone della patria. Se la virtù di questo Ammiraglio rendeva l'imperatore potente anche nelle cose di mare l'opportunità del porto e della città di Genova gli era non manco giovevole rispetto alle cose d'Italia per la commodità del tragitto di Spagna in Lombardia e nel regno di Napoli. Cercando adunque i nemici di Cesare di levargli ad un tempo stesso e l'opportunità del porto, e tutto il nerbo delle sue armi di mare, che vi eran raccolte sotto

pass, on a certain day, that Giannettino met four ships which belonged unto pope Paul; and he took them, and brought them unto Genoa by command of his master; and the nobles of that city

il comando d'Andrea Doria e di Giannettino suo nipote, e destinato successore della sua grandezza e il braccio d'un sì valente ufficiale, trovarono chi per invidia e nimicizia privata prestò spontaneamente l'opera sua per così dire alla causa comune.

“ Gian Luigi Fieschi, conte di Lavagna, giovane d'alti spiriti, e per chiarezza di sangue e per ricchezze de' più illustri della città, e per ogni sua qualità formato a tentar cose grandi, ma per effettuar piuttosto gran male che bene, sopportava con pessimo animo di vedere che tanta grandezza di Andrea Doria fosse per continuarsi in Giannettino, col quale egli nodriva gelosia e nimicizia particolare, e per la egualianza dell' età più viva e più fiera che verso il vecchio Ammiraglio (*Sigon. Vita Andreae Doriae, lib. 2. cap. 30*). Siccome le intenzioni de' grandi difficilmente restano occulte a chi abbia interesse di conoscerle, così i Farnesi, a cui non mancavano per tutta Italia anche fra le persone più ragguardevoli, molti corrispondenti o servitori, ebbero segretamente notizia delle disposizioni del conte di Lavagna, Pier-Luigi Farnese che, tacendo il nome del Papa suo padre, trattava più alla scoperta e francamente col conte, fecegli sperare col mezzo degli ajuti della chiesa e di Francia non pure il dominio di Genova, ma ancora del Ducato di Milano; e già miravano come vicina e facilissima una general rivoluzione in tutto lo stato d'Italia, qualora l'Imperatore perdesse l'armata navale e l'obbedienza di Genova; ed operando in ciò concorde-
mente à Farnesi tutti i partigiani di Francia, la duchessa di Ferrara, sorella del Francesco, offerì al Fiesco le sue stesse guardie. Le cose furono sì bene e con tanta precauzione ordinate, che già (An. 1547) ucciso Giannettino Doria, il vecchio Ammiraglio sbalordito al primo scoppiare della congiura era preci-

were greatly displeased, and rebuked him* ; wherefore he sent them away into their own country ; but Paul observed the saying†.

1173. Now Gian Luigi, Conte del Fiescho had a wife, who was beautiful and well-favored‡, and her name was Leonora ; and Giannettino loved her, and his soul clave to her ; and he spake kindly unto her§ day by day for the love he had to her||. And the thing was known to Gian Luigi, who became jealous of his wife¶ ; but he comforted himself as touching Giannettino, purposing to kill him** ; for jealousy is the rage of a man††, and who is able to stand before jealousy‡‡.

1174. And it came to pass, after some days, that the pope gave his ships into the hand of Gian Luigi, and advanced him, and made him captain

pitosamente fuggito dalla città, e l'armata era già quasi pervenuta in potere dei congiurati ; quando il conte, capo e anima di essi, per un accidente affatto improvviso caduto nel mare ed annegatosi miseramente, entrò il disordine ne' suoi seguaci, e il Doria potè con poco pena ripigliarsi l'autorità di prima, e rassettar lo stato a modo suo e di Carlo V. Rimasero fieramente sconcertati e delusi i disegni di chi si credea per questo attentato di videre abbassata in Italia l'autorità dell' Imperatore."

Compare also Sleidanus, Thuanus, Robertson, and Von Raumer, to the year 1547.

* Gen. xxxvii. 10.

† Gen. xxxvii. 11.

‡ Gen. xxix. 17.

§ Gen. xxxiv. 3.

|| Gen. xxix. 20.

¶ Num. v. 14.

** Gen. xxvii. 42.

†† Pro. vi. 34.

‡‡ Pro. xxvii. 4.

of his armament. And Gian Luigi was a mighty hunter* and of a goodly mien; and the greater part of the men of the city lifted up their eyes unto him, and loved him passing the love of women†, for hunting was in his mouth‡; his lips dropped as an honey-comb§; and Giannettino put on revenge||, and the thing was known to Gian Luigi; and it was evil in his sight. And from this time forth, he devised mischief in his heart against Giannettino and against his master¶, but continued to speak every day peaceably to them, for Andrea Doria had been as a father unto him and unto his brethren, from the day when their father died.

1175. And at that time, in the tenth month, they made marriages** together; and Giannettino gave his sister to wife to the brother of Gian Luigi's wife. And they ate and drank together; but their hearts were not with them††. So are the ways of all who are greedy of gain‡‡.

* Gen. x. 9.

† 2 Sam. i. 26.

‡ כי ציד בפיו i. e. He hunted for popularity; the rabbies generally translate, Deceit was in his mouth. See Jarchi on Gen. xxv. 28.

§ Pro. v. 3. Cant. iv. 11.

|| Comp. Is. lix. 17.

¶ i. e. Against Andrea Doria.

** Gen. xxxiv. 9.

†† i. e. Their hearts were not united, although they outwardly joined in conviviality.

‡‡ Pro. i. 19.

1176. A Jew-man, whose name was Solomon, the son of Samuel, and his son Moses, were carried bound in those days in the ships which were under the hand* of Giannettino; and on the fourth day of the week, on the twenty-ninth day of the tenth month, I went down to deliver them out of his hand†. And they gave me up the old man, at the word of his master, according as it was commanded, when I gave another (viz. a Turk) in his stead, life for life‡. And at that time Giannettino said unto me, “ I will not give up the young man, unless thou give me three Turks in his stead, or their value in money.” And I said, “ Not so, my lord, my power is gone§;” and he said, “ Speak no more unto me of this matter|| :” And I said, “ Thou speakest truly; but behold, my lord, and see, that the end of *Schubim* (gold, pieces) is *Sebubim* (flies¶) and they are a vain thing for safety**.” And he thought scorn††, on account of the greatness of his covetousness, and laughed and said, “ Thou dost not know that *treasures* were made to rove‡‡. And as for the

* Command.

† Exod. iii. 8.

‡ Exod. xxi. 23.

§ Deut. xxxii. 36.

|| Deut. iii. 26.

¶ *יְהִי כְּעֹף הַיָּיִט*. i. e. Riches certainly make themselves wings; they fly away as an eagle toward heaven.

Proverbs xxiii. 5.

** Ps. xxxiii. 17.

†† Esth. iii. 6.

‡‡ i. e. Money must circulate.

young man, I will not let him go*.” And he set not his heart to my words†. And they brought out the old man from the iron furnace‡, and the young man remained there weeping, and lifted up his eyes towards heaven; and the Lord beheld this matter, and it was evil in his sight§. And HE poured out his wrath upon Giannettino, and his destruction came as a whirlwind||.

1177. In those days the Count Gian Luigi brought one of his galleys to Genoa, and two hundred men to put therein; and he revealed not his secret to any man¶. And Andrea Doria and Giannettino said, “What meaneth then this voice of the people in mine ears**?” And the count answered with subtlety, “To send them into the east to take spoil in the countries of our enemies have I brought them hither;” and they believed his words, and remained secure. And Giannettino knew not that his day was come, and that the count had devised evil against him. And Gian Luigi went again into the house of Andrea Doria as often times before††, and said unto him, “Now I have found favor in thy sight, let, I pray thee, my lord and Giannettino, come to the banquet that I shall

* Exod. v. 2.

† Deut. iv. 20.

|| Prov. i. 27.

** 1 Sam. xv. 14.

† Exod. vii. 23.

§ Prov. xxiv. 18.

¶ Amos. iii. 7.

†† Jud. xvi. 20.

prepare for them to-morrow* ;” and he said, “ I will come, my son.” But Andrea Doria fell sick, and they went not thither. And some men wrote unto Andrea Doria, saying, “ Beware of the family of the Fieschi.” And his heart fainted, for he believed them not†. And he said, “ Who of the family of the Fieschi can do less or more‡ except the count, and he is my son ?” This is nothing but the wicked heart of those who walk with slanders§, and may the Lord cut off all flattering lips||.” And while they were yet speaking, behold, Gian Luigi was in the court, for he feared lest his secret should be discovered, and came within to espy, and stole their hearts, and spake peaceably unto them and kissed the children of Giannettino, and went out from them in peace.

1178. Now the count thought in his heart¶; “ It is time for to make me power and a name** ; I will draw my sword, my hand shall destroy them††. And he went into the houses of his friends and of his companions, and said unto them, “ Ye shall eat with me to-night‡‡.” And they assembled themselves with him in his house,

* Esth. v. 8.

† Gen. xlv. 26.

‡ Num. xxii. 18.

§ Jer. vi. 28.

|| Ps. xii. 3.

¶ Esth. vi. 6.

** Ps. cix. 126. Is. lxiii. 12. 14.

†† Exod. xv. 9.

‡‡ Gen. xl. iii. 16. Deut. xx. 19.

and there was set before them to eat ; and they rejoiced together at that time. And at the entrance of his house, he placed watchmen, saying, “ Let none come forth abroad* ;” and none of them knew what he had devised to do†. And it came to pass, that when they were merry‡, the count Gian Luigi said unto them, “ Ye, my companions, know Giannettino and his communication§. And how he exalts himself, saying, ‘ I will reign ;’ come now, therefore, and let us slay him||. And those also who watch at the entering of the gates of the city let us smite with the edge of the sword, and swallow them up alive as the grave¶ ; and we will take the city to us**, and by your word shall it be ruled, only in the throne will I be greater *than you*††. I will be your captain‡‡.” [לך] And they said, “ Behold, we would it might be according to thy word§§.” And they left two who would not go with them in the house, and set a watch over them. And his mother and his wife entreated him much to put him away from his mischief||| ; and they lifted up

* 2 Kings x. 25.

† Comp. Gen. xi. 6.

‡ Esth. i. 10.

§ 2 Kings ix. 11.

|| Gen. xxxvii. 20.

¶ Pro. i. 12.

** Gen. xxxiv. 16.

†† Gen. xli. 40.

‡‡ 2 Sam. v. 2 ; vii. 8. 1 Kings i. 35.

§§ Gen. xxx. 34.

||| Esth. viii. 3.

their voices and wept*, but he would not hearken unto them. And he and his companions, his friends and two hundred men who were with him, went out from his house; and he divided the people into two bands†; and the one band went with his brother unto the gates of the city, and they found the watchmen lying securely, being given up to slumber; and they fell suddenly upon them and took the gates of the city out of their hand. And the second band went with him to the place where the twenty ships of Andrea Doria were moored securely. And he sent thither also the ship which he had brought with subtlety into the city; and they fought against the twenty ships both by sea and by land. And he said unto the prisoners, “Come out;” and the men of the ships trembled greatly, and their voice was heard from afar. And the watchmen of the ships fled at the cry of them‡, for they were but few in number: for the destruction of Giannettino was all this brought about, and thus they began to do it§. And the fame thereof was heard in the house of Andrea Doria||, and Giannettino ran at the noise toward the wall at the entering-in of the gate of the city, and cried aloud¶. And the men of the

* Ruth. i. 14.

† Numb. xvi. 34.

|| Gen. xlv. 16.

‡ Gen. xxxii. 7.

§ Gen. xi. 6.

¶ 1 Kings xviii. 28.

count went out against him, and slew him*. And his carcase hath been as dung upon the earth until noon, that none gathereth†. And Andrea and the little children of Giannettino fled at the cry of them, for they said, “Lest the earth swallow us up also‡.” And he rode upon a horse, and did flee§ naked and barefoot||; he looked not behind him¶, for he knew not whence this great evil came upon them. And it came to pass, when the rash Gian Luigi went in the darkness of the night unto the ships, being clad in a scaled coat of mail, and having an helmet of brass on his head**, that his feet slipped†† and he fell into the sea, and he utterly fainted and died; and there was none to save him, because of the great cry that was there, and his mother became childless among women‡‡ at that time. And the nations heard of their destruction, that the mighty man hath stumbled against the mighty, and they are fallen together, Giannettino and the count, in the same day§§; namely, the third day of the month of January, in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-seven.

1179. And the brethren of Gian Luigi and much

* Jer. xl. 14, 15.

† Num. xvi. 34.

|| Is. xx. 2, 3, 4.

** 1 Sam. xvii. 38.

‡‡ 1 Sam. xv. 33.

† Jer. viii. 2; xvi. 4; xxv. 33.

§ 2 Sam. xxii. 11; Ps. xviii. 10.

¶ Gen. xix. 17, 26.

†† 2 Sam. xxii. 37; Ps. xviii. 37.

§§ Jer. xlvi. 12.

people that had joined him, went in the streets of the town, and cried with a loud voice, saying, “ May the people of the country live* ;” and they proclaimed liberty to all the inhabitants at that time†. And they said that they would take the palace where the doge was ; and the men of the city trembled greatly, and they went thither and demanded it of them by command of the count ; but they answered them, “ Let Gian Luigi come, and whatsoever he shall say unto us we will do ;” for his fear fell upon them, and they knew not that his day had come, and that the time of his visitation had come upon him‡.

1180. And the poorest sort of the people§ spoiled the ships of Andrea Doria at that time ; they left no remnant||. And the captives went out free ; the uncircumcised fled by the way on land ; and about two thousand Turks took one of the ships and hastened to make their way into their own country, and they looked not behind them. And two of the Spanish ships pursued after them, but could not overtake them, so they returned into the city.

1181. And in the morning it came to pass, that

* i. e. Vive la Constitution.

† Lev. xxv. 10.

‡ Jer. xlvi. 2 ; 1. 31.

§ 2 Kings xxiv. 14.

|| Comp. Is. xvi. 6. Jer. xlix. 9. Obad. 5.

there went a proclamation throughout the city*, saying, "The count is drowned, and he is no more† who thought to possess dwelling-places that were not his‡." And many who had joined them betook themselves to their homes, for they feared for their lives. And it was told unto his brethren, saying, "Your eldest brother, of whom ye said, 'Under his shadow we shall live§,' died in his own sin||; and as for you, go ye out of the city; be ye clean that bear the weapons of war¶, lest some evil take you also**; why should your mother be deprived also of you three in one day††?" And they said, "We will not go, unless the men of the city forgive us, and all those that joined us, and will promise that not a hair of our head shall fall to the ground; for wherein shall it be known here? "Is it not in that they give unto us‡‡ a copy of the covenant signed and sealed; for what is signed and sealed cannot be reversed§§." And the men of the city did according to all they had asked, for they were troubled at their presence|||. And they went out of the city into the

* 1 Kings xxii. 36.

† Hab. i. 6.

|| Num. xxvii. 3.

** Gen. xix. 19.

†† Exod. xxxiii. 16.

† Gen. v. 24.

§ Lam. iv. 20.

¶ Is. lii. 11.

†† Gen. xxvii. 45.

§§ Esth. viii. 8, 13.

||| Gen. xlv. 3.

fortress of Montobbio*, and mourned many days for their brother, as one that is in bitterness for his first-born†.

1182. Then were the porters and watchmen replaced at the gates of the city as before, and the country had rest. And they caused to be proclaimed‡, by desire of the doge and the elders of the city, saying, “Bring ye back the clothes and arms which ye have taken in the ships, also the slaves who are hidden in the houses:” and they did so.

1183. On that day the second Jew fled into my house; and I hid him, and let him go free§. Then I said, “The Lord is a God of knowledge, and by him actions are weighed||.” Are *not* these the words which I spake unto Giannettino¶, saying, “That pieces of gold are vain things for safety**.” And the young Jew was taken the second time near Alessandria, for they recognized him; and I gave another slave in his stead to rid him out of their hands††.

1184. And that bitter and rash count had not even a burial‡‡, for Andrea Doria would not allow it; and they brought him up that they might know

* מונטוביו.

† Zech. xii. 10.

‡ Exod. xxxvi. 6.

§ Exod. xxi. 26, 27.

|| 1 Sam. ii. 3.

¶ Comp. Gen. xlii. 14.

** Ps. xxxiii. 17.

†† Gen. xxxvi. 22.

‡‡ Eccl. vi. 3.

him, but cast him the second time into the sea ; and there he remaineth for ever*. And most of his acquaintance and much people wept many days over Gian Luigi ; for the beauty of his countenance and sweetness of his speech, they would not be comforted† ; and many mourned for him.

1185. And Andrea Doria cried with a great and bitter cry‡, saying, “ I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against me§ ; may the Lord look and judge||.” And his friends rose up to comfort him ; but he refused to be comforted¶, for his soul was greatly in bitterness because of the thing that had happened. And he said unto the elders of the city, “ Why have ye done this thing to forgive those sinful men who were of them that troubled us**, and that thought to make themselves altogether princes over us††, and give us up this day into the hand of them that seek our life, even into the hand of the poorest sort of the people‡‡ as it is this day§§. Why do ye respect persons in judgment ; be not afraid of their faces, for the judgment is God's|||. And now let us cut them

* 1 Sam. i. 22.

† Gen. xxvii. 34.

|| Exod. v. 21.

** Jud. xi. 35.

†† 2 Kings xxiv. 14.

† Comp. Gen. xxxvii. 35.

§ Is. i. 2.

¶ Gen. xxxvii. 35.

†† Num. xvi. 13.

§§ Deut. xxix. 28. (Heb. 27).

||| Deut. i. 17.

off from being a nation, that their name may be no more in remembrance*, and their violent dealings come down upon their own pate†. If not, blot me, I pray you, out of the book which ye have written‡, that I may turn to the right hand or to the left§. I call to record this day against you||, as for the copy of the writing of the covenant which is in their hand, do not take it to heart, for concerning such bloody men of our days, they who speak in proverbs say¶, “There is a time to plant, and a time to pluck up that which is planted**.”

1186. And the elders of the city feared before his face, and answered him, saying, “Though any thing that is signed and sealed ought not to be recalled, yet we will do according to all thou shalt command us; and whithersoever thou shalt send us we will go††; we will not turn either to the right hand or to the left‡‡. And they spake words of comfort unto him, so he went to his house mourning and having his head covered§§; and he mourned for Giannettino many days|||. But

* Ps. lxxxiii. 4 (Heb. 5).

† Ps. vii. 16 (Heb. 17).

‡ Exod. xxxii. 32.

§ Gen. xxiv. 49.

|| Deut. xxx. 19. Comp. Exod. xix. 23.

¶ Num. xxi. 27.

** Eccles. iii. 2.

†† Josh. i. 16.

‡‡ Num. xx. 17.

§§ Esther vi. 12.

||| Gen. xxxvii. 34.

Giannettino was the cause of all this, as the ancient proverb saith, “Of the wicked cometh forth wickedness.”

1187. And Henry, King of England, slept with his fathers, and the physicians embalmed him* ; and he was put in a coffin in the sepulchre of the kings, and Edward his son reigned in his stead ; and he was eleven years old when they put the crown of the kingdom upon his head†. [קלא]

1188. And it came to pass, in the month of Abib, that is the month of March, that the men of Genoa violated their statute and made void their covenant. And they sent men of valor by command of Andrea Doria, to the cities of Gian Luigi which are on the mountain, and they took them, because the inhabitants of the country melted away before them‡. The fortress of Montobbio alone was left, for it was fortified, and they abode there from that day forward, when they saw that evil was determined against them. Moreover Don Ferrante Gonzaga, the viceroy of the emperor, filled his hand, and took also the rest of the cities which were nigh unto him, and put a garrison into them ; unto the fortress of Carisso§ also, which is on the mountain, he sent soldiers and three battering-rams. And they battered its walls many

* Gen. 1. 2. 26.

† Comp. Esther vi. 8.

‡ Ex. xv. 15. Jos. ii. 9.

§ קאריסאן.

days; and there remained no more courage in the men of the fortress because of them*. And they delivered it into their hand, and their life became a prey unto them. Pier Luigi, duke of Piacenza also, the son of the pope, took some of their cities at that time, and there were none to save them; and the men of Genoa pulled down the house of Gian Luigi to the ground, and it became a heap for ever even unto this day†. And upon the fortress of Montobbio also, the men of Genoa sent about one thousand two hundred men and twenty-nine battering-rams and iron balls and gunpowder in abundance, and besieged it many days‡.

* Jos. ii. 11.

† Jos. viii. 28.

‡ The following extract, from a scarce tract (*An Historical Relation of the Conspiracy of John Lewis, Count de Fieschi, against the City and Republic of Genoa, in the Year 1547, written in Italian by Augustin Mascardi, Gentleman of the Bed-chamber to Pope Urban the Eighth, done into English by the Honorable Hugh Hare, Esq., London, 1693*), describes the termination of this siege.

“ The palaces of John Lewis, Count Fieschi were confiscated, and by the emperor’s consent divided into several houses for merchants and other private men, and leased out as the senate thought most proper for the increasing their revenue. Fieschi’s palace in the street called L’Inviolata (La casa de’ Fieschi all’ Inviolata) a large princely and magnificent structure was demolished and rased even to the very foundations. Fieschi’s three brothers and Verrina, who were looked upon as the prime contrivers and managers of the conspiracy were declared traitors and rebels; as for other persons concerned in it, they being adjudged

1189. And Francis, the king of France, slept with his fathers on the second day of the month of

only accessories and abettors of the fact, were several of them by name condemned to banishment for fifty years.

“ But Ottobuoni Fieschi, not content with the secure retreat he enjoyed at Marscille, came back awhile after to Mirandola ; and by his frequent journeys from the French army, which then lay encamped thereabouts, into France, and his returns thither again, gave the republic just occasion to suspect that there was some new design carrying on against them. Jerome Fieschi having lodged himself in Montobbio, and Verrina being come back to him with several others of his adherents, he made it his business to fortify the castle and to lay in vast stores of ammunition and provision. This gave so great alarm to the senate, that, having consulted the emperor, they were all of opinion (as he was likewise) that it was absolutely necessary for them to possess themselves of the fort. It stands just at the back of the city, and besides other natural advantages for strength, its high situation made it formidable to the Genoueses, as being a place able to do them a great deal of mischief, if that nest of traitors that had sheltered themselves there, should prevail with the French to make use of it towards the recovery of their former power in Genoua ; which could not be compassed without the ruin of their present constitution. For these reasons, therefore, the senate sent Pansa again to Count Jerome Fieschi, to try if he could persuade him, and those of his family who had any interest in the reversion, to sell it to the Genouese on such terms as should be agreed on at a treaty between both parties. But Fieschi having but a small stock of prudence, and perhaps being puffed up with a vain opinion of success, from the liberal promises wherewith the French had buoyed him up, he did not only deny to comply with the senate’s proposal, but also, as if he had studied to increase the jealousies they had of him, and to hasten his own ruin, he told Pansa, that he kept the fort for the service of a far greater prince

April ; and they buried him in the sepulchre of the kings, and mourned over him many days.

1190. And his second son, Henry, reigned in his stead ; and they put the royal crown upon his head*, and his kingdom was firmly established†.

than himself, meaning the French king. This answer so surprised the Genoueses, that after many threatening messages to Fieschi, and public declarations against his proceedings, they resolved to try whether they could out him by force. In order hereunto they sent several companies of soldiers with a good train of artillery under the command of Augustin Spinola, an experienced captain, to besiege the fort, which, after having held out for some time, was forced to capitulate ; but could obtain no better terms, than that Jerome Fieschi and his adherents should surrender themselves at discretion. This dedition of theirs occasioned many disputes in Genoua, which were at first whispered about, till being debated in the senate, both sides of the question found its assertors, both in that assembly and in all public meetings. When it was proposed in the senate what should be done with Jerome Fieschi and the rest of the prisoners, the house divided upon it, some were for pardoning, and others for executing the conspirators. Some aggravated the fact as the most execrable parricide that ever was committed, and others represented it as the consequences of juvenile rashness and levity, severely enough punished by the death of Count Fieschi and the other penalties. Andrea Doria hearing of what vote was like to pass, and being extremely grieved that the traitors had so strong a party even in the senate-house, he came thither and discoursed so excellently, that without any debate, it was resolved that Jerome Fieschi and the rest of the prisoners should be put to death ; which was accordingly executed upon them."

* Comp. Esth. vi. 8.

† 1 Kings ii. 12.

And the King Henry was a mighty man of valor, his hand was against every man, and every man's hand was against him; he dwelt in the presence of the princes of France*. And his fame was throughout all the earth.

1191. And the elector of Saxony and the landgrave gathered men of valor, to war against the emperor, and the emperor went out against them with a numerous people and with a strong hand. And they encamped on the bank of the river Danube, and the river overflowed its banks† between them. And the hearts of the German princes were divided; part of them turned after the landgrave, and stood afar off; and part of them went after the elector: and the elector brought near his camp on the twenty-fourth day of the second month, and went out to reconnoitre on the greenness of the river‡, and about three thousand men with him. And the river overflowed its banks; and also the men of the emperor went out to reconnoitre on the bank of the river, and found rest for the sole of their foot§, so they passed over||. And there was nothing known unto the elector, for they were far off from the camp. And it came to pass, when they were in the field, that they fell upon him suddenly, and smote his men and his son with

* Gen. xvi. 12.

† Josh. iii. 15.

‡ Cant. vi. 11. Job. viii. 12.

§ Gen. viii. 9.

|| i. e. They found a shallow place where they could pass over.

the edge of the sword* ; and the elector was taken in their destruction at the same time. And they brought him unto the emperor, who pronounced judgment upon him. And he thought to destroy his life, as one of the lowest. And the elector besought him with tears, and fell down at his feet† ; and the emperor repented of the evil which he thought to do‡, and they set a watch over him; the duke landgrave§ also made peace with the emperor at that time. And he humbled himself before the emperor, and besought him for his life; and they took him, and set a watch over him. Then the princes of Germany were amazed||, and humbled themselves before the emperor; neither did there remain any more courage in any man because of him¶ ; and the land had rest.

1192. And the viceroy of the emperor who was in Naples, desired to make new statutes and judgments which were not good against the oppressed**, according as it was in Spain; and the inhabitants of the city were unwilling, and refused to hearken unto him, and his wrath was kindled against them, and his anger burned in him††.

* The prince of Saxony was wounded in the battle of Mülberg, or on the Lochauer Heide.

† דוכוסלאננרביאו. ‡ Esth. viii. 3. § Ex. xxxii. 14.

|| Ex. xv. 15.

¶ Jos. ii. 11.

** i. e. Against the Jews who had been compelled hypocritically to profess Christianity.

†† Esth. i. 12.

1193. And three young persons of the city delivered a man from the hand of the officers; and the viceroy commanded, and they seized them, and put them in prison. And he poured out his fury upon them*, and slaughtered them like kids, in the castle-street, on the twenty-third day of the month of May; and they had none to save them. And all the city was moved about them, and they ran to the fortress, every one with his weapons of war in his hand; but they did nothing on that day. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that they went unto the prince of Bisignano†; and some men of the sons of the city made him ride through the streets, to see what was in the hearts of the men of the country; and about five hundred men were with him. And they went from gate to gate, and there was none that opened the mouth, or peeped‡, for those men spake unto the hearts of the men of the city, and their wrath was appeased. And they returned every one unto his house; and the viceroy hastened unto the fortress, for there at that time was his house.

1194. And on the twenty-fifth of the same

* Comp. Lam. ii. 5.

† ביזניאנו, anciently Bisunianum, a city of Italy, in the kingdom of Naples.

‡ Is. x. 14.

month they rebelled against the viceroy, from small unto great, and plotted together not to obey him; and the viceroy heard the noise of the city, being in an uproar*. And he shut himself up in the fortress from that day and afterwards, for he feared for his life. And the inhabitants of Naples sent unto the emperor messengers, saying, “ Behold, we die; we perish†; take away from us the viceroy, this Belial, this shedder of blood. For we are thy servants, and we will serve thee till our change come‡; only take away from us this death§.” And the men of the city set watchmen, and fortified themselves in the city; and they remained upon their ward many days. And the fortress was straitly shut up, none went out and none came in.

1195. And when Andrea Doria heard this evil thing, he was sore afraid; and his men were besieging Mantua with the lords of Genoa, at that time. And he armed his trained servants, and sent ships thither, and upon them were a small number of Spaniards; and he left them without the city, near the fort where the viceroy was. And it came to pass one day, that the hired men of Naples cut themselves with the Spaniards after

* 1 Kings i. 41.

† Job xiv. 14.

‡ Num. xvii. 12 (Heb. 27).

§ Ex. x. 17.

their manner* ; and the Spaniards were smitten, and fell by the sword before them : and the inhabitants of the city took their booty, they left no gleanings ; and the men of the fortress fired guns upon them and sling-stones, assisting the rest of the Spaniards who were left ; and the men of the city drew back ; and the land had rest. And they remained every one under his banner† upon their ward, until the men returned, who were sent unto the emperor (may his glory be exalted !) at that time.

1196. And they battered the fortress of Montobbio many days, but did nothing, for it was very strong. And the Lord put faintness into the heart‡ of Lord Gerolamo, the brother of Gian Luigi, and into the heart of the men who were with him there. And they said, “ Behold, we die, we perish§ ; our souls are weary in this fortress, and no man layeth it to heart||, to come to help us. And what are we ? Is our strength the strength of stones, or is our flesh of brass¶, that we should be able to stand longer before this great host ? Come on ; let us go down, and we will deliver the fortress into their hand, that they may deliver our souls from death.” But their hearts were

* 1 Kings xviii. 28 ; i. e. They fought with the Spaniards.

† Num. i. 52 ; ii. 2.

‡ Lev. xxvi. 36.

§ Num. xvii. 12 (27).

|| Jer. xii. 11.

¶ Job. vi. 12.

divided, and they were found faulty* ; and there remained no more spirit in them. And Garabinta, that Belial upon whom Gerolamo relied, was the cause, for the officers of the host secretly turned his heart backward† ; and he was a Satan unto them‡.

1197. And Gerolamo, the governor of the fortress, sent him unto the officers of the host on the ninth day of the month of June, which is the fifth month. And he spake unto them, saying, “ He has given the fortress into your hand, [קלב] and let our lives be unto us a prey.” But they did nothing on that day. And Andrea Doria was the cause, for his soul was embittered against them ; and he said, “ This is the time to laugh, and to avenge me of mine enemies§.” And that Belial Garabinta|| returned unto his master, and spake unto him that which he had devised in his heart¶ at that time. And he added faintness unto his heart, and unto the heart of the men who were there. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind** ;

* Hos. x. 2.

† 1 Kings xviii. 37.

‡ 1 Sam. xxix. 4 ; 2 Sam. xix. 22 ; 1 Kings xi. 25.

§ Is. i. 24.

|| נֶאֱרָאבִינְתָה, a name probably of a person from Graubünden.

¶ 1 Kings xii. 33. Neh. vi. 8.

** Is. vii. 2.

and they said, “ We be all dead men*.” And it came to pass, on the morrow, that the rash Gero-
lamo called with a loud voice unto the officers of
the host from the wall. And he said unto them,
“ Assemble yourselves and come yet†, and I will
deliver the fortress into the hand of the men of
Genoa, and what seemeth good in their eyes
they shall do, for they are men wondered at.‡”
But he knew not that they sought his life to
entangle it, according as they did on that day.

1198. And when the officers of the host heard
it, they went up unto the fortress, and Augustin
Spinola was over the host at that time. And he
came up to the fortress, with his sword drawn in his
hand§, and the count Gerolamo went out to meet
him, and he embraced him, and fell upon his neck
and wept; for the cunning devices of the time had
taken away his ornaments from him||. And
Augustin, the chief of the host, spake unto his
heart, saying, “ There is no new thing under the
sun¶, for there is a time to dance, and a time to
mourn**.” This matter was by the decree of the
watchers††. When they came into the fortress,

* Exod. xii. 33.

† Joel. iii. 11.

‡ Zech. iii. 8.

§ Num. xxii. 23.

|| Comp. Ex. xxxiii. 6.

¶ Eccles. i. 9.

** Eccles. iii. 14.

†† Dan. iv. 17 (Heb. 14); i. e. This was ordered by superior
powers, and was above human control.

they sent the hired men* away free; but the rash Gerolamo and the rest of his men they put in ward, because it was not declared what should be done to them†. And the men of the host were amazed at the strength of the fortress, and at the faintness of heart of the men who were with *Gerolamo*; and they said, “This is the Lord’s doings‡; for the battle belongeth unto the Lord.” And Augustin was confederate§ before his God, with this rash count Gerolamo, yet did he not remember his covenant, but forgot it||.

1199. And Domenico Doria took four men of the friends of Gerolamo and some of his servants, and slaughtered them like kids before the eyes of day; and his hand was stretched out still¶. And the officers of the host rebuked him, and would not let him do so again, as it was in his wicked⁴ heart at that time. Of the rest of the men, they sent some bound unto the galleys; and they remain there until this day. And the count Gerolamo, and two of his kinsmen they put in ward, and made their lives bitter with chastisements; their eye had no compassion upon them. And it came to pass, after some days, that they took their heads from off them in the midst of the fortress; there

* שכירים, i. e. Soldiers. † Num. xv. 34. ‡ Ps. cxviii. 23.

§ They belonged to the same religious association. Comp. Gen. xiv. 13.

|| Gen. xl. 23.

¶ Is. ix. 12 (Heb. 11), 17 (Heb. 16).

has no such cruelty been done in Italy from the time she became a nation. And the walls of the fortress they cast to the ground, and the lords of Genoa surely thrust out Garabinta altogether* from their territory.

1200. And Andrea Doria sent again ships unto Naples, and in them were about two thousand Spaniards. From that day, and afterwards, the Spaniards sought to avenge their brethren of the men of the city†, for their soul was embittered concerning them. And it came to pass, one day, that they went into the markets, which were nigh unto them, and sought to lay hand‡ on the houses of the city. And the inhabitants of Naples went out against them, as at other times§; and the men of the fortress threw stones upon them, and fired guns at them, and they could not stand before them. And many fell slain to the ground, and the rest drew back with shame, for the Spaniards fought against them nine days; the men of the city could not withstand them, for the tower warred against them with guns and sling stones, and much people died. Then were many houses full of good things||, given up to be spoiled, and

* Exod. xi. 1.

† Num. xxxi. 2.

‡ Est. ii. 21.

§ Judg. xvi. 20.

|| Deut. vi. 11.

the city of Naples was perplexed. And the Spaniards burned four hundred houses, and avenged their brethren at that time. And a great tumult of the Lord was in the city*, and many of the heads of the people of the land fled, when they saw that evil was determined against them. And the people were left as sheep that have not a shepherd†; and there remained no more courage in them to withstand the pride of the Spaniards; and they fell into the hand of those who sought their life, even into the hand of the Spaniards, and they did what they would unto them‡; and the women were lain with; and the cry of the city went up toward heaven, and there was none to save it. And the emperor did not hearken unto their voice to remove the viceroy, and he was like thorns in their sides§ all the days. And he took from them⁴ all the weapons of war and the brazen rams, so the city was greatly impoverished||; and their reproach was heard throughout the whole earth.

1201. In those days, Pier Luigi builded the fortress which is in Piacenza; and it was evil in the eyes of the nobles of the city. And they had dealings with Don Ferrante Gonzaga, and made a conspiracy against Pier Luigi to kill him, and

* Zech. xiv. 13.

† 1 Kings xxii. 17.

‡ Esth. ix. 5.

§ Num. xxxiii. 55.

|| Jud. vi. 6.

the thing was known unto him ; but yet he did not set his heart to this also* ; and he sat down to eat bread, and they came unto him in his house on the sabbath day on the tenth day of the month of September, and smote him, so that he died ; and they cast him through the window†. And the inhabitants of the city abused him, and trode upon him like the mire of the street ; and his carcase was for several days as dung upon the face of the field‡. And his house was a spoil unto them ; only the poorest sort of the people§, they who are glad at calamities||, plundered all the victuals which he had prepared to put into the fortress. And his men hid themselves there, every one turned after his own way ; and their life was unto them a prey. The posts went out, being hastened at that time¶, and they went unto Milan. And Don Ferrante Gonzaga drew nigh, and came into the city on the second day**, on the twelfth day of the month ; and they gave up the city into his hand in the name of the emperor, and he made a covenant with them. And also of the vessels of silver which they had plundered, they gave him his part ; beside the brazen rams which Pier Luigi had prepared in great abundance, to put into the

* Exod. vii. 23.

† 2 Kings ix. 33 (Heb. 35).

‡ 2 Kings ix. 27.

§ 2 Kings xxiv. 14.

|| Pro. xvii. 5.

¶ Esther iii. 15.

** יום השני, i. e. Monday.

fortress. And when Don Ferrante Gonzaga saw his corpse, he said, “Bury him, for he is the pope’s son*.” And when his father Paul heard all that had befallen him, he cried with a loud and bitter cry†, and mourned for his son many days‡. And he gathered together men of valor, and sent them unto Parma; and lord Ottavio, the son-in-law of the emperor, the son of Pier Luigi who was dead, was over the host at that time.

1202. And Don Ferrante also gathered together men of valor, and sent them unto Piacenza; and they remained upon their ward many days. And the emperor had not displeased him in saying, “Why hast thou done so§?” For his soul was embittered against Pier Luigi, because he had been with Gian Luigi Fieschi in the insurrection; but they returned his recompence upon his own head||.

1203. And the heart of the pope was not peaccable with the emperor from that day and afterwards; and all his thoughts were to injure him continually¶. And twice he sent messengers of death, to slay Don Ferrante, but could not prevail against him, for the thing was known. Only against the emperor he did nothing, because he was prosperous in his way.

* 2 Kings ix. 34.

† Gen. xxxvii. 34.

‡ Joel iii. 4. 7.

† Gen. xxvii. 34. Esth. iv. 1.

§ 1 Kings i. 6.

¶ Comp. Gen. vi. 5.

1204. In those days, Solyman, the Turk, and the emperor, made a covenant of peace by sea and by land; and the land had rest five years. But Dragut would not be in the covenant with the uncircumcised, for his soul was embittered against them. And he went up to take a spoil, and to take a prey*, in the countries of the uncircumcised as yesterday and the day before; but Solyman drove him away from his land. [קלג]

1205. And on the sixteenth day of the month of October, in the year three hundred and eight, was the earth clean dissolved; the earth was moved exceedingly†, in the plain of Monte Malio by Savinian; and the houses were covered, and the high walnut-trees; and its best part was destroyed; there had not been such a thing in that country since it became a nation: this was the finger of God‡.

1206. And the brother of the Sofi came unto Constantinople, to cast himself down before Solyman, and to entreat him, and to pray before him for his life; and he cried before him, “Alas! help, O king!§ for my brother has despised me, and has driven me away from my country, and from the land of my kindred;” and Solyman accepted his

* Ezek. xxxviii. 12.

† Is. xxiv. 19.

‡ Exod. viii. 19 (15).

§ 2 Sam. xiv. 4.

person, and honored him, and spake kindly unto him, for his bowels did yearn over him*; and he gave him presents and costly things after the manner of a king. And he said unto him, “Fear not; neither be faint-hearted†, for I will not leave thee‡ until I have brought thee back to thy station, only be strong and courageous.” And he bowed himself before Solyman to the ground, and blessed him, and went out from him, and removed to the house that he had prepared for him: and he abode there several days.

1207. And it came to pass, when the time of the singing of the birds was come, when the flowers had appeared on the earth§, that Solyman made ready his chariot, and took his people with him||. And he turned his face toward the country of the Sofi, king of Persia, in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-eight. And the Sofi went out against him with a mighty hand; and the war was strong between them in that year. And Solyman, and the officers of his hosts, and his army, remained there many days. And the rest of the particulars of this war, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the kings of Persia and Media.

* Gen. xliii. 30.

† Is. vii. 4.

‡ Gen. xxviii. 15.

§ Cant. ii. 12.

|| Exod. xiv. 6.

1208. And the emperor gave his daughter unto Maximilian, the son of his brother, to wife, and sent him unto Milan ; and he removed thence and came unto Genoa in the month of July, which is the fifth month. And the nobles of the city honored him much ; and he went to sea in ships, to go unto the land of Spain. And Andrea Doria, the chief of the emperor's host went with him to accompany him.

1209. And Henry, the king of France, came unto Piedmont, and many nobles and honorable men with him. And he came unto Turin on the sixth day, on the eleventh day of the month of August, which is the sixth month. And the nobles of Piedmont received him with joyfulness and with gladness of heart*, and they honored him, every man as he was able† ; and they cried, “ God save the king !” and the earth was rent at their voice. And he went from thence to see all the cities of the plain, which his father had taken for him. And the chiefs of the emperor were afraid of him, and sent soldiers into the cities of the borders, for they knew not what a day might bring forth‡.

1210. And Ercole, the duke of Ferrara, came

* Deut. xxviii. 47.

† Deut. xvi. 17.

‡ Pro. xxvii. 1.

unto Turin, and bowed himself before the king unto the ground; and they asked each other of their welfare, and came into the tent*. And the king honored him much, and they rejoiced together at that time. And he remained there several days. And he bowed before the king to the ground, and blessed him, and went from him in peace.

1211. And it came to pass, one day, that the king went unto Mandabia†, to see the buildings which he had commanded to be made; and he sat down to eat bread. And there came one that had escaped‡; and he said unto him, “Alas! my Lord, the king, for Bourdeaux§ and all Gasconia|| have rebelled, because the chief of thy host made heavy his yoke upon them¶; and they slew him. And his men have escaped, and I am come to tell thee;” and Henry trembled much, and he rode upon a horse, and returned unto his country, even unto France, in haste. And he executed judgments on the rebellious men, and brought them down unto the grave in blood; he had no compassion upon them. And when the rest heard thereof

* Exod. xviii. 7.

† *Mandeuve*, formerly *Mandubia*, *Manduvia*, *Epamandudurum*, a large village near Montbéliard.

‡ Gen. xiv. 13.

|| גאסקוניה.

§ בורדיאוס.

¶ 1 Kings xii. 10—14.

they were sore afraid, and their heart melted and became like water; and his kingdom was firmly established.

1212. And Henry allowed the Jews, the merchants who were in Mantua at that time, to come into the cities of his kingdom. And they went into the king's gate and bowed themselves before him to the ground; and he accepted their persons, and made a release to them*, according to the hand of our God, upon him†; and they went from him in peace, for he was a faithful man‡.

1213. And Dragut came in that month into the seas of Naples to take the spoil, and to take the prey§. And he lifted up his eyes; and behold, a fishing-boat|| of those which belonged unto the priests¶ who were in Malta, came from Marseille, and therein were many priests and honorable men, and gold and silver in abundance. And he went upon her like a bear bereaved of her whelps**, and God delivered it into his hand. And also from the unwalled towns†† of the inhabitants of that country he took about fifty souls of men, and went away unto his own country. And he

* Esth. ii. 18.

† Ezra vii. 9.

‡ Prov. xx. 6.

§ Isa. x. 6

|| דוניאה, the same with דונית from the Hebrew דון, to fish.

¶ i. e. The Maltese knights of St. John.

** 2 Sam. xvii. 8. Hos. xiii. 8.

†† Esther ix. 19

returned again, and took some of the large ships according to his heart's desire; and there was none to save from his hand. And the rest were dismayed before him; and the sailors sent a present unto him, and he made with them a covenant of peace; so they went their way.

1214. And Philip, the son of the emperor, went to sea with the ships of Andrea Doria at Roses, which is in Catalonia, in those days. And he came unto Genoa on the twenty-fourth day of the month of Chisleu, in the year three hundred and nine, and the nobles of the city honored him much; and he abode in the house of Andrea Doria, the chief of his host, several days. And many nobles and honorable men came to bow before him, and he stood not up nor moved before them; and the chambers of their hearts were full of indignation against him*. And he went from thence unto Milan, and the nobles of the city received him with gladness, and bowed before him unto the ground, and brought presents before him. Also, all the cities of the dukedom filled their hand, every man as he was able at that time. And he set his face towards the wilderness†, to go to Germany, to see the face of the emperor, his father.

* Esther v. 9.

† Num. xxiv. 1.

1215. For the mountains will I take up a weeping and wailing*, because I looked for good, and evil came unto me†; my harp also is turned to mourning‡. I looked for peace, and there was none§; for the choicest of youths|| was taken away when the fruit of my womb, the son of my vows was visited¶: the Lord is righteous**! Why did the knees prevent me†† to see labor and sorrow‡‡; let not the day wherein my mother bare me be blessed§§. The violence done to me be upon this my evil time, which has brought me to days and years in which I have no pleasure|||; for what pleasure have I yet, after this grief, when the arrows of his trials which *my son* met with, set themselves in array at the gate¶¶; they smote me, they wounded me*†, and embittered me; He has caused the arrows of his quiver to enter into me; my reins*‡ they have broken asunder*§; they did not give me rest till I swallowed down my spittle*||; so that my days were consumed in vanity*¶;

* Jer. ix. 10 (Heb. 9).

† Job. xxx. 26.

‡ Job. xxx. 31.

§ Comp. Job. iii. 9. Is. lix. 11.

|| Comp. Ezek. xxiii. 6. 12. 23.

¶ Prov. xxxi. 2.

** Lam. i. 18.

†† Job iii. 12.

‡‡ Jer. xx. 18. Ps. xc. 10.

§§ Jer. xx. 14.

||| Eccles. xii. 1.

¶¶ Is. xxii. 7.

*† Cant. v. 7.

*‡ Lam. iii. 13.

*§ Job xvi. 12.

*|| Job. vii. 19.

*¶ Comp. Jer. xx. 18.

my bitter and impetuous heart roareth like the sea* ; mine eye trickleth down and ceaseth not†. Weeping endureth at night, and in the morning cometh lamentation‡ ; and a mourning as the owls§. Oh, that my head were waters, and mine eyes a fountain of tears|| ! for it is no good report¶.

1216. Judah, the priest, my son, was a lion's whelp**, of whom we said, “ Under his shadow we shall live††.” Because of our transgressions, he stooped down, he couched‡‡, and was not ; for God took him§§ in the night of the sixth day, on the twenty-ninth of the month Shebat in the year three hundred and nine. And he went to his rest and left us sighing. Blessed be the true Judge ! Let that night be solitary|||, for on the same my house was spoiled suddenly ; in a moment were my curtains spoiled¶¶, for my sun was darkened ; † the crown [קלך] of my head fell*†, the stars of my heaven drew back ; who has believed my report, my grief is very great*†. The work that *has been wrought* is grievous unto me*§, and there is no

* Jer. vi. 23.

† Lam. iii. 49.

‡ Comp. Ps. xxx. 5 (6).

§ Micah. i. 9.

|| Jer. ix. 1.

¶¶ 1 Sam. ii. 24.

** Gen. xlix. 9.

†† Lam. iv. 20.

‡‡ Gen. xlix. 9.

§§ Gen. v. 24.

||| Job. iii. 7.

¶¶ Jer. iv. 20.

*† Lam. v. 16.

*§ Job. ii. 13.

*§ Eccles. ii. 17.

comforter* ; he that was stronger than a cedar (in wisdom a father) planted by the finger of God† ; alas ! the hewer came upon him when he was seventeen years old. Woe unto the eyes which have seen this ! this I will recall into my bitter and impetuous heart‡, that our Maker has prepared for him a fountain of life ; with this we can be comforted, as there is left for our souls an everlasting salvation in the house of the king. I hope that the God of the spirits of all flesh§ will bind up his pure soul in the bundle of life||, and that his rest will be glorious¶. And on me, the embittered one, and on the grieved spirit of my wife Paloma**, HE will have compassion, and comfort us, and will deal more kindly with our latter *end* and last *days*, than with our beginning††, for the sake of his great name ; for in him my soul trusteth‡‡, therefore I hope in him§§.

1217. And Andrea Doria armed his trained servants||| by command of the emperor in that year,

* Lam. i. 9.

† Comp. Ps. civ. 16.

‡ Comp. Lam. iii. 21.

§ Num. xvi. 22.

|| 1 Sam. xxv. 29.

¶ Is. xi. 10.

** פאלומא, a corruption of *Palomba*, which is the corrupted *Columba*. In Germany also, Jewish females are frequently called *Ṭaubchen*, i. e. little dove, in allusion to Cant. v. 2. "My sister, my love, my Dove, my undefiled."

†† Job. xlii. 12.

‡‡ Ps. lvii. 1 (2).

§§ Lam. iii. 21.

||| Gen. xiv. 14.

and led them down to the sea into ships in the month of April, on the second day of their Pass-over, in the year one thousand five hundred and forty-nine. And he went during the whole summer hither and thither, to seek Dragut and his men, for their wickedness came up before him*.

1218. And on the first day of the month of May, Dragut fought fiercely against two great ships of the men of Genoa, and took them with a strong hand. And he took other ships also after his heart's desire; there was not one ship too strong for him†, the Lord gave all into his hand. Yet for all this, Andrea Doria found him not, and knew not his place, but returned into the city.

1219. In that month was an earthquake in the borders of Genoa; and in Ventimiglia‡ the houses of the priests§ were cast down; and in Diano|| six houses were cast down, and a great tower; and seven souls of men died under the stones at that time. Also in Arbingor was the storm; and some of the buildings fell to the ground, but no man of them was missed.

1220. And Dragut returned into the seas of Genoa as *swift as the eagle flieth¶*; and they went

* Jonah i. 2.

† Deut. ii. 36.

‡ וינטימיליא.

§ i. e. The convents.

|| דיאן, Diano, a small city in the state of Genoa, a few miles east of Oneglia.

¶ Deut. xxviii. 49.

on shore, and went against a people that were quiet and secure*, against Rapallo, on the fourth day of the month of July, at the end of the third watch; and no man knew of their coming. And he took some of them prisoners†, and they stretched forth their hand unto the spoil, according to their hearts' desire; and there was none to deliver it. And they went their way with a high hand; and it was unto Andrea Doria for a reproach: and many mocked him. And he pursued after Dragut all that summer, but found him not, and returned from pursuing after him unto Genoa; and Dragut returned unto his place.

1221. And the pope Paul slept with his fathers on the ninth day of the month of November, in the year three hundred and ten, and Henry the king of France sent all the cardinals who were with him unto Rome. And there was strife between them and the cardinals of the emperor‡; and they remained there many days. And they chose the Cardinal Monte; and his name was called Julius the Third, until the day of his death. The posts went out in haste§ from Rome in the month of February, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty; and all the Nazarenes rejoiced greatly.

1222. Then the emperor Charles builded the

* Jud. xviii. 27.

† Num xxi. 1.

‡ Gen. xiii. 7.

§ Esth. iii. 15.

strong walls of Milan, whose like are not*; and also the breaches of the walls of Pavia he repaired, and builded towers round about it, and fortified them marvellously†.

1223. In those days there arose two men, the sons of one man in the countries of Arabia, men of valor; and the name of their city was Daria‡, and their father was old, well stricken in age§. The name of the first was Achmed, and the name of the second was Mohammed, and they called him sherif|| unto this day. And the men exalted themselves, saying, “We are of the family of Mohammed the prophet,” and vainfellows gathered themselves unto them; so they went on continually in the countries of Arabia, and their camp increased much¶.

1224. There was a man of Judah in those countries, Mas'ûd Mazliach Ben Guashash** was his name, and he said unto the sherif, “Hearken unto me, my lord; and I will tell thee what shall come to pass in the last days††. We shall see it now, and behold it night‡‡; that there shall arise two brethren, and they shall reign over the city of

* Ps. xl. 5 (6).

† 2 Chron. xxvi. 15.

‡ דארעה.

§ Gen. xxiv. 1.

|| شريف a nobleman.

¶ Zech. viii. 21.

** מסעוד מצליח בן נואשאש. †† Gen. xlviii. 1.

‡‡ Num. xxiv. 17.

Tizi*, and they shall spread their arms from thence over all the countries of Arabia, and they shall have power over the treasures of gold†.” And his words were pleasing in his sight, and they went and besieged Tizi and took it, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And there are two cities which are called Tizi, in the countries of Arabia. And they marched against the second also, and took it, and builded its walls round about it, and their fame went throughout the whole world. And they builded also Tarodante‡, which is Suez, and the men became very great; and whithersoever they turned, they prospered§, according as he had told them.

1225. And there was a son born unto the sherif who was the younger; and there was another also born unto Achmed||, his brother. And the lads grew up, and became men of war, they and their parents all the days.

1226. And the time drew nigh that their father should die, and he charged his two sons, saying, “I go the way of all the earth¶; be ye strong, therefore, and be ye men** : and this is your kindness that ye shall shew unto me††, fall ye not out

* טיצי.

† טארודאנטי.

|| חמר.

** 1 Sam. iv. 9.

† Dan. xi. 43.

§ Psalm i. 3.

¶ Josh. xxiii. 14

†† Gen. xx. 13.

about the government*; let this be the right of your government: Whosoever of your children shall be the eldest in years†, shall reign after you; and whosoever he be that shall rebel against his commandment shall be put to death‡.” And they said, “Behold, I would it might be according to thy words§.” And the old man slept with his fathers, and his sons buried him, and they wept over him, and their government was firmly established. And it came to pass, after some days, that Achmed violated the statute of their father; he made void his covenant, and gathered together soldiers, and fought against his brother, but was smitten before him; and they took him alive at that time, and his son was left, and fled unto another country from the face of his uncle, and devised mischief against the sherif. And the sherif said, “Now will the son of my brother go unto the Spaniards; and he also will join our enemies, and will be as thorns in my sides all the days. And now I will deal wisely with him, lest he increase; and I will bring out my brother from the prison-house, and we shall see what will become of his dreams.”

1227. Then he brought his brother Achmed out

* Gen. xlv. 24.

† Comp. Deut. xxi. 17.

‡ Jos. i. 18.

§ Gen. xxx. 34.

of the pit*, and spake unto his heart, and both of them made a covenant. And Achmed went to his son and delivered him from his evil; so the war ceased. And Achmed violated again his covenant, and fought against his brother the second time. And he was also this time smitten before the sherif; and he and his son were taken alive. And the sherif sought to bring them down to the pit; and his mother besought for them at his feet and wept; and he was entreated by her at that time. And he left them a residue and a livelihood in that country; and they abide in the uttermost part of the cities of his kingdom until this day.

1228. And the sherif went on and increased until he became very great†; and he reigned also over the city of Morocco‡, and he was called king of Morocco [קלה] until this day. After that he fought against the king of Portugal, and took from his hand the cities which he had taken from the hand of the Ishmaelites; and the Portuguese fell before him slain to the ground, and he trode upon them as upon the mire in the street§, because the Lord was with him; and that which he did the Lord made it to prosper||.

1229. Against the king of Fez also he fought

* Gen. xxxvii. 28.

† Gen. xxvi. 13

‡ מארואיקוש.

§ Is. xli. 21. Micah vii. 10.

|| Gen. xxxix. 23.

three times, and took all his land out of his hand*, and encamped also against the large city of Fez, and took it; and his fame went throughout the whole world. The sherif fought against King Beles della Gomera† also, and took all his land out of his hand. And the king fled before him into Spain, and besought the viceroy of the emperor and his nobles. And they gave presents unto him, and sent him away unto the emperor, who stood in Flanders in those days.

1230. And this Ishmaelitish king came unto Genoa on the twenty-third day of the month of January, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty. And he went on his journeys unto the emperor, and cast himself down at his feet; and the emperor spake unto his heart, and he abode with him many days.

1231. And there was war between the Spaniards who were at Goletta, and between the king of Tunis day by day. And the Spaniards went unto the open cities which were nigh unto them to make spoil; this was their manner all the while‡. And the Spaniards laid an ambush; but the thing was known unto the king, and he set a watch over them. And they fell upon them suddenly, and

* Num. xxi. 26.

† בליש דילה גומירה.

‡ 1 Sam. xxvii. 11.

there fell of the Spaniards in the net which they hid*, about three hundred men at that time. And those who were left fled away, and their life was a prey. And the king said, “How long shall these wars be a snare unto us†?” I will send a present unto the emperor, peradventure he will accept my person‡. And he sent messengers unto him with a present in their hand, lions, horses, and fowls; and they came unto Genoa in the month of February in that year. And it grieved the emperor, and he wrote, “Ye shall not come to appear before me§, for I will take no present at your hands||.” And they sold the horses in Genoa, and returned unto their own country.

1232. And on the seventeenth day of the same month, Dragut went very suddenly¶ unto Africa the fenced city, and took it, and put a garrison into the midst of it. And the nobles of the Nazarenes feared, lest it should be a snare unto them; and their wrath was burning within them**.

1233. And the duke of Mantua took unto himself to wife the daughter of Ferdinand, the brother of the emperor, and he loved her; and she came

* Ps. ix. 15 (Heb. 16).

† Exod. x. 7.

‡ Gen. xxxii. 20 (Heb. 21).

§ Is. i. 12.

|| Comp. Jud. xiii. 23.

¶ Num. vi. 9.

** Esth. i. 12.

into the city with timbrels, and with dances*, in that year. And his mother Margarita took the burying-ground of the Jews and gave it unto the priests, that they might enlarge their borders†; and the Jews cried, but there was none to help; and they took out from their sepulchre those that slept in the dust‡. And it came to pass, after a very few days, that the duke, her eldest son, became sick and died; and his brother reigned in his stead.

1234. And there came a man of Judah to dwell at Genoa, his name was Haim; and the men of his profession envied him all the days. And there came four Hebrew men into his house; and he made a banquet for them; and also the Gentile women they brought with them unto the banquet; and they reeled like a drunken man§, and they walked in the imagination of their heart||, and so made me to stink among the inhabitants of the land¶ at that time. And it came to pass, at the end of the year**, that Rabbi Zerachiah the Levite, the son of my sister, came to dwell in Genoa; and the physicians envied us also, and could not speak

* Exod. xv. 20.

† Amos i. 13.

‡ Dan. xii. 2.

§ Ps. cvii. 27.

|| Deut. xxix. 19 (Heb. 18). Jer. iii. 17; vii. 24.

¶ Gen. xxxiv. 30.

** 2 Chr. xxiv. 23.

peaceably unto us*. And they spake in the ears of the nobles of the city, and in the ears of the priest San Dominico†, who preached in those days; and it came to pass, on the second day of the feast of unleavened bread, as he was in the pulpit, that he spake evil against the Jews. And three of the nobles who were there heard it, and these were confederate with the physicians‡, and went speedily into the palace, and spake in the ears of the rest of the nobles the words of the priest; and two of the physicians were in that counsel. And the senate§ could not stand in the gap||, for they were many who spake evil at that time. On that day, which is the second day of the month of April, we were driven out from abiding in their inheritance¶, the decree was given with trumpets and the sound of the horn; according as they did in the days of my fathers. And I went out from the midst of it on the third day of the month of June; and the Lord brought me into favor with the men of Voltabio**, for there was mine house before. And they sent men unto the lords of Genoa, and permitted me to dwell in the midst of them, and gave me my hire from that day and afterward; is it not a little? yet my

* Gen. xxxvii. 4. † סאן דומינגו. ‡ Gen. xiv. 13.

§ דישיש.

|| Ezek. xxii. 30.

¶ 1 Sam. xxvi. 19.

** וולטאביאו.

soul shall live*. The Lord's name be praised for all the kindness he hath shown unto me ; and unto them who have driven me away he will recompense sevenfold unto their bosom†. Amen and Amen.

1235. And Edward, king of England, made a covenant with the king of France, and gave unto him Boulogne ; and King Henry put a garrison into the midst thereof ; and he also gave unto the king of England the money which he had vowed, and the country had rest.

1236. Then Andrea Doria went with his ships unto the land of Ishmael, and took Monasterio ; and the Turks who were therein were slain with the edge of the sword ; and some also of the people who were with him fell by the sword at that time.

1237. And he went from thence and encamped against Africa, the fenced city ; and they besieged it many days. And the men of Kairvan‡ helped him, and gave him provision, for they vexed the Turks§ from the birth, from the womb, and from the conception||. And they sent unto Sicily and unto Naples, to fetch soldiers and brazen rams, for it was fortified ; and the men who were in the

* Gen. xix. 20.

† Ps. lxxix. 12.

‡ קירואן.

§ Numb. xxv. 18.

|| Hos. ix. 11.

midst thereof were men of renown*. And the city was besieged on the twenty-seventh day of the month of June; and they cast up banks against it†. And they drew nigh to fight against it, but could not prevail against it, for the men of the city fortified themselves, and smote them with guns; and the rest drew back, for they feared lest some evil should take them‡. And they again cast up banks against it, and battered its walls, and thought to fight against it on the twenty-fourth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month. And this was told unto Dragut; and he also gathered soldiers together according as his hand could attain unto§. And he said in his heart||, “When the uncircumcised fight against the city, I will fill mine hand behind them, and I shall deliver the city from their hand.” And the Nazarenes could not do anything; and many went out from the camp, and Dragut met them, like a bear bereaved of her whelps; and he arrayed a battle against them, and many fell to the ground. And Dragut returned unto his place¶. And Andrea Doria sent again eight ships into Italy for help. And it came to pass, when they returned, that they drew nigh to fight against it by

* Gen. vi. 4.

† 2 Sam. xx. 15.

‡ Gen. xix. 19.

§ Ezek. xlvi. 7.

|| Gen. xxvii. 41. Est. vi. 6.

¶ Gen. xviii. 33.

sea and by land. And the city was broken up on the eighth day of the month of September, at the end of the sixth month; and they gave it up to be plundered, and the women were ravished, and they went into captivity before the enemy*, so that none remained nor escaped on the day of the Lord's anger†. And the Jews also who were found there went into captivity before the enemy at that time. And of the men who were in the midst thereof, some were slain by the edge of the sword, and some became a prey; it was better with them who were slain by the sword‡. And of the uncircumcised there died from the first day, until now, about four thousand men in that battle. And the viceroy who was in Sicily and Andrea Doria put a garrison therein, and went their way. [קלױ]

1238. And it came to pass, after some days, that they sent thither three ships, bearing corn and bread, and gunpowder; and Dragut met them like a bear that is bereaved of her whelps. And he burned them with fire, and went his way.

1239. The raging of the sea also, and the multitude of the waves thereof§, fought against the ships of Andrea Doria, and most of the galleys

* Lam. i. 5.

† Lam. ii. 22.

‡ Lam. iv. 9.

§ Jer. li. 42.

were broken, and the soul of the people was much discouraged because of the way*. And he returned unto Genoa on the fifteenth day of the month of November, which is the ninth month.

1240. And there was peace between Henry, king of France, and between Ottavio, the son of Pier Luigi, duke of Parma, at that time; and he delivered Parma into the hand of the king in the month of March, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty-one. And they both made a covenant together, and set up the banners of the king upon the walls. And the captains of the emperor were wroth and sent soldiers unto Piacenza, for they feared lest there should come out a fire from Parma and devour the foundations thereof†.

1241. And it came to pass, in the month Abib, that Andrea Doria armed his trained soldiers and went unto Naples; and they said unto him, "Is not Dragut in Gilbi?‡ Go down unto him, tarry not§." And he hastened to go, and shut him in||; but he came not near him, for he could not come with his ships into the river. And Dragut strengthened himself on the coast of the sea, and builded a fort and put therein a garrison. And they fired guns daily upon the ships of the uncir-

* Num. xxi. 4.

† Lam. iv. 11.

‡ גילבי. Comp. 1 Sam. xxvi. 1.

§ Gen. xlv. 9.

|| Gen. vii. 16.

cumcised, and they remained over against them*. And they abode there many days. And Andrea Doria sent unto Naples and unto Genoa for help. And when he saw that he prevailed not against him†, he spake unto the sheikh of Gilbi, the Ishmaelite, saying, “ Give me the persons and take the goods unto thyself‡, and I will so deal with the emperor, that he shall show thee kindness all the days; only, that thou must deliver unto us this Belial and his men.” And if not, know that against you also evil is determined§; I testify against you this day||. And Dragut set his heart to flee, and he turned back, and behold the whole land was a plain. And the sheikh came to help him; and they digged unto the sea, and the water of the sea reached as far as the place where the ships were. And he brought them over the channel which he had digged, and Andrea Doria knew nothing of it. And Dragut went out with a high hand¶. And when Andrea Doria heard of it, his countenance fell**, and he pursued after him two days and two nights, but found him not. And Dragut went his way, and behold, a large ship bearing corn, came from Sicily, and galleys in which were silver and gold in abundance going to Africa. And he met

* Gen. xxi. 16.

† Gen. xxxii. 25 (26).

‡ Gen. xiv. 21.

§ 1 Sam. xxv. 17.

|| Deut. viii. 19. Comp. also Deut. iv. 26; xxx. 19.

¶ Exod. xiv. 8.

** Gen. iv. 5.

them like a bear bereaved of her whelps, and took them with a strong hand, and went on his way.

1242. And the priest George, the brother of the waywode of Transylvania, revolted against the Turk in those days. And he had dealings with Ferdinand, the brother of the emperor, and Solyman was very wroth. And he armed his trained servants, and went thither with a strong hand, and the men of Transylvania fell before him slain to the ground at that time.

1243. And many nobles made a conspiracy against the lords of Genoa by command of the emperor; and when inquisition was made of the matter, it was found out*; and they drave them out of their land†. And Andrea Doria returned unto Genoa on the nineteenth day of the month of May, which is the third month.

1244. And on the new moon of Sivan, three hundred and eleven after the smaller date, the Lord stirred up the spirit‡ of one of the princes among the people of the God of Abraham, his name is known in the gates§ as our honored teacher, Rabbi Tobias Phuah, (he shall see his seed, his days shall be prolonged||), Tobias was his name, and good (TOBIM) were his works; for beside the good which he did continually with the creatures

* Esth. ii. 23.

† Deut. xxix. 28 (Heb. 27).

‡ 2 Chro. xxxvi. 22. Ezra i. 1.

§ Pro. xxxi. 23.

|| (Is. liii. 10. יְבוֹנִיחַ פִּוּאָה יוֹזִי"א (יִרְאֶה זֶרַע יִחְיֶה יָמִים אָמֵן).

wherewith the Lord had blessed him, his mind also did not rest until he had propagated the good doctrine* which is the perfect law† among Israel; and he instituted the printing-office in Sabionetta‡, his dwelling-place, which was under the government of the Lord Vespasian Gonzaga Colonna, (exalted be his glory!) from whence the law goeth out§ unto all Israel. May the printing of the books of the law, for its name's sake||, not depart¶ from thence until the Redeemer come unto Zion!** and this because every deed done for Heaven's name's sake will at last stand, and no stranger nor self-defiler†† shall destroy it. And in every gate of his people it is known, that he did it for Heaven's name's sake with all his strength. Remember him and his seed, O Lord, for good‡‡; and let his glory cover the earth!§§

* Pro. iv. 2.

† Ps. xix. 7 (Heb. 8).

‡ In lat. 45° N. long. 8° 13' E.

§ Is. ii. 3.

|| לשמה, i. e. For its own sake; for no secondary reason, but on its own account: the expression is used in the same sense in the proverb, לְעוֹלָם יַעֲסוֹק אָדָם בְּתוֹרָה אֲפִילוּ שְׁלֵא, לשמה לשמה בָּא לְשִׁמָּה; i. e. "Men ought always to study the Law, even if they do so not for its own sake; because by studying it at first for a selfish motive, they will afterwards do it for a higher purpose." Compare also, כָּל הָעוֹסֵק בְּתוֹרָה, לשמה?, i. e. "Quicunque vacat legi propter eam." See *Buxtorf's Lexicon Talmudicum*.

¶ Jos. i. 8.

** Is. lix. 20, 21.

†† מִתְנַאֵל Dan. i. 8.

‡‡ Neh. v. 19; xiii. 31.

§§ Comp. Hab. iii. 3.

1245. And the nobles of the emperor sent men to make war against Parma in the month of June, before the wheat harvest, who destroyed every good piece of land*. And the war was strong between them, and many died by the sword and by sicknesses in that war. But they came not near unto the city, for it was fortified, and its inhabitants were expert in war†; and when the people saw it, they removed, and stood afar off‡. And they besieged Castle Guelfo, and took it; and the strong walls of Colonna they cast to the ground, and the earth was rent at the voice of the battering-rams; and in troublous times§ the soldiers delivered it into their hand, and made a covenant with them. Then was Parma besieged; and in the troublous times the duke sent into exile half of the people, even every stranger that sojourned in it|| and was not born there. And Don Ferrante shewed them kindness, and let them go at their pleasure¶, and they went to dwell where they could find room.

1246. And Philip, the son of the emperor, and Maximilian, the son of his uncle, came from Germany unto Genoa in the month of June, and remained there several days; and they went

* 2 Kings iii. 19. 25.

† Exod. xx. 18.

|| Lev. xvii. 10. 13.

‡ Cant. iii. 8.

§ Dan. ix. 25.

¶ Jer. xxxiv. 16.

down to the sea in ships*, and went unto the land of Spain.

1247. And the viceroy of the emperor sent the galleys which were in Naples, bearing corn and soldiers, unto Africa, in the fifth month. And it came to pass, when they were on the way†, that the sea raged and the waves roared‡, and five galleys of Genoa and three of Sicily sunk into the bottom as a stone§, but the rest went their way ; and the soul of the people was much discouraged because of the way.

1248. The pope Julius also gathered together men of valor, and sent them unto Mirandola, which was in the hand of the *French* king ; and they besieged it many days, and builded forts against it, and abode in the midst of them ; and the city was besieged.

1249. And King Henry sent unto Genoa, saying, “ Let me pass through your land|| to help my men who are in Parma, and in Mirandola, which is nigh unto it.” And he asked also for one of the sea-port towns to bring in the ships of the Turk, but they would not hearken unto him, so he returned unto his country.

1250. And the ships of Solyman went unto Sicily in the fifth month. And the men of

* Ps. cvii. 23.

† Comp. Gen. iv. 8.

‡ Is. li. 15.

§ Exod. xv. 5.

|| Numb. xxi. 22.

Augusta fired guns upon them, and their wrath was kindled ; and they battered its walls, and made it a heap for ever*.

1251. And it came to pass, when they were at Messina, that the governor of the emperor sent men to commune with them. And the captain of the host asked of them Africa, according as the noble, whom the emperor sent unto his master, had vowed unto them. And they said, “ We cannot do this thing, neither yet heard we of it but to-day†.” And they brought the covenant which he had made with them, and read it in their ears‡. And they said, “ Give us time for fifteen days, and we will write unto the emperor.” And their wrath was kindled ; and they said, “ We are not the cause [קלז] that the peace is broken ; but ye are the cause, for there is no faithfulness in the mouth of any of you§.” And the Spaniard asked, saying, “ Show me, I pray you, the large ships.” And Dragut went with him upon the galleon of Barbarossa, and they saw therein many battering-rams and iron balls, and sixty great rams to batter the walls, and thirty middle-sized ; and the janisseries who were therein were men of war, and their number was one thousand. And they went

* Jos. viii. 28.

† Gen. xxi. 26.

‡ 2 Kings xxiii. 2. 2 Chro. xxxiv. 30.

§ Ps. v. 9 (Heb. 10.)

to view the second ship, and behold, she was full of baskets and iron instruments to dig the ground, and four thousand horses' saddles. And in the third there were great pieces of wood to make a fort, artificial work, whose like was not seen for beauty. And the number of the soldiers was fifteen thousand, beside the soldiers who were in the ships. While they were yet talking*, came Pietro, the servant of the viceroy; and in his hand was a writing from his master, saying, "I cannot give back Africa, until the answer of the emperor be come; for thieves, night-robbers†, are come against it, who have rebelled against Solyman; but the emperor has not taken it from his hand." And the Spaniard took the writing, and went with Pietro, unto the captain of the host. And he called his seven councillors, and read the writing in their ears. And they said, "We cannot wait fifteen days until the answer of the emperor come. For Solyman did command us, saying‡, 'If the viceroy who is in Sicily will not send you the keys of Africa, when ye come unto Messina, go your way to war against it, and break the statute of the covenant§.'" And Pietro spake in the name of his master; and they rebuked him in their burning wrath, for they knew him. And they said unto

* Esther vi. 14.

† Obad. 5.

‡ Gen. i. 16.

§ Zech. x. 10.

him, "Who hath brought thee hither* to speak unto the captain of the host? Art thou not our servant?" And they took the writing, and said, "When a man cometh to deliver Africa into our hand, he shall come unto us securely, and we will not violate the covenant." And the Spaniard spake hard things unto Dragut before the captain of the host, saying†, "Thou hast done wickedly, to violate the covenant; may the Lord look and judge‡." And Dragut cursed him; and the Spaniard fled from before him, for he feared for his life. And the number of the large galleys was one hundred and seven, and the small were twenty-three, and the great ships three.

1252. And the Turks journeyed from thence in that night, and sailed unto Malta, and went on shore. And the priests§ went out against them, and slew among them a great slaughter; and they sailed from thence, and went unto Argosa||, and took it, on the twenty-fourth day of the month of July; and they took all the spoil thereof; they left no gleanings¶. And there went into captivity before the enemy** about three thousand souls at that time; and one hundred and fifty priests were slain by the edge of the sword; and the houses were burned with fire, and their

* Judges xviii. 3.

† Gen. xlii. 7.

‡ Exod. v. 21.

§ i. e. The knights, who were a military religious order.

|| ארגוזה.

¶ Obad. 5.

** Lam. i. 5.

smoke ascended up to heaven*. And they sailed from thence, and went unto Tripoli, which was in the hands of the priests in those days. And the French who were in the midst of it delivered it into their hand, and went their way free. And the Italians and the Spaniards went into captivity before the enemy in the month of August, which is the sixth month.

1253. And Andrea Doria journeyed in the month of August, to go into Spain to fetch the daughter of the emperor. And his heart filled him not to go over†, for he was afraid of the king's ships, but returned unto Villa Franca, and wrote unto Genoa for help. And he gathered together men of valor, and led them down to the sea in ships, and returned unto his house, for he feared the ships of the Turks; and it came to pass, after some days, that he encouraged himself‡, and went his way.

1254. And the men of the Turk again fought against Transylvania, and Giambattista Castaldo§ was over the host at that time. And he joined battle with them|| in the month Tishri, and many of the Turks fell slain to the ground; and the

* Josh. viii. 20.

† i. e. He had no courage to go. Esth. vii. 5. *margin.*

‡ Jud. xx. 22. 1 Sam. xxx. 6. Com. Gen. xlviii. 2.

§ יואן באטישטה קאשטאלדו.

|| Gen. xiv. 8. Comp. 1 Sam. xii. 21.

heart of George, the priest, was turned towards the Turks*; but the thing was known, and Castaldo went securely unto him with the captains of the host; and they brought him down to the grave in blood.

1255. And the French violated the covenant of peace in the night of the sixth day, on the fourth of the month Tishri, which is the fourth day of the month of September, in the year three hundred and twelve, after the smaller date; and they went secretly† against San Damiano‡, and took it, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And they journeyed from thence and went against Chieri§, and cast up a bank against it. And they delivered the city into their hand, and made a covenant with them; and they came into the city, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And they passed over the river Dora and went unto Caluso||, and Don Ferrante hastened to send the Spaniards against them. And the French returned back with shame.

1256. And the ships of the king went unto Barcelona, and lifted up the banners of the emperor; and when the men of the city saw them from afar off, they said¶, “It is Andrea Doria.”

* Comp. Exod. xiv. 5.

† Jud. iv. 21. Ruth. iii. 7.

‡ סנן דאמיון.

§ קיר.

|| קאלוסי.

¶ Gen. xxxvii. 18.

And a galley went out to meet them ; and in her were many nobles and honorable men, and the *French* took her. And they took there seven great ships, bearing garments and horses, and returned unto their country. And Andrea Doria sent thither a small ship to spy ; and the French took her, and led her away with them.

1257. And there came two brethren from Siena to dwell at Milan, who abode there several days. And they fell a lusting* to deliver the fortress of Milan into the hand of the king, and had dealings with one of the servants of the castellan, and digged every night in the town wall† ; none did see it‡. And it came to pass, one day, that they wrote unto the king, and he sent thither about fifty of his chosen men ; and they came unto Milan, and hid themselves in the streets of the city, one here and one there, until evening came. When the sun went down§, they gave the signal ; and they all assembled in the house of George, of Siena ; and it came to pass, that at midnight||, they went unto the place. And while they were digging¶, they heard the watchmen who went round the fortress, talking one unto the other.

* Num. xi. 4.

† Jos. ii. 15.

‡ Ezek. viii. 8 ; xii. 5. 7. 12.

§ Gen. xv. 12. 17. Comp. Jos. viii. 29.

|| Exod. xii. 29.

¶ Exod. xxii. 1.

And the Lord sent a faintness into their heart*, so they returned back, and fled for their lives, by seven ways†. The sun was risen upon the earth‡ when the thing was known; and they pursued after them, and seized four men of them on the borders of Vigere§, and sent them unto Milan in fetters of iron||. And they took George also, the man of Siena, and the *castellan's* servant who had sought to lay hand¶ on his master, and executed judgments upon them**; and all the people heard of it, and were afraid††.

1258. And many of the men of the host who were against Parma arose and came unto Piedmont, and fought against Nosano‡‡. And they delivered the city into their hand; and the Germans slew the inhabitants of the city with the edge of the sword. And the French came unto Castel del Diavolo§§, which is nigh unto Moncalvo|||, and fortified themselves therein. And the men of the emperor came upon them, and fought against them; and they delivered it into their hand, and went their way free; and the hosts of the pope were still against Mirandola at that time.

* Lev. xxvi. 36. † Deut. xxviii. 25. ‡ Gen. xix. 23.

§ ווִיגֵרָה. Rabbi Joseph sometimes calls this town *Vigevano*.

|| Ps. cxlix. 8.

¶ Esther ii. 21; vi. 2.

** Ex. xii. 12; Num. xxxiv. 4. †† Deut. xiii. 11.

‡‡ נושאן.

§§ קאשטיל דיל דיאבלו.

||| מונקאלבו.

1259. And in the month of October some great cities were burned in Bohemia; and they again accused the Jews wrongfully, saying, “ Ye have done this evil thing;” and when inquisition was made of the matter*, the Jews were found guiltless, for the Lord assisted them; blessed be He, and blessed be His name for ever! [קלח]

1260. And on the nineteenth day of the same month they took fifteen royal ships and eighteen large ships bearing raiment and horses, and vessels of silver, from the Spaniards who came with the daughter of the emperor unto Villa Franca; and they returned unto their country. Also in the British sea, the men of the king took from the Spanish ships durable riches†, and there was no peace for those who went out, nor for those who came in at that time.

1261. And Andrea Doria came unto Genoa with Maximilian, king of Bohemia, and his wife, the emperor's daughter; and on the voyage much people died of sicknesses in the ships. And they journeyed from Genoa on the twenty-fourth day of the month of Chisleu, and passed through Voltabio‡, and went on their journey unto Milan: and they brought with them an elephant, whose like had not been seen in Voltabio since it became

* Est. ii. 23.

† Prov. viii. 18. .

‡ בולטאביאו.

a nation*. And they removed from Milan, and went on their journeys unto Germany.

1262. And the French besieged Lanzi†, which is near Turin, in the month of November, and took it, and put a garrison in the midst thereof.

1263. And they besieged also Volpian in the tenth month; but the hosts of the emperor delivered it from their hand. And also the city of Saluzzi‡ which is in the plain of Caluso§, Don Ferrante burned with fire; and its inhabitants went as vagabonds and fugitives into a strange land||, and Montferrat was a prey in the hand of Don Ferrante; and they cried, but there was none to help in that year.

1264. And it came to pass, in the same month, that behold, a large ship came from Spain, and in her were men of valor; and she belonged unto the men of Genoa; and three of the king's ships went out against her, and took her. And they found in her about thirty thousand pieces of gold, and thirty thousand in silver; and they led her away unto their country.

1265. And it came to pass, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty-two, that the

* Ex. lx. 24.

† שאלוצי.

‡ לאנצי.

§ קאלוסי.

|| Gen. iv. 12. 14.

French, who were in Piedmont, went unto Castigliole* in the darkness of the night†, on the tenth of the month of January, and found the Spaniard dwelling securely. And they went upon its walls suddenly, and took it, and took the Spaniards and all their substance. And they took about one hundred horses from the Spaniards at that time.

1266. And again Solyman gathered men of valor to fight against Hungary; and they went unto the city of Sophia‡, and remained there until the month Abib.

1267. And many of the German nobles made a conspiracy against the emperor, and made a covenant with Henry, king of France, and put upon themselves the white cross as a token. These are the names of the princes who were expressed by names§: the Duke Maurice, one; the duka Andreaupho|| his brother, one; the son of John Frederick, the son of the duke of Saxony, one¶; Alberto, the marquess of Brandenburg, one; the duke of Plusalpin**, one; the duke of Linberg††, the son of the landgrave, one; the marquess of Lomana‡‡, one; the prince of Lüneburg§§, one;

* קוסטיליולו. † Pro. vii. 9; comp. xx. 20.

‡ שופיאה. § Num. i. 17. 1 Chr. xii. 31; xvi. 41.

|| אנדריאופו. This and some of the following names are obviously corrupted.

¶ i. e. The son of the captive elector.

** פלוסאלפין. †† לינברג. ‡‡ לומאנה. §§ לנובורג.

the prince of Mansfeld, one ; and his son, one ; and the two princes of Luxemburg*. All these were joined together† to make war against the emperor ; and the number of their hosts was twenty thousand men on foot, and four thousand horsemen, and the Duke Maurice was head over them ; and they called King Henry the deliverer of the German cities ; and it grieved the emperor much.

1268. And it came to pass, one day, that the king called all his nobles and his servants, and set the crown royal upon the head‡ of his first-born son, who was at that time a youth of ten years ; and all the people stood to the covenant§. And he said unto them, “ Ye have seen what the emperor did unto my father and unto my brethren|| ; and his arm is stretched out still¶. And now, your king walketh before you, I will go unto the land of Germany to fight against him, and avenge me of mine enemies**. My wife and her children shall be in your charge until my return. Ye shall hearken unto her, and shall judge with truth and righteousness†† ; for by righteousness is the

* Comp. Jos. xii. 9—24.

† Gen. xiv. 3.

‡ Est. ii. 17.

§ 2 Kings xxiii. 3.

|| Comp. Ex. xix. 4.

¶ Is. ix. 12. 17. 21 ; (Heb. 11 16. 20).

** Is. i. 24.

†† Comp. Zech. vii. 9.

throne established*.” And all the princes spake unto his heart, and gave him presents of silver and gold in abundance for the expence of that war.

1269. And he gathered about eighty thousand footmen, and thirty thousand riding on horses, and his camp increased; and he turned his face toward the cities of Germany, and took some of the cities of the dukedom of Lorraine† from the hand of the duke, who was a youth; and moreover he took the duke, and sent him into France, where he abode until this day. And he took Metz also‡, the great city, whose merchants are nobles, and put a garrison into the midst of it. And they found in it brazen battering-rams in abundance, and gun-powder, and cannon-balls. And Henry became very great, and his fame was, over all the earth. And he went on his journeys into the land of Germany, until he reached the river Rhine§, and encamped there.

1270. And Duke Maurice also fought from another place||, against the emperor at that time, and took Augusta¶, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And again he drew nigh, and

* Prov. xvi. 12.

† מים

|| Esth. v. 14.

‡ לורנה.

§ Comp. Is. viii. 8.

¶ אנושטה, i. e. Augsburg.

took also the *Ehrenberger* Clause*, which was nigh unto the emperor; Maurice took this in the month of May. Then was the emperor exceedingly grieved†, and fled away before him, and cared not for his garments and his vessels in that time of haste.

1271. And the men of Cherasco who were in Piedmont, spake unto the French with subtlety, saying, “Assemble yourselves, and come‡, and we will give the city into the hand of the king:” and about two thousand men went thither in the darkness of the night unto the breach, which they had made in the wall. And it came to pass, when the first came within and saw the pits they had made, and the battering-rams, that he gave a signal. Then they said, “Treason, treason!”§ and returned back. But no man was missed of them, for they acted wisely. And the war became strong in Piedmont at that time. And Don Ferrante brought out the battering-rams, and sent them to Cherasco, and put a garrison into the midst thereof.

1272. And the king's viceroy strengthened himself, so that his camp increased exceedingly||. And those that were numbered of them¶, were six

* הקיוזה.

† Esther iv. 4.

‡ Joel iv. 11.

§ 2 Chron. xxiii. 13; 2 Kings xi. 14.

|| Comp. Gen. xxx. 30. 43.

¶ Numb. v. 36. 40. 44. 48.

thousand footmen, and four thousand riders on horses, and seven thousand Swiss ; and they went out into the field with a high hand*. And they went unto Cherasco, and encamped at Barra† in the field, in the month of April, which is the second month, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifty-two.

1273. And the French also that were in Mondovi‡ spake to the Spaniards with subtlety, as the men of Cherasco had done ; and they believed their words and went thither. And they entered the city securely, with fifty men ; but the men of the city smote them with the edge of the sword, their eyes had no compassion upon them. And those who were left without fled for their lives, and returned unto their cities.

1274. Now Mirandola was straitly shut up§, because of the army of Pope Julius at that time. And the hired men thereof|| went out on the twenty-first day [קלט] of the month Nisan, in the night of the sixth day, and fell upon them suddenly, and slew many with the edge of the sword ; Giambattista di Monte¶ also fell down dead** to the ground in that battle. Then the pope made peace with the

* Ex. xiv. 8.

† ברה.

‡ מונדיבו.

§ Josh. vi. 1.

|| שכיריה, i. e. Soldiers.

¶ יואן במישטה די מונטי.

** Jud. v. 27.

king; and both of them made a covenant*. And his hosts departed from it; and the men of the city came out, and cast the forts to the ground, and brought the wood into the city, as well as corn, bread and meat†, and some of every thing by which man doth live‡, they brought into the city at that time.

1275. And the French that were in Piedmont besieged Polenza§, and took it, and saved alive nothing that breathed||. And the Spaniards also went against Ribiasco¶, which is a small city nigh unto Asti** ; and fifty Frenchmen were within it; and they took it also, and smote with the edge of the sword all the males thereof, with the women and children.

1276. And the French went against Cherasco on the twenty-third day of the month of April, which is the second month. And they cast down the bridge which was over the river Tani††, with the battering-rams, so that their voice was heard afar off. And the men of Cherasco cast stones upon them‡‡, and four men died at that time. They burned the mills also with fire, and returned to the camp; and the city was besieged.

* Gen. xxi. 27.

† Deut. viii. 3.

|| Deut. xx. 16.

** לאסטי.

† Gen. xlv. 23.

§ פולינצו.

¶ ריביאשקו.

†† טאני.

‡‡ Lam. iii. 53.

1277. And Don Ferrante went against them with a mighty hand. Then the French journeyed from Barra*, and left a garrison in the midst thereof. And the men of Don Ferrante went thither, and took it with a strong hand. There was also with him the first-born son of the duke of Savoy†, who commanded, and they hanged up thirty men of the inhabitants of the city against the sun‡; for his soul was embittered against them.

1278. In those days, came Salah Reis§ from the east country with twelve galleys, and took two ships from Ragusa||, and a large ship of Genoa, in the third month, and led them away unto Algiers.

1279. And Don Ferrante went unto Saluzzi¶; but the men of the city spoiled it** before he came, and left no gleanings therein; yet he came into the city, and tarried there a few days††. And the French gathered themselves into the fortified cities at that time. And Don Ferrante went and besieged Dironi‡‡, which is on the borders of Saluzzi, and took it in the beginning

* ברה. † סאבויה.

‡ Comp. Num xxv. 4.

§ סאלה ראיו.

|| ראנוסה.

¶ סאלוצי.

** Comp. Exod. xii. 36.

†† Gen. xxvii. 44.

‡‡ דירוני.

of barley harvest*, and ruled in the open cities at that time. And he removed thence, and went unto Bini†, and they besieged it many days, and destroyed every good piece of land‡. And the inhabitants of Bini could bring none of the produce into the city, because of the fury of the oppressor§.

1280. And the nobles of the emperor made peace for two years with the Duke Ottavio||, who was at Parma, and gave him the fortress which they had made upon the river Linza¶; and he put a garrison therein. At that time the emperor restored Brisilo** also, the fortress which is upon the river Po, to the duke of Ferrara††; and the duke strengthened it, and fortified it, and builded to it a very high wall with gates and bars‡‡, and put therein a garrison; and it has belonged to him until this day.

1281. And Andrea Doria brought about four thousand Spaniards to Genoa in that year. And the soul of the people was grieved because of the way, on the twenty-seventh day of the month of June, which is the fourth month; and they cast into the sea some of the battering-rams, and of the horses,

* Ruth. i. 22.

† 2 Kings iii. 25.

|| אוטאביו.

* בריסילו.

† בניי.

§ Is. li. 13.

¶ לינצה.

†† פירארה

‡‡ Deut. iii. 5.

and of the garments, and of the wares which were with them, to be lightened of them*, for the sea wrought and was tempestuous against them†, and they reeled like a drunken man‡; and they passed the city Voltabio§, in which I dwell||, on the eighth day of the month of July, and went on their way.

1282. And King Henry passed not over the river Rhine, for he feared for his life; but drew back his right hand¶, and sent away his host, every one to his home. And again he gathered together the men of his host, and set his face towards Flanders and besieged Thionville**; and there fell slain to the ground in that war, about six thousand of his men. And the Lord delivered the city into their hand; and they slew all their males with the edge of the sword, and took all their spoil. And the Lord delivered also⁴ Aire and St. Omer††, into their hands; and they put a garrison therein.

1283. And the French who were in Piedmont besieged Verua‡‡, and cast up a bank§§ against it; and the city was broken up||| on the tenth day of the month of July, which is the fifth month; and they

* Comp. Jonah i. 5.

† Jonah i. 11.

‡ Ps. cvii. 27. § בולטאביאו.

|| Comp. Gen. xxiv. 8.

¶ Comp. Lam. ii. 3.

** שומבילה.

†† איר ואת סאן טומי.

‡‡ ווירואה.

§§ 2 Sam. xx. 15; 2 Kings xix. 32. ||| Jer. lii. 7.

put a garrison into it and strengthened it; and it hath belonged to King Henry until this day.

1284. And it was evil in the sight of Don Ferrante; and he went up from the city of Bini* and put garrisons in the fortified cities. And the Spaniards who came from Spain, as well as the riders upon horses, he sent to the land of Germany; and the emperor's camp increased exceedingly.

1285. And the emperor also gathered together an army and horsemen†, after he had fled from before Maurice, and set his face towards Augusta; and the fear of him fell upon them‡, and they delivered the city into his hands. And Maurice also drew back his right hand from destroying§, and made peace with the emperor, because his heart was not perfect with the king, but he returned from *pursuing* after him. The Marquess Albert alone made not peace with the emperor in those days, because his soul was bitter against him on account of the landgrave, whom the emperor had imprisoned; and he was a Satan unto him|| all the days.

1286. And the viceroy who was in Naples, hated the prince of Salerno¶ in his heart, and set

* ביני.

† Comp. Esth. ix. 3.

|| 1 Kings xi. 25.

† Comp. Gen. i. 9.

§ Lam. ii. 3. 8.

¶ משאלירנה.

upon him men of Belial to kill him. And it came to pass, on a certain day, that they shot balls upon him; and his horse fell under him. But the Lord delivered him not into their hands* at that time. And his fury came up in his face†; and he rode upon a swift horse and fled to the land of Germany, and poured out his complaint before the emperor‡, who set not his heart§ to his words. And in those days, they took from him even every thing which he had in the kingdom of Naples. And the prince arose in burning wrath, and went to France and bowed himself before the king unto the ground; and the king honored him much. And they purposed to make war upon Naples, for the prince was great in the eyes of the people and of the nobles in that country||.

1287. And there came a hundred and ten ships of Solyman the Turk, into the seas of Italy, to the help of King Henry, in the fifth month. And they burned Procida¶ with fire, and their fame was over the whole country. And the men of Genoa feared much: and they put a garrison in all their cities; yet the ships remained near Naples, but drew not nigh unto the city. And the

* Ex. xxi. 13.

† Ezek. xxviii. 18.

‡ Ps. cxlii. 2 (Heb. 3).

§ Exod. vii. 2, 3.

|| Comp. Esth. ix. 4.

¶ פרוג'יטה.

inhabitants of that city were greatly afraid of them, and fled for their lives. And the pasha of Romania* and Dragut were over the host in those days. And three ships of Henry were with them at that time to lead them the way†.

1288. Now Siena‡ is a great city in Italy; and it had been ruled by the word of the elders§ all the days. But their hearts were divided; and they were found faulty||. And they brought the princes of the emperor into the city, and placed [קמ] the Spaniards in it for a guard; but their ways became in their eyes as the uncleanness of a removed woman¶. And they hated them, and could not speak peaceably unto them**. And it came to pass, when they heard the tidings of Dragut††, they said with subtlety unto the viceroy of the emperor who was with them, “Now will the Turks lick up all that are round about us‡‡; what therefore shall we do to the cities which are upon the sea shore? Come on; let us deal wisely before they come§§, and send thither some of the people of the land who are with us, lest they

* רומאניאה.

† וסיאיני.

|| Hos. x. 2.

** Gen. xxxvii. 4.

‡‡ Num. xxi. 3.

† Exod. xiii. 21.

§ Gen. xli. 40.

¶ Ezek. xxxvi. 17

†† Gen. xxix. 13.

§§ Exod. i. 10.

should become a burning.” And he said, “ Do ye what is pleasing in your eyes.” And they gathered together about eight thousand footmen, and said, moreover, unto him, “ Give unto them weapons of war.” And he hearkened unto their voice ; and they said, moreover, “ How can these men go, who have not been proved*, as sheep which have no shepherd?† Send now with them some of the Spaniards who are with thee, that they may be unto them instead of eyes‡.” And he sent them ; but they fell out by the way§, and the Spaniards were slain with the edge of the sword, and there remained not even one||. And all the warriors returned into the city, and the whole city was moved¶ ; and the viceroy, and they who were with him, fled into the fortress and shut to the door**. And the men of the city , compassed the fortress†† ; and it was straitly shut up ; none went out, and none came in‡‡. And it came to pass, after some days, that the Spaniards delivered the fortress into their hands for want of all things§§, and went their way : then the land had rest.

1289. And the lords of Siena inclined after

* 1 Sam. xvii. 39 (Heb. 40).

† Numb. xxvii. 17.

‡ Num. x. 31. § Gen. xlv. 24. || Comp. Exod. x. 19 ; xiv. 28.

¶ Ruth. i. 19.

** Gen. xix. 10.

†† Gen. xix. 4.

‡‡ Joshua i. 1.

§§ Deut. xxviii. 48.

King Henry ; and they made a covenant between them. And the fame thereof was heard* in Lombardy, and the nobles of the emperor feared much.

1290. And on the twenty-second day of the month of July, Andrea Doria sailed from Genoa with forty galleys to help the Neapolitans, and about three thousand Germans were with him. And it came to pass, when he was near the island of Ponza†, there went out to him about midnight some Turkish ships. And he recognized them, and was afraid and distressed‡, and returned back. And *the Turks* pursued after them the whole of that night, and until the middle of the next day. This was on the fifth day of the month of August. And the Nazarenes fled seven ways from before them§, because evil was determined against them||. And in that fearful time, the Turks took seven ships as a man taketh a piece of an ear¶ ; and they returned on their way. And Andrea Doria returned to Genoa in the night of the eleventh day of the month, bitter and angry** ; and no one knew of his coming, because he made haste to flee††, and his

* Gen. xlv. 16.

† פינצה.

‡ Gen. xxxii. 7 (8).

§ Deut. xxviii. 7.

|| Esth. vii. 7.

¶ Amos iii. 12.

** The Amsterdam edition has מרועה ; in allusion to סרועה, 1 Kings xx. 43.

†† Comp. Gen. xxxi. 21 ; and 1 Sam. xxiii. 26.

face gathered blackness*. And about four hundred Germans were taken at that time, besides the nobles, and the merchants, and the sailors, and the men of the host who were in the *ships*. And the Turks took about a hundred thousand pieces of gold, besides the garments and the vessels which were there in abundance; and it was a reproach to the Nazarenes. And the Turks returned, joyful and with a glad heart†. And they tarried in the seas of Naples, to see whether the ships of France were come at the set time of which they had spoken to them‡.

1291. In those days, the French who were in Piedmont, fought against Dironi, and there fell of them about six hundred men slain to the earth in that battle. And they cast up a bank against it, and took it, and all the males thereof were slain with the edge of the sword, and they hanged the captain of the host§. And they journeyed from thence and besieged Bosco||, wherein were about six hundred men who drew the sword. And they set up against it twenty-five rams, and battered its walls; and the city was besieged¶; and in troublous times**, they delivered it into their hand; and they put therein a garrison. And the captains of the king journeyed from thence, and besieged

* Joel ii. 6; and Nah. ii. 10 (11).

† Esth. v. 9. ‡ Gen. xxi. 2. § Comp. Gen. ix. 22.

|| בוסקו. ¶ 2 Kings xxiv. 10. ** Dan. ix. 25.

Volpian. And there was no peace for those who went out, nor for those who came in, in those days. And the French fortified San Martino, which is near Volpian*, and abode therein, and were like thorns in the sides of the inhabitants of Volpian†.

1292. In those days, Solyman fought hard‡ against Transylvania§, which is in the land of Hungary; and the Nazarenes were much distressed. And Giambattista Castaldo went against them, and about eight thousand men with him. And when he saw that he prevailed not||, he turned into one of the cities of that country, and fortified himself there. And the hosts of Solyman went thither, and cast up a bank against him, and they besieged it many days. And Sforza Palavicino¶ went to deliver him from their hand, and about five thousand Italian footmen with him, besides the Hungarian riders upon swift beasts who were with him, about two thousand men. And they had no provisions, which was told unto the Turks; and a part of them went away from Giambattista, and went against them with a strong hand. And it came to pass, on the ninth day of the month of August, that the Nazarenes lifted up their eyes, and behold, the Turks were coming** ; and the men were sore

* וולפיאן. † Num. xxxiii. 55. ‡ Comp. Jud. xi. 25.

§ במטראנסילוואניא. || Gen. xxxii. 26.

¶ ספורצה פאלוויסין. ** Gen. xxxvii. 25.

afraid*, and girded themselves with their weapons of war. And the Turks drew nigh; and the Hungarians fought against the first camp all the morning, with a strong hand. And they lifted up their eyes and looked, and behold, the second camp was moving towards them; and the Hungarians trembled much, and turned their backs, and fled for their lives. Then the horsehoofs were broken by means of the prancings, the prancings of their mighty ones†; and they fought against the Italians, and discomfited them with the edge of the sword‡. And of the Nazarenes there fell to the earth about four thousand men, and the rest were taken in their pits§; and also the Prince Sforza||, and many nobles and honorable men were taken at that time; of the Turks also, many fell slain to the earth in that battle. And the Turks returned from chasing after them, and they spoiled their tents¶. And Giambattista Castaldo went out abroad when the Turks had turned away from him, and slew among the rest of his enemies around him a great slaughter; and he left the city as it was, and went at his pleasure**. So the greater part of Transylvania has belonged unto the Turks until this day.

1293. And there came ships of Algier and

* Exod. xiv. 10.

† Judges v. 22.

‡ Exod. xvii. 13.

§ Lam. iv. 20.

|| ספורצה.

¶ 1 Sam. xvii. 53.

** Comp. Jer. xxxiv. 16

burned many houses in Palamos*, which is in Catalonia, and destroyed every good piece of land†; and they went with the ships of King Henry unto Corsica, and took unto themselves from thence provision for money, and went their way eastward. And when the captains of the ships of the Turk Solyman, which were in the sea of Naples, saw that the ships of the king delayed to come at the time they had promised, they journeyed from thence on the twenty-second day of the month of August, and went on their journeys. And it came to pass, after two days, when the ships of the king came and found them not, they were very wroth. And they also went eastward, and found them in Corfu‡; and went with them to bring them on the way§. And it was said unto the viceroy of the emperor who was at Naples, “ Knowest thou not wherefore the ships of the Turk and the ships of Henry are come to rove in the sea of Naples? Take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently||, for many of the inhabitants of the city have conspired against thee, and have given a hand to the prince of Salerno¶, to bring him with the hosts of Henry into the city as it is this day.” And the viceroy trembled; and when inquisition was made, it was found out**,

* פאלאמוש.

† 2 Kings iii. 19. 25.

‡ קורפו.

§ Gen. xviii. 16.

|| Deut. vi. 7.

¶ מסאלירנו.

** Esth. ii. 23.

and behold, it was true, and the thing certain* ; and he seized about thirty men of the rebellious of the people, and brought them down into the grave in blood ; and the rest fled away. And it came to pass, when the French saw that their hope was in vain†, that they journeyed from thence and went their way ; and the ships of the king, with the ships of Solyman, remained in the east country many days.

1294. And these are the kings who have reigned in the house of Othman, until this day. [ⲡⲓⲣ] And there reigned Othman, the son of Sich, and the name of his city was Sebaste. And Othman died, and Orkana reigned in his stead. And Orkana died, and Amurat reigned in his stead. And Amurat died, and Bajazet reigned in his stead. And Bajazet died, and Kiri Gilibi reigned in his stead. And Kiri Gilibi died, and Mohammed reigned in his stead. And Mohammed died, and Amurat reigned in his stead. And Amurat died, and Mohammed reigned in his stead. And Mohammed died, and Bajazet reigned in his stead. And Bajazet died, and Selim reigned in his stead. And Selim died, and Solyman reigned in his stead. This is Solyman, who subdued Rhodes and the kingdom of Hungary, and who builded the walls of Jerusalem. May it be builded and established

* Deut. xiii. 14.

† Job xli. 9 (1).

speedily in our days*. And this king Solyman was a valiant man who had done many acts†, and wise as an angel of God‡. And Moses Hamon§, the Jew, was his physician all the days.

1295. And Andrea Doria sailed in that month a second time with the Germans, the residue of those who escaped||, and with him thirty galleys. And he went unto Naples, and put a garrison therein, and abode there several days.

1296. And the monks of Malta who at first abode at Rhodes¶, went in ten ships into the sea of Barbary to make spoil in the countries of their enemies. And about four hundred men went on shore, and went against two cities, unto a people quiet and secure**, and took the persons and the goods of both Ishmaelites and Jews who were in the midst of them, and went away. And it came to pass, as they returned joyful and with a glad heart††, that the man Moses, the Ishmaelite, went unto the island of Gilibit‡‡, and with him were about three thousand five hundred footmen, and five hundred Arabian horsemen. Now the man Moses knew not all this, but went on his journeys. And his hap was to light on§§ that part of the field where these uncircumcised were. And

* תִּבְנָה וְתִתְּפוֹלֵן בְּמִתְּרָח בְּיָמֵינוּ, i. e. תִּיבִיב.

† 2 Sam. xxiii. 20 ; 1 Chr. xi. 22.

‡ 2 Sam. xiv. 20.

§ מֹשֶׁה הַמֹּן.

|| Exod. x. 5.

¶ רֹדֹו.

** Jud. xviii. 7. †† Esth. v. 9. ‡‡ גִּלְיָבִי. §§ Ruth. ii. 3.

he lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, they were spread abroad upon the field with all the captives and the booty*; and he knew them, and became very wroth, and fell upon them like a bear bereaved of her whelps, and set the battle in array against them; and one thousand of the captives fled from the hand of the Nazarenes at that time. And when the men of the ships saw that their brethren were in an evil case†, there went out again about one hundred and fifty men, with the prior of Capua‡, the son of Philippo Strozzi§, at their head, and they fought again. And there fell of the Arabians about five hundred men slain to the ground; and the rest drew back, for they were terrified at their presence||, so they fled. And of the Nazarenes there died about two hundred and fifty men; and those who were left, returned with the rest of the captives who remained in their hand into the ships, and stayed quietly there; and sixty-six priests died in that slaughter.

1297. And it came to pass, after some days, that they went out as at other times before¶ into the borders of the Turk, and their hap was to light unawares on a great ship coming from Salonichi**, wherein were about seventy Jews; and they fought against her, and took her, and plundered

* 1 Sam. xxx. 16.

† Exod. v. 19.

‡ קאפואה.

§ סטרוציאו.

|| Gen. xlv. 3.

¶ Jud. xvi. 20.

** סאלוניקי.

the persons and the goods, and returned unto Malta. And those poor and afflicted ones* sent unto the nobles of our people who were in every province†, to gather the ransom for their souls; and they gathered about ten thousand pieces of gold, and gave them to the captors as the ransom for their souls.

1298. And the soldiers whom king Henry had in Piedmont, went against Volpian, on the second day of the month of October, three hundred and thirteen‡, and encamped at San Martino, which is nigh unto it; and they builded there a very strong fortress, and abode therein. And Don Ferrante, the captain of the emperor's host, armed his hosts, and went to Volpian to deliver it from the hand of the king's men, and to put provision therein. And he drew nigh unto the fortress which the French had made in San Martino, and they besieged it, and cast up a bank against it, and it was straitly shut up. And there went out men from the place, and Don Ferrante said, "Whether they be come out for peace, take them alive; or whether they be come out for war, take them alive§." So they took them, and said unto them, "Show ye us the nakedness of the city, and we will deal kindly with you." And they uncovered its nakedness, and cast up a bank against it, and the wall

* Is. lviii. 7.

† Esther viii. 9.

‡ i. c. A.M. Jewish æra, 5313=A.D. 1552.

§ 1 Kings xx. 18.

which was of mire and dirt*, fell under it; and they took it on the tenth of the month of November, which is the ninth month. And they slew many with the edge of the sword, and hanged the captain of their host, for the blood of the captain whom the French hanged in Doroni†, and because he had defied the armies‡ of Don Ferrante from the wall. And they put provisions into Volpian according to their heart's desire.

1299. And in Alba§ was a man of Genoa in the name of the emperor, of the family of Fornari||, and his name was Giambattista; and with him were about three hundred men. And he did evil in the sight of the Lord; and the inhabitants of the city hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him¶. And the hosts of the king went thither in the night of the fourteenth day of the ninth month, like robbers by night**. And no man knew of their coming; and they climbed up the walls in that night at the end of the middle watch. And they smote the watchman, that he died; and they ran unto the gates of the city, and drove away the men who were there, and called with a loud voice; and all the city was moved about them. And Giambattista trembled greatly, and girded himself with his weapons of war, and went

* Isa. lvii. 20.

† דורוני.

‡ 1 Sam. xvii. 26. 36.

§ אלבה.

|| פורנארי.

¶ Gen. xxxvii. 4.

** Obad. 5.

out against them like a bear robbed of her whelps* ; and they smote him, smiting and wounding him† ; and they took him alive, and strangers spoiled his labor‡ at that time, and many of his people were slain with the edge of the sword ; and the rest turned their backs, and fled for their lives ; and the merchants also, and the Jews who were there, they gave up for a spoil ; and in a little moment they spoiled their curtains§ in that night, and so the city belonged unto the captains of the king ; and they fortified it, and put a garrison therein. And this was told unto Don Ferrante, who was yet at Volpian|| ; and it grieved him much.

1300. And God sent an evil spirit between King Henry and the Marquess Albert¶, who also acted treacherously against the king, and went from him unto the emperor ; and the emperor made peace with him, and made a covenant with him ; and the camp of the emperor increased much. And the Lord hardened his heart, and he went to fight against Metz**, the city which is on the borders of Lorraine†† ; and besieged it many days. And the emperor took silver and gold in

* 2 Sam. xvii. 8. Prov. xvii. 12.

† 1 Kings xx. 37.

‡ Ps. cix. 11.

§ Comp. Jer. iv. 20.

|| ולפיאן.

¶ Judg. ix. 23.

** מים.

†† לורינה.

abundance, to fight against France in those days.

1301. And the war was strong against Metz, and in Picardy*; and the hosts of Queen Maria, the emperor's sister, destroyed every good piece of land†, and all the open cities they set on fire, and took also the city of Hesdin‡, which is nigh to Peronne§. And King Henry armed his trained servants||, and sent them forth; and they went on their journeys until they reached Hesdin; and they besieged it, and cast up a bank against it. And in troublous times, the men of the queen delivered it into their hand on the twenty-fourth day of the tenth month. And he sent them on their way free; and it has belonged unto King Henry until this day. And the hosts of the king in the cities of Flanders, which belonged unto Queen Maria, filled their hand also; and the cry of that desolate land went up toward heaven.

1302. In those days, the hosts of the emperor besieged Metz, and those that were numbered of them, were about one hundred and fifty thousand. [קמב] And they cast up a trench against it, and threw down its strong walls to the ground; and the earth shook at the voice of the battering-rams. And in the midst thereof were about ten thousand

* ובפיקארדיאה. † 2 Ki. iii. 19. 25. ‡ אידין.

§ פירונה, Peronne in Picardy. || Gen. xiv. 14.

men, and Monseigneur de Guise* was head over them. And they went out against them from the city daily, and joined battle with them, and returned again into the city; and the French were not afraid of them; and they fortified themselves, and builded a second wall within. And the fame of them went throughout all the earth. And the men of the emperor became weary of their lives†, because of the terrible cold, and the sore famine in the camp, and there died of them about thirty thousand men. And also upon the horses was the hand of the Lord‡, and there died also of them by the cold, and for want of all things, about three thousand. And the emperor came into the camp, and they that were left cried unto him, “Alas!” And he commanded, and they departed from it on the twenty-eighth day of the month of December; and they drew back. And they gathered themselves into the fenced cities which were round about it, and were quiet there.

1303. And Don Ferrante, the chief of the emperor's host, journeyed to march unto Alba on the nineteenth day of the month of December, and with him were about ten thousand men. And he brought the rams also out to convey them thither; but he repented on the road, and he led the people

* ומונסיניור די גישה.

† Gen. xxvii. 46.

‡ Comp. Exod. ix. 3.

about by the way of San Damiano*, and encamped against it, and cast up a bank against it, and they set up against it round about eighteen rams, and cast the walls thereof to the ground, and the earth shook at their voice. And they cast against it about two thousand iron balls; but they were not afraid of them, and fortified themselves yet more. And from Alba also, about two hundred men, clothed in coats of mail, were sent thither to help them; and they came into the city with a high hand. And it grieved Don Ferrante much. And when he saw that he prevailed not against it†, he commanded, and they undermined it; and those who were within, countermined also from within. And they took one of the men who were in *the mines*, and the governor of the city asked him of the matters of Don Ferrante and about his communication‡. And the man told him concerning the things whereof he had asked him. And he made supplication unto him, and the governor of the city had compassion upon him, and they gave him gain of money§, and sent him on his way. And day by day the men of the city went out against them suddenly, and slew some of them with the edge of the sword. And the men of Don Ferrante were

* Comp. Exod. xiii. 17, 18.

† 2 Kings ix. 11.

† Gen. xxxii. 25(26).

§ Jud. v. 19.

grieved because of them*, and because of the terrible cold. And they became tired of abiding there, therefore they went away from it on the sixteenth day of the month of January with shame. And in their haste they left there the provision also. And the men of the city went out, and carried them into the city, and gave thanks unto God. And about five hundred men died in the camp of Don Ferrante in that war.

1304. And it came to pass, as they journeyed†, that the men of Alba, and the men of Villa Nuova‡, and the men of Cisterna§, and the men of San Damiano||, pursued after them, and smote the hindmost of them, even all that were feeble behind them¶. And they returned unto Asti**, and remained quietly there††. And the Lord humbled the hosts of the emperor before the hosts of the king in those days. And they gathered themselves into the fenced cities, and fortified themselves there.

1305. And the viceroy of the emperor journeyed from Naples, to go to war against the lords of Siena: and it came to pass, when he was at

* Exod. i. 12.

† ויילך נובה

|| סאן דאמיאן

** אסטי

† Gen. xi. 2.

§ ציסטירנה

¶ Deut. xxv. 18.

†† Comp. Jud. xviii. 7.

Leghorn*, that he ended his day; and he died and was put in a coffin†.

1306. And Bernardin di Ziri‡, the chief of Don Ferrante's hosts, sought to deliver him up unto the captains of the king; and when the thing was known, they seized him, and put him in prison; but Bernardin fled from them, and the keepers died in his stead, life for life§. And Bernardin went unto the camp of the king, and strangers spoiled his labor at that time||.

1307. Now Massin¶ was a very strong fortress in Piedmont; and the men thereof said with subtlety unto the captains of the king, "Make ye a covenant with us, and we will give the fortress into your hand, and we will become one people**." And they hearkened unto their voice. And they gathered about five thousand footmen, into the valley of Caluso†† on the twenty-first day of the month of March; with a strong people set in battle array‡‡. And it came to pass, when they were in the field§§, that behold dogs ran after a hare, and it fled before them and passed

* לינורנו.

‡ בירנארדין די צירי.

|| Ps. cix. 11.

** Gen. xxxiv. 16.

†† Joel ii. 5.

† Gen. i. 26.

§ Exod. xxi. 23.

¶ מאסין.

‡‡ קאלוסי.

§§ Gen. iv. 8.

through the midst of the people, and all the camp was moved*. And the Lord put faintness into their heart†, and they fled, when none pursued‡; and there were not two found together. And it came to pass, when their spirit returned, that they returned every one unto his place, ashamed. And the captain of the host divined, saying, “This is nothing else but§ a sign from God, that for mischief went we out this day from our place, to die in the field|| of Massin.” And they were astonished. And when it was known to him that the men of Massin had spoken unto him with subtlety, he gave the signal, and they turned back, and marched all the night until every one had returned unto his house.

1308. And the war was strong in the borders of Siena at that time. And they went against Monte Cieli¶, and the lords of Siena sent thither men of valor, who made among the Spaniards a great slaughter. And the horsemen of the emperor fell upon them, wherefore the men of Siena drew back into the city. And Monte Cieli was besieged; yea, the men of the emperor besieged it round about, and battered its walls, until they

* Ruth i. 19.

† Lev. xxvi. 36.

‡ Lev. xxvi. 17.

§ Comp. Gen. xxviii. 17.

|| Exod. xxxii. 12.

¶ מונטי צילי.

were cast down. And Giambattista, of Castello*, a man of Bologna, the chief of the host, delivered it into their hand; and they sent them away free, only that they took their goods for a prey†. And on the fifteenth day of the month Nisan, the Germans who were with them went to take spoil; and Corneglio Bentevoglio, who was at Grosseto‡, went out against them, and the shooter shot§ and smote his brother. And Corneglio, the captain of the host, said, “Sword, sword!” And they slew of them about seven hundred men with the edge of the sword. And when he saw that his brother was not dead, he said, “How long shall the sword devour||? take the rest alive;” and they did so. And on the twenty-first of the same month, the Spaniards went against Montalcino¶, and battered its walls; but they moved not before¹ them**, for it was very strong. And the Italians drew nigh to go up into the city, and the men of the city hid themselves with subtlety, and their voice was not heard; and the Spaniards also came after them, and sought to go up, for they said,

* קאסטילו.

† Numb. xxxi. 9; Deut. ii. 35.

‡ גרוסיטו, a town in Toscana, near Siena.

§ 2 Sam. xi. 24; 2 Chron. xxxiii. 23.

|| Comp. 2 Sam. ii. 26.

¶ מונטאלצינו, a town in Toscana, near Siena.

** Comp. Esth. v. 9.

“ God has delivered it into our hand.” And the Italians envied them, and every man’s sword was against his fellow*, and their voices were heard from afar. And when the men of the city saw this, some of them also went out abroad, and made among the Spaniards a great slaughter; and the rest drew back, when they saw that evil was determined against them. And Pope Julio del Monte† sent messengers unto the emperor, to ask of him the peace of his people. And also unto France he sent messengers at that time. And the emperor consented, and made a covenant of peace with the lords of Siena; and the pope was the surety‡ between them. And the emperor sent his troops whom he had there unto the kingdom of Naples, to guard all the coasts thereof against the French ships which went out with the Turkish ships to ravage those places; and the fame of them went throughout the whole earth.

1309. And in the month Abib, at the time when kings go forth to battle§, the emperor armed his trained servants, and turned his face toward France by the way of Picardy, and encamped against Terouennell, and besieged it several days; and he battered its walls, and made mines under

* Jud. vii. 22; 1 Sam. xiv. 20.

† Prov. vi. 1.

יוליאן די מונטי †

§ 2 Sam. xi. 1.

the wall; and the wall fell down flat*. And on the twenty-first day of the month of June, the city was broken up, and the men of the emperor came into the midst thereof, and every one that was found was pierced with the sword: they saved alive nothing that breathed†. And the emperor commanded, to make it an everlasting heap‡, which should be no more rebuilt; only the son of the constable, the captain of the king's host, with ten of his young men, were taken alive, and they took the spoil of all their goods§. [קמג] And the emperor rejoiced greatly; and passed over unto Hesdin, and besieged it; and battered its walls, and took it, and did unto it according as he had done unto Terouenne||. The Duke Horatio fell dead there¶, and all his valiant men were taken alive; and his brother, the duke of Parma, wept for him**. The emperor journeyed thence, and turned his face towards Paris. Then the dukes of France were amazed: the mighty men of Picardy, trembling, took hold upon them: all the inhabitants of Paris melted away††. And the king spake unto their hearts; and he sent unto the Swiss for help, and gathered together men of

* Josh. vi. 20.

† Deut. xx. 16.

‡ Jos. viii. 28.

§ Num. xxxi. 9.

|| שירואנה. Comp. Jos. x. 28. 30. 32. ¶ Jud. v. 27.

** Comp. Gen. xxxvii. 35.

†† Exod. xv. 15.

valor in great multitudes ; and he went out against the emperor with a numerous people, and with a mighty hand.

1310. In those days, when the Duke Maurice and the Marquess Alberto were in their house, after the emperor had sent them away from him, there was strife between them, and they gathered together men of valor. And those that were numbered of the duke were about twenty thousand footmen, and three thousand horsemen. And the host of the marquess was about sixteen thousand footmen, and four thousand horsemen. When they joined battle, the earth shook at their voice, and there fell of them about fifteen thousand men ; and the hand of the men of the duke prevailed ; and they took Alberto alive. And when the shooters shot, they slew Maurice, so that he fainted and died*. And it came to pass, when they were amazed, that Alberto fled from them, and returned unto his place, and into his country, and the war ceased.

1311. In that year, in the month of June, fire fell from heaven upon the high tower which was at Cremona ; and it devoured the wood upon which the bells rested, and the shop which was at the lower part of the tower. And it burned

* Jonah iv. 8.

there night and day, and they could not quench it, not even with many waters*. And they said, “This is the finger of God†.” And an old man said, “Let there be taken strange fire‡, and let it be put upon this fire, that they become one§, then the waters will be able to quench it.” And they did so, and the fire was quenched. Then said they, “Wisdom is better than strength||;” and they gave thanks unto God.

1312. And at the end of the month of August, the king brought his camp within the distance as it were of a bowshot of the camp of the emperor¶; but the emperor would not come out against the king on the day of the battle, but remained upon his ward between the trenches in the ground, which he had made for his camp round about. And the destroyer went out of both camps, and they joined battle; and the hand of the emperor’s men prevailed; and the liers in wait of the emperor went also out, and there fell slain of the king’s camp about ten thousand men. And of the emperor’s men there lacked but a few, for they were led on with wise counsel**; and the king and his men feared and removed, and stood

* Cant. viii. 7.

† Exod. viii. 19.

‡ Lev. x. 1.

§ Ezek. xxxvii. 17.

|| Eccl. ix. 16.

¶ Gen. xxi. 16.

** Prov. xx. 18; xxiv. 6.

afar off*. And the emperor pursued not after him, for the winter began ; and during many days there was rain upon all the earth†. So he gathered *his host* into the cities on the borders, and remained there ; and the king also gathered *his host* into the fortresses ; and the country had rest.

1312. In those days there was no king in England‡, for their king, Edward, was dead, and the government was left in the hand of his sister, the daughter of his father ; and they buried him in the sepulchre of the kings.

1313. And the ships of Solyman came with the ships of King Henry, bearing the men of war whom the king had in Siena, and weapons of war in abundance ; and they fell suddenly upon the island of Corsica, which was under the government of Genoa. And they took all the cities of the plain and all its fortresses, as a man taketh a piece of an ear ; then the fortress Calvo alone was left unto the Genoese ; and the French surrounded it, and it remained in siege and in straitness many days§.

1314. And the lords of Genoa gathered men of valor and ships in abundance, to go to its help, to deliver it from the hand of its spoilers. And the

* Exod. xx. 18.

† Gen. vii. 12.

‡ Comp. Jud. xvii. 6.

§ Deut. xxviii. 53, 55, 57.

emperor and the duke of Florence succoured them; and they waxed very mighty*.

1315. In those days, a priest, one of the brethren of St. Francis, whose name was Corneglio of Montalcino†, was converted, and he cut off the flesh of his foreskin, to serve the Lord our God, and the spirit came upon him‡, and he set his face like a flint§ to preach unto many in the streets of the city of Rome||, against their law and against their Messiah, and they seized him and burned him with fire.

1316. Then they who raved against our nation, brought their slander to Pope Julius the Third, saying, “That there were passages in the Talmud, which speak against their law.” And he wrote letters into all the circuits of Italy, and commanded them to burn all the books of the Talmud with fire. And the decree was given at Rome¶, and at Bologna, and at Venice; this burning happened in the month Marchesvan, three hundred and fourteen, because of the greatness of its sins** : see, O Lord, and consider††! And in the rest of the cities of Italy the Jews assembled, and proclaimed fasts, and clothed themselves in sack-

* Exod. i. 20.

† 1 Chr. xii. 18.

|| Comp. Lam. ii. 11.

** בע"ה i. e. בעונת הרבה.

† מונטאלצ'ינו.

§ Is. l. 7.

¶ Esth. iii. 15.

†† Lam. i. 11 ; ii. 20.

cloth*, and cried unto the Lord in their distress†, and He was long suffering with them, because he delighteth in mercy‡.

1317. And there was war in Piedmont and in Corsica at that time.

The author, Joseph the priest, saith, “Hitherto the Lord hath holpen me to write this Book of Chronicles, which was completed at the end of the month Cheshwan, in the year, AND *the things that shall come upon them* MAKE HASTE§. May the Lord deem us worthy|| to write other books without end, and see the pleasantness of his temple, and the building of his house in Jerusalem. Amen. Such be his pleasure.”

When Zerachiah¶, the Levite, the son of the author's sister, saw the beauty of this glorious Book, and the honey

* Comp. Jonah iii. 5—9.

† Ps. cvii. 13.

‡ Mic. vii. 18.

§ Deut. xxxii. 35. ש"ח"ר

י = 6

ח = 8

ש = 300

314 + 5000 = A.M. 5314 =

A.D. 1553.

|| זכה, *mundum, purum esse* apud Rabbinos est etiam *mereri, dignum esse* in Piel *dignum censere*.—*Buxtorf Lex. Rab.*

¶ זרחיה.

from the honeycomb of its words*, the Lord stirred up his spirit, and he also began to speak; and he opened his mouth with songs of rejoicing; and he said—

“Whosoever desireth to find delight in the times past, let him take up this Book of Memorials: when his sleep hath left him, let him read it†, for therein he shall see the matters of the king of the nations‡, and the end of our captivity. Peradventure he will be favored to discern between the greatness of the heathen kings, and that of our Messiah. And so he will give thanks unto God, that he hath not taken his mercy from us, giving us a ready penman, a writer of the Chronicles of our nation.”

These Chronicles are ready for sale at the printer's and bookseller's, the celebrated Rabbi Solomon Proops, the righteous priest, (may his rock and his Redeemer guard him!§), together with any other sort of books, Pentateuchs, Prayer-books, Liturgies, Absolutions, according to every regulation of each congregation|| (may their rock and Redeemer guard them!); and sorts of volumes, large and small, either in the holy tongue, or in the strange tongue¶. He buys and sells also, all sorts of old and new books, Gemaroth,

† Prov. xvi. 24. 1 Sam. xiv. 27.

† Esth. vi. 1.

‡ Comp. Gen. xiv. 1.

§ i. e. יִשְׁמְרֵנִי צוּרִי וְגֹאֲלִי—יֵצֵא

|| i. e. According to the *Sphardim*, or the Jews of the Spanish, and the *Ashkenazim*, or the Jews of the German rites.

¶ לשון לעז. A similar phrase occurs in Ps. cxiv. Our text has the mark of ראשי תבות, or of *initials*, over לעז; which seems to imply that it is to be taken as an abbreviation for לשון עם זר. The context shows that the Dutch language is meant.

Medrashim (Sermons), and also books of the Cabbalah, Commentaries, Decisions, Questions and Answers, and all other sorts of books whatsoever, as it is known.

His dwelling is in the street which is called Broad Street, (ברייטי שטראס, *Breite Strasse*), in the holy community of Amsterdam.

THE END.

CORRIGENDA TO VOL. I.

- | Page. | line. |
|-------|--|
| 12 | heading, for 4466 read 4856. |
| — | 21, for seventy read ninety. |
| — | 23, for four hundred and sixty-six read eight hundred and fifty-six. |
| 54 | note, after קונריקאלקוס, insert, seems to be Gottschalk. |
| 59 | 5, insert a note to mail. Some historians compute the whole number of persons, women and children and clergy inclusive, at six hundred thousand; of whom three hundred thousand were infantry, and one hundred thousand mounted knights: but others state, with the rabbi, that there were six hundred thousand foot.— <i>Von Raumer, Geschichte der Hohenstaufen</i> , vol. i. p. 99. |
| — | note, last line but one, after confounded insert, Von Raumer calls this person Kilidsch Arslan. |
| 61 | 5, note to thence. According to other historians, Baldwin's retinue consisted of seven hundred knights and two thousand foot; Tancred's to five hundred knights and a corresponding number of foot.— <i>Von Raumer, Hohenstaufen</i> , vol. i. p. 116. |
| — | note, after אנושטריאה, read, seems to be Mamistra. |
| 64 | 19, for learn read leave. |

- Page. line.
- 81 17, *note to footmen.* Von Raumer states the number of the Egyptian army to have been eleven thousand horse and twenty thousand foot; and of the Christian army, two hundred and sixty knights and two hundred footmen.—*Hohenstaufen*, vol. i. p. 423.
- 82 7 from the bottom, *note to months.* Other historians relate that the siege of Acco lasted only twenty days.—*Hohenstaufen*, vol. i. p. 433.
- 84 first note, *delete* October, A. D. 1108.
- 88 last note, *after* Perhaps, *insert* Togthekin or.
- 89 2, *note to horsemen.* Keightley, in his "Crusaders," states that one thousand five hundred persons were slain in this encounter.
- 91 *note, after* נגל, *insert*, other historians call him Il Gazi.—*Hohenstaufen*, vol. i. p. 458.
- 93 1, *note to priests.* Von Raumer, after William of Tyre, says that these persons were disguised like *traders*.—*Hohenstaufen*, vol. i. p. 461.
- 97 6, *note to one thousand one hundred and twenty-seven.* Von Raumer says, one thousand one hundred and twenty-six.
- 142 first note, *after* באלדאק, *insert*, probably Bagdad.
- 144 11, *note to one thousand one hundred and fifty-six.* Other chronologers say one thousand one hundred and fifty-seven.
- 145 6, *note to Inardo.* By some called Anar.—*Keightley's Crusaders*, vol. iv. p. 110.
- 19, *note to forty men.* Some say four hundred.
- 146 16, *for* Castile *read* Chatillon.
- 147 15, *for* fifty-two *read* fifty-eight.
- 148 17, *for* Toro *read* Toros.
- *note, after* טורו, *insert*, afterwards spelled טורוש.
- 152 heading and lines 3 and 10, *for* Balbis *read* Belbeis.
- *note, after* שאור, *read*, by modern historians spelled Shauer.
- 172 11, *note to seventy-five.* According to other computation, one thousand one hundred and seventy-three.
- 193 5 from bottom, *for* Danzig *read* Denmark.
- 214 16, *note to life.* This ransom is usually accounted one hundred and fifty thousand marks.
- 230 15, *for* one thousand two hundred and twenty-seven, *Rabbi Joseph should have said*, one thousand two hundred and seventy.—*See the following page.*
- 236 16, *for* two *read* no.
- 352 3 from bottom, *for* Griti *read* Gritti.
- 363 7, *for* Griti *read* Gritti.

- line.
 380 last line in note, *for quadam read qucedam.*
 399 7 and 14, *for Fragoso read Fregoso.*
 400 8, *for Fiesci read Fieschi.*
 410 3, *for Fragoso read Fregoso.*
 411 note, *after Galita insert Goletta.*
 415 heading and lines 9, 14, and 21, *for Tabriz read Tebriz.*
 — 1, *for Fragoso read Fregoso.*
 416 15, *for Tabriz read Tebriz.*

CORRIGENDA TO VOL. II.

- 12 3 from bottom, *for Ardir read Ardres.*
 — 2 from bottom, *for Gilinis read Guisnes.*
 13 5 from bottom, *for Lotric read Lautrec.*
 14 3, *for Griti read Gritti.*
 — 4 and last, *for Lotric read Lautrec.*
 — 5, 12, and 15, *for Frederico read Federigo.*
 15 9, 14, 16, and 17, *for Roberto della Markia read Robert von der Mark.*
 16 7, *for di read de'.*
 — 1 and 17, *for Lotric read Lautrec.*
 17 16, *for Triulzio read Trivulzio.*
 19 14, *for Fiamingo read the Fleming.*
 — 21, and elsewhere, *for Gasili read Ghasali.*
 23 18, *for Triulzio read Trivulzio.*
 24 1, *for Casino read Cassano.*
 25 7, *for Vinasco read Binasco.*
 — 14, *for Casino read Cassano.*
 — 16 and 17, *for Bikoka read Bicoca.*
 39 22, *for Lirma read Lerma.*
 64 8, *for Frankispir read Freundsberg.*
 65 last line, *for Colonnese read Colonnas.*
 67 8, *ibid.*
 68 14, *for Sienna read Siena.*
 69 7, *for Hippolito di Medici read Ippolito dei Medici.*
 89 4, *for Milfi read Melfi.*
 98 20, *for Casano read Cassano.*
 114 3 from the bottom, *for di Medici read de' Medici.*
 — note, *for סילן read אלם,*
 115 3, *for Frederico read Federigo.*
 367 heading, *for OF read OFF.*



